

EX LIBRIS

786
S227





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

4



THE OXFORD SPANISH SERIES

EDITED BY

JAMES FITZMAURICE-KELLY, F.B.A.

CERVANTES PROFESSOR OF SPANISH IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

AN
ELEMENTARY
SPANISH GRAMMAR

BY

B. SANIN CANO



OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1918

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK
TORONTO MELBOURNE CAPE TOWN BOMBAY

HUMPHREY MILFORD

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY



PREFACE

THE author of this grammar has endeavoured to follow the recommendations made by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Terminology so far as those recommendations are applicable to the structure of the Spanish language. The scheme put forward by the Joint Committee does not specially envisage the terminology of Spanish grammar. The Spanish conjugation has important peculiarities which, perhaps, call for the adoption of a special nomenclature for certain tenses of the subjunctive mood (and even of the indicative). Yet, as the anarchy in Spanish is, in this respect, even greater than in English or French, the author has deemed it advisable to adopt the recommendations of the Joint Committee for the sake of uniformity and simplicity. Though not beyond criticism, they tend on the whole to diminish the confusion wrought in the minds of all students by the lack of a uniform terminology.

In spite of the fact that the use of the term *Direct Object* is not recommended by the Joint Committee, the author has found himself compelled to employ it in order to avoid misunderstanding: this misunderstanding might arise from the fact that the term *Indirect Object* is included among the recommendations, and is used in the present work. The term *Future in the Past* has been adopted for uniformity's sake. It is well, however, to state at this point that the term does not cover every shade of meaning which this tense may convey in Spanish: it has at any

rate the advantage of resembling the term used to designate this tense in Spanish America ; that designation is supported by the authority of Andrés Bello, whose methods and principles have been followed by the author whenever it was possible, due regard being had to the new aspects of the language and to the results of recent investigation. Care has been taken to conform to recognized usage, even when that usage appears to be at variance with traditional rules.

In the matter of accentuation, the latest rules issued by the Spanish Academy have been consistently followed, even in cases where the Dictionary of that learned body is not in accord with those rules.

The author desires to express his indebtedness to the general editor. Professor Fitzmaurice-Kelly has given invaluable help by making many useful suggestions and in reading the proofs.

B. SANIN CANO.

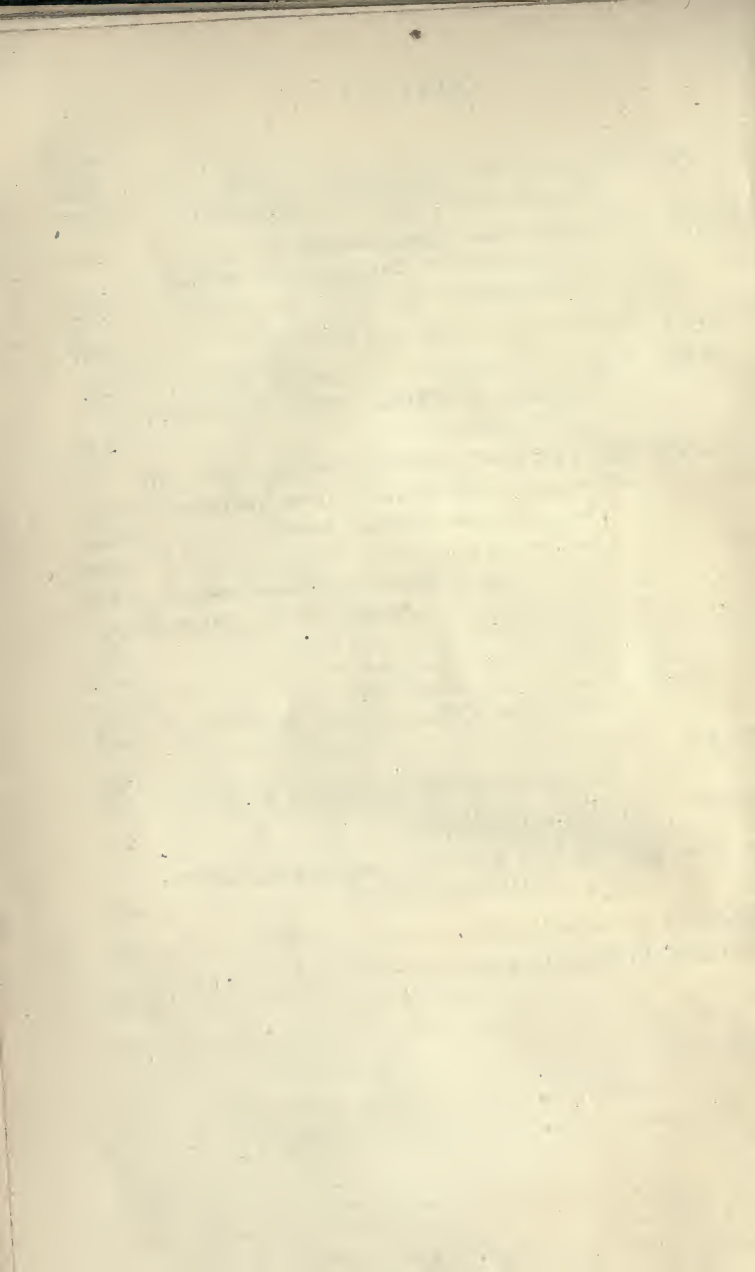
LONDON, *October* 1918.

CONTENTS

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| I. PRONUNCIATION : | |
| The Alphabet | 1 |
| Vowels | 1 |
| Consonants | 2 |
| Accentuation | 6 |
| Division of Syllables | 9 |
| II. THE ARTICLE | 10 |
| III. NOUNS | 13 |
| IV. NOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : | |
| Number | 18 |
| V. THE ADJECTIVE | 22 |
| Position of the Adjective | 23 |
| Hablar, <i>to speak</i> . First Conjugation | 25 |
| VI. THE ADJECTIVE (<i>continued</i>) | 27 |
| Hablar, <i>to speak</i> . First Conjugation | 29 |
| Feminine Endings of Nouns | 31 |
| VII. PRONOUNS : | |
| Personal Pronouns | 32 |
| Possessive Adjectives | 35 |
| Possessive Pronouns | 35 |
| Hablar, <i>to speak</i> . First Conjugation | 37 |
| VIII. AUXILIARY VERBS | 40 |
| ✧ Conjugation of Haber, <i>to have</i> | 40 |
| ✧ The Verb Ser, <i>to be</i> | 42 |
| IX. REGULAR VERBS: | |
| ✧ Conjugation of Hablar, <i>to speak</i> | 45 |
| ✧ Aprender, <i>to learn</i> . Second Conjugation | 46 |
| Numerals | 48 |
| Recibir, <i>to receive</i> . Third Conjugation | 51 |
| The Tenses of the Indicative Mood | 52 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| X. THE ADJECTIVE : | |
| Degrees of Comparison | 58 |
| Demonstrative Adjectives | 59 |
| Reflexive Pronouns | 60 |
| The Superlative | 63 |
| Conjugation of Estar , <i>to be, to stay, to remain</i> | 64 |
| Neuter Gender | 69 |
| XI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS | 71 |
| Conjugation of Tener , <i>to have, to hold</i> | 73 |
| XII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) | 77 |
| Conjugation of Decir , <i>to say, to tell</i> (irregular) | 79 |
| Spanish Forms of Address | 80 |
| XIII. THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD | 85 |
| Conjugation of Querer , <i>to want, to wish, to love, to be fond of</i> (irregular) | 91 |
| XIV. IMPERSONAL VERBS | 96 |
| Conjugation of Saber , <i>to know</i> (irregular) | 98 |
| XV. EXAMPLES OF THE SPANISH USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN ITS VARIOUS FORMS COMPARED WITH THE INDICATIVE | 104 |
| XVI. ORDINAL NUMBERS AND INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS | 114 |
| Indeterminate Pronouns and Adjectives | 118 |
| XVII. AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES—PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES—LETTER-WRITING | 127 |
| Prefixes | 131 |
| Suffixes | 133 |
| Letter-writing | 136 |
| XVIII. ADVERBS | 141 |
| XIX. PREPOSITIONS | 154 |
| Conjugation of Ir , <i>to go</i> | 162 |
| XX. PREPOSITIONS (<i>continued</i>) | 167 |
| Conjugation of Venir , <i>to come</i> | 174 |
| XXI. CONJUNCTIONS | 179 |
| Conjugation of Poner , <i>to put, to lay</i> (irregular) | 184 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XXII. SYNTAX OF THE NOUN, VERB, AND ADJECTIVE | 189 |
| Conjugation of Caer , <i>to fall</i> (irregular) | 197 |
| XXIII. VERBALS (Derivados verbales) | 202 |
| Conjugation of Caber , <i>to be contained in</i> (irregular) | 210 |
| XXIV. PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND | 215 |
| XXV. THE PAST PARTICIPLE AND PASSIVE VOICE | 225 |
| Conjugation of Traer , <i>to bring to, to carry to</i> (irregular) | 236 |
| XXVI. THE PLACE OF THE OBJECT PRONOUNS IN THE SENTENCE—THE ARTICLE—INTERJECTIONS | 241 |
| The Use of the Definite Article | 242 |
| Interjections | 249 |
| Conjugation of Hacer , <i>to make</i> (irregular) | 251 |
| Conjugation of Andar , <i>to go, to walk</i> (irregular) | 251 |
| Conjugation of Oír , <i>to hear</i> | 252 |
| Conjugation of Ver , <i>to see</i> | 252 |
| Conjugation of Dar , <i>to give</i> | 253 |
| XXVII. WORD ORDER | 257 |
| Conjugation of Poder , <i>to be able</i> (irregular). | 266 |
| XXVIII. APPENDIX: THE VERB | 273 |
| XXIX. LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL IRREGULAR, ANOMA- LOUS, AND DEFECTIVE VERBS | 289 |
| SPANISH VOCABULARY | 297 |
| ENGLISH VOCABULARY | 322 |



I

PRONUNCIATION

THE ALPHABET

1.—THERE are thirty different signs in the Spanish alphabet: **a, b, c, ch, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, ll, m, n, ñ, o, p, q, r, rr, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.**¹ Their names in Spanish are: **a, be, ce, che, de, e, efe, ge, hache, i, jota, ka, ele, elle, eme, ene, eñe, o, pe, cu, ere, erre, ese, te, u, ve, ve doble (or doble u), equis, ye (or i griega), zeta.**

VOWELS.

2.—The Spanish alphabet has only five vowel sounds, corresponding to the letters **a, e, i, o, u.** The letter **y** at the end of a word, or when it makes a word by itself, represents the vowel sound of Spanish **i.** There is only one sound for every Spanish vowel. The accent or stress, and sometimes the number of consonants following, may make the sound longer, but Spanish prosody does not take these variations into account, and the five signs may be regarded as corresponding to five different and invariable sounds. They are pronounced as follows: **a** like *a* in *far*; **e** like *e* in *debtor*; **i** like *i* in *litany*; **o** like *o* in *border*; **u** like *u* in *bull*.

¹ The Spanish Academy assigns only twenty-eight letters to the alphabet: **w** and **rr** are excluded (*Gramática Castellana*, Madrid, 1913, p. 7). Yet the same authority (p. 324), when classifying the consonants according to the old system, places the **y, r,** and **rr** under the heading of palatals. And further on (p. 376) the Academy says: '**ch** and **ll**, letters which are single in their pronunciation and double in their representative signs, must never be divided. . . . The **rr** is in the same case.'

2 PRONUNCIATION

3.—The vowel sounds in Spanish are either strong (llenas), **a, e, o**, or weak (débiles), **i, u**. This classification should be kept in mind in order to determine whether two or three contiguous vowels form a diphthong or triphthong or not.

a. Two strong vowels do not form a diphthong : **canoa** has three syllables ; **leo** and **trae** have two. A strong and a weak vowel form a diphthong only when the stress does not fall on the weak vowel : **bien** has one syllable ; **Europa** has three. A combination of a strong with a weak sound, bearing the stress on the weak vowel, forms two syllables : **baúl** has two syllables, **oído** three. Two weak vowels can form a diphthong, but in some cases they make two different syllables ; **ruin** has one syllable ; **fuí** sounds like a diphthong ; but **ruido** has three syllables, according to its Latin derivation (*rugitus*) and to the general usage of Spanish poets.

b. Three vowels (two of them necessarily weak) form a triphthong if the intermediate one is strong and the stress falls on it. **Ansiáis** has two syllables ; **buey** has one.

CONSONANTS.

4.—There is a substantial difference between Spanish and English in the pronunciation of the vowels and consonants. In Spanish the vowels are pronounced very distinctly and without shades, except the stress of the accented syllable. In English the variety of shades in the pronunciation of vowels is so great that a foreigner is apt to think they are pronounced rather indistinctly. The consonants are in Spanish softer as a rule, and are not sounded very distinctly, while in English they are sounded clearly and with a certain stress.

5.—The following consonants have more or less the same value in the two languages, save that they are sounded less emphatically in Spanish :

b softer than in English

c strong before **a, o, u** or before another consonant, like the *c* in *cal* and *crop*

ch like English *ch* in *charm*

d softer than in English

f " " " "

k

l

m

n

p softer than in English

6.—In Spanish the following consonants have not the same sounds as in English :

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| c before e or i | } like English <i>th</i> in <i>thin</i> | cerca, cielo. |
| z before all vowels or consonants | | hazte, lazo, zorra. |

a. In Mexico, and in Central and South America, *c* before *e* and *i*, and *z* before all vowels or consonants, are pronounced like *s*.

7.—*h* is mute in Spanish

g before **e** or **i**. This is a peculiar Spanish sound, very strongly guttural, resembling the Scotch *ch* in *loch*

j before all vowels is pronounced like the foregoing **g**

hacha, hilo.

gente, gitano.

crujir, jamás, joven.

g before **a, o, u** and before a consonant sounds like English **g** in *garter*

augur, ganso, gloria, grano, lago.

¹ In some parts of Spain and Spanish America there is a tendency to drop the final **d** and say **usté** instead of **usted**. The termination **-ado** of the past participle is pronounced sometimes as **-ao**, e.g. **alabao** instead of **alabado**. The practice should not be encouraged. The Spaniards of Madrid say improperly **Madriz, ustez**, instead of **Madrid, usted**.

gue, gui sound like English *gu* in *amiguito, guerra.*
guild

In *güe, güi* the three sounds *g, u,* and *agüero, yegüita.*
e (or i) are pronounced distinctly

a. In order to keep before *e* and *i* the hard sound of *c* or *g* in forms derived from words having either of these sounds in the last syllable before *a* or *o*, *qu* is substituted for *c*, and *gu* for *g*: *sacar*, to draw, *saqué*, I drew; *saco*, bag, *saquito*, a small bag; *llegar*, to arrive, *llegué*, I arrived; *algo*, something, *alguito*, a little. This rule must be borne in mind in the conjugation of verbs ending in *car* or *gar* and in the formation of derivatives.

8.—11. This is a peculiar Spanish *brillante.*
sound similar to the English *ll* in
brilliant or to the Italian *gli* in
scoglio

ñ sounds like the English combination *caña, cañón, se-*
of *n* and *e* in *news* *ñuelo.*

que, qui. In Spanish this combina- *queso, aquí.*
tion is sounded like *ke, ki* in
English

r at the beginning of a word or after a *cobre, drama,*
consonant in the middle of a word *enredo, is-*
has a strongly trilled sound, which *raelita, rata.*
does not exist in English pronun-
ciation

r between two vowels, between a vowel *cara, carta, ir.*
and a consonant, or at the end of
a word has a softer sound, as in
the English word *round*

rr occurs only between two vowels *carro, correr,*
and sounds like the initial *r* *tierra.*

s has always the sound of the initial *así, oso, rosa.*
English *s* in *soft*. In Old Spanish

(before the seventeenth century) the *s* had probably two sounds as in French and Italian, but now only one is used

t is pronounced almost like the English *t* in *tell*, but is not so markedly explosive as in English

antes, bota, tío,
toma.

v There was a difference in the pronunciation of *b* and *v* in Spanish before the sixteenth century, but since then usage has been uncertain. At present the two letters are pronounced alike both in Spain and Spanish America. To pronounce the Spanish *v* like the French or Italian *v* is an affectation

hervir, uva, vaca,
vino.

w is sounded like the English *w* in Spanish words of English origin and like the German *w* in the Gothic names retained in Spanish. The Gothic names may also be spelt with a *v*

Wamba or Vamba.
ba.

x is a double sound as in English: between two vowels it is the equivalent of *ks*; before a consonant it can be represented as *gs*

examen (eksa-
men), texto.

y as a consonant between two vowels or at the beginning of a word sounds like the English *y* in *you*, but is more emphatically pronounced

Mayo, ya, yeso.

9.—Double consonants occur rarely in Spanish. The *rr* is not, properly speaking, a double consonant: it has the value of a single sound. The only consonants now

doubled are **c** and **n**. Double **c** occurs only before **e** or **i**, the first sign being sounded **k** and the second **th** (as *th* in *thin*): **acción** (akthion); **acceder**. Double **n** must be pronounced so as to make the two letters sound distinctly and separately: **innocuo** (in—n). The double **s** is used only in two Spanish words: **oessudoeste** or **uessudueste**. In these cases the two **s**'s of the double sign are pronounced distinctly and separately.

10.—There are some differences between the pronunciation

Spanish in Spain and in Spanish America: they are not of great importance and any foreigner able to understand Spanish as it is spoken in Spain will also understand the Spanish of America. We have already mentioned the pronunciation of **ce**, **ci**, and **z** in America. The **ll** sounds like the consonant **y** in some Spanish provinces and in some parts of Spanish America, and in some parts of the same continent **llover**, instead of being pronounced **gliover**, giving to **ll** the sound of the Italian *gli* before a vowel, sounds more like **chover**. This, of course, is incorrect, and people who know the language never pronounce the **ll** like **ch**.

The dropping of the **d** at the end of words is also an incorrect practice which is followed in some parts of Spain and of Spanish America. The correct pronunciation, though, is not regarded as an affectation.

ACCENTUATION.

11.—In order to avoid difficulties as to the pronunciation of words with regard to the syllable bearing the stress, Spanish writers have adopted of late a system of accentuation now generally followed in all Spanish-speaking countries.

Words having the stress on the syllable before the last and ending in a vowel or in **n** or **s**, and words ending in a consonant (except **n** or **s**) and having the stress on the last syllable, do not require the graphic accent: **caballo**, **casa**, **crimen**, **crisis**, **elefante**, **Muni**, **tribu**, **abril**, **Habacuc**, **ciudad**, **feroz**, **reloj**, **zigzag**.

12.—Words not included in the above rule bear the graphic accent, e. g. **allí, anís, árbol, canapé, capitán, carácter, déjesemele, dígotelo, lámpara, murciélago, Paisandú, patatús.**

a. Monosyllables (except certain verbal forms) do not require the graphic accent : **pie, bien, Dios.**

13.—Words having the stress on the last syllable and ending in two vowels followed or not by a consonant must have the graphic accent when the stress falls on a weak vowel : **Baíls, laúd, oír, país, raíz, Raúl.**

14.—Words having the stress on the syllable before the last and ending in two vowels, followed or not by *n* or *s*, must have the accent marked on the weak vowel when this vowel bears the stress : **dúo, Elías, frío, insinúan, mercancía, pedían, podías.**

15.—Words containing a stressed weak vowel followed by a diphthong and the letter *s* have the accent indicated on the stressed weak vowel : these words are generally verbal forms : **seríais, subiríais.** When the stress falls on the strong vowel, in words of this form, they have also the graphic accent, according to the general rule : **auxiliáis, cambiáis, insinuéis.**

16.—When there is a diphthong in the syllable which, according to the rules, should have the accent marked, this mark is put on the strong vowel or on the second weak vowel, if both are weak : **alzapié, benjuí, ciénaga, después, duéleme, Fabián, fraguó, oración.**

17.—The monosyllabic verbal forms containing a diphthong have the graphic accent : **fió** (he trusted), **fié** (I trusted), **lié** (I tied), **fué** (he was), **dió** (he gave), **vió** (he saw), **fuí** (I was). It is to be noted that the first three words if not marked with the accent might be pronounced differently and so give rise to confusion : **fíó** (I trust), **fíe** (let him trust), **líe** (let him tie).

18.—Words of identical form are sometimes distinguished from one another by the use of the graphic accent :

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| de, preposition (of) | dé, he give (subjunctive) |
| el, article (the) | él, pronoun (he) |
| mas, but | más, more |
| mi, my | mí, me |
| se, pronoun | sé, I know, be thou |
| si, if | sí, yes, himself etc. |
| tu, thy | tú, thou. |

a. Some writers distinguish *té* (tea) and *te* (thee). But the Academy in its Dictionary does not accentuate either word graphically.

b.—**Aun** is accentuated (*aún*) when it comes after the verb to which it refers. **Aun no llega; no ha llegado aún.**

c. **Que, quien, cual, cuyo, cuando, donde, como, cuanto,** have the graphic accent in interrogative or exclamatory sentences: **¿Qué hora es?** (What time is it?); **¡Cuán fácilmente lo dice!** (How easily he says it!)

d. **Solo** has the accent marked when it is used like an adverb instead of **solamente**.

e. **Este, ese, aquel, esta, esa, aquella,** and their plurals have their graphic accent when the noun to which they refer is omitted in the sentence.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION AND ACCENTUATION.

Acabado. Alcántara. Baratija. Baraúnda. Buey. Cabarrús. Cáscara. Ceceo. Cisco. Debilidad. Decenio. Desahucio. Descepar. Desmejorado. Díaz. Documentación. Estío. Extático. Extremadura. Felicísimamente. Feliz. Fíe. Fié. Fío. Frenillo. Garra. Gesticulaciones. Giganteo. Horroroso. Huérfano. Huída. Incineración. Inmenso. Innecesario. Irún. Jergón. Jinete. Joroba. Kilogramo. Kilómetro. Kirie. Lancha. Lapslázuli. Laúd. Laudes. Lejanía. Lío. Lió. Llaneza. Llover. Machacar. Mahometano. Malla. Mercadería. Montevideo. Mudéjar. Noguera. Norzagaray. Oscilación. Ósculo. Ostracismo. Pie. Pié. Píe. Pollo. Poyo. Querétaro. Quezaltenango. Ramírez. Regara. Regará. Régimen. Reí. Rey.

Rodado. Seáis. Seducíais. Seduciríais. Sosegarías. Sustentáculo. Tiépolo. Traición. Traído. Túy. Vedia. Vejamen. Venancio. Vidrioso. Vivienda. Wamba. Yegua. Yegüita. Zarabanda. Zarzuela. Zizaña.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

19.—The following are the rules concerning the division of words into syllables :

a. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel. **Ll** and **rr**, which represent single consonantal sounds, follow this rule, and **ch** (although composed of two different sounds, **d** and **sh**) is also considered as a single consonant for the purpose of this rule :

a-llí, ca-ra-co-les, ca-rri-co-che, co-rre-de-ra, me-sa, va-ca, za-bu-llir.

b. The first of two consonants placed between two vowels goes, as a rule, with the preceding syllable, the second with the following syllable :

ár-bol, cos-ta, in-cien-so.

But the combinations **br, cr, dr, fr, gr, pr, tr**, and **bl, cl, fl, gl, pl**, go with the following syllable :

ca-bra, lu-cro, e-gre-gio, a-troz.

do-ble, de-cla-ro, ri-fle, se-glar, co-pla.

c. Three consonants comprising the above-mentioned combinations are divided so that the first consonant goes with the preceding syllable and the other two with the following syllable :

an-clar, con-tra, ex-plo-sión, in-fras-cri-to, siem-bro.

If the second of the three consonants is an **s**, the first two consonants go with the preceding syllable :

cons-pi-ra-ción, cons-ti-tu-ye, ins-tan-te, obs-tá-cu-lo.

d. Four consonants between two vowels are divided so that the first two go with the preceding syllable :

ads-cri-bir, cons-truc-ción, ins-tru-men-to.

e. Prefixes like **ab**, **des**, **sub**, are exceptions to the preceding rules :

ab-e-rran-te, **des-a-ten-der**, **sub-lu-nar**.

Nosotros, **vosotros** are divided thus : **nos-o-tros**, **vos-o-tros**.

f. Diphthongs and triphthongs are inseparable :

an-cia-no, **a-ve-ri-güéis**, **di-gáis**.

The first or the last vowel of a word, even if it forms a syllable by itself, should not be separated from the rest of the word when it comes at the end of the line.

Divide the following words into syllables: **adviento**, **antracita**, **arrellanarse**, **caramelo**, **carrera**, **carricoche**, **conllevar**, **connotado**, **conspicuo**, **construyo**, **contribuyente**, **desorientado**, **desunión**, **excelente**, **laudable**, **murciélago**, **nosotras**, **sublunar**, **subrepticio**, **transferir**.

II

THE ARTICLE

20.—THE English definite article *the* is rendered in Spanish by the words **el**, **la**, **los**, **las**. **El** is masculine singular, **la** feminine singular, **los** masculine plural, and **las** feminine plural.

el padre, the father.

la madre, the mother.

los hermanos, the brothers.

las hermanas, the sisters.

21.—The English indefinite article *a*, *an* is rendered in Spanish by the words **un** (masc. singular), **una** (femin. singular), which have a plural form **unos** (masc.), **unas** (fem.), equivalent to the indeterminate adjective *some*.

un hombre, a man ; **unos hombres**, men, some men.

una mujer, a woman ; **unas mujeres**, women, some women.

22.—The definite feminine article **la** cannot be used before a feminine name beginning with a stressed **a** or **ha**; in this case **el** takes the place of **la**.

El águila (fem.), the eagle.

El agua (fem.), the water.

El hacha (fem.), the axe.

But this change does not occur before an adjective: **la alta montaña**, the high mountain.

23.—The article **el** when preceded by the preposition **a** loses its first letter and forms a single word with the preposition: **al viento**, to the wind. The same change occurs when preceded by **de**: **del cuarto vecino**, from the next room.

24.—Possession is expressed in Spanish by means of the preposition **de**: **la hermana de Pablo**, Paul's sister; or by means of the possessive adjectives as will be explained further on.

25.—Negation in Spanish is expressed by the adverb **no**, which is always placed before the verb. There is no need of an auxiliary verb in negative or interrogative sentences.

Juan no es rico.

Ella no sabe.

John is not rich.

She does not know.

26.—Interrogative sentences are formed by placing the verb before the subject.

¿ **Es Juan rico?**

¿ **Sabe ella?**

Is John rich?

Does she know?

Note that the interrogation is put at the beginning of the sentence in an inverted form (¿).

VOCABULARY.

[*m.* means masculine noun; *f.*, feminine noun; *adj.*, adjective; *adv.*, adverb; *prep.*, preposition; *conj.*, conjunction.]

a, *prep.*, to.

abrir, to open; **abre**, he opens.

ahora, *adv.*, now.

Alberto, *m.*, Albert.

amigo, *m.*, friend; **amiga**, *f.*, female friend.

bien, *adv.*, well.

casa, *f.*, house.

cuando, *adv.*, when.

¿cuándo?, when?

de, *prep.*, of, from.

en, *prep.*, in, at.

enseñar, to teach; **enseña**, he teaches.

es, is.

español, *adj.*, Spanish.

fácil, *adv.*, easy.

fin, *m.*, end.

hablar, to speak; **habla**, he speaks.

inglés, *adj.*, English.

Juan, John.

lección, *f.*, lesson.

Lucía, Lucy.

llega, he arrives.

maestro, *m.*, teacher.

no, *adv.*, not, no.

por, *prep.*, for, through, by.

puerta, *f.*, door.

salir, to go out, to leave;

sale, he goes out.

Señor, *m.*, Sir.

Señora, *f.*, Madam.

sí, *adv.*, yes.

también, *adv.*, also, too.

y, *conj.*, and.

EXERCISE.

El maestro es español. El maestro habla inglés. Lucía no habla inglés. El maestro enseña español a Lucía y a Juan. Juan es hermano de Lucía. El maestro enseña en la casa de Juan. El amigo de Juan, Alberto, enseña inglés. Alberto habla español también. Juan abre la puerta. El maestro de Lucía y Juan llega. Enseña la lección. El maestro enseña bien. La amiga de Lucía no habla español; no habla inglés: es italiana. ¿Habla bien inglés el maestro? Sí, señor: el maestro habla bien inglés. ¿Es fácil hablar español? Sí, señor. ¿Es fácil hablar bien español? No, señora. Alberto abre la puerta ahora. El maestro sale al fin de la lección.

CONVERSATION.

— ¿Enseña bien el maestro de Lucía? — Enseña bien el español; no enseña bien el inglés. — ¿Cuándo sale el maestro de casa de Juan y Lucía? — Al fin de la lección. — ¿Habla español la amiga de Lucía? — No, la amiga de Lucía es italiana. — ¿Es fácil la lección de español? — Sí, señor, es fácil ahora.

TO TRANSLATE.

A lesson. When he comes. To speak. Spanish is easy. John speaks English and Lucy speaks English too. Lucy does not speak Italian. Italian is not easy. Albert speaks English and Spanish. A friend. A female friend. John's house. The door of Lucy's house. He speaks well. When the teacher arrives, John opens the door. When the teacher goes out, Lucy's female friend arrives.

III

NOUNS

27.—NOUNS are of two genders in Spanish. These genders are the masculine and the feminine.

As in English, names of male beings are masculine and names of female beings are feminine.

28.—Names of trees are masculine as a rule: **el eucaliptus**; **el nogal**, the walnut-tree; **el naranjo**, the orange-tree; **el abedul**, the birch-tree; **el manzano**, the apple-tree; **el cerezo**, the cherry-tree. There are a few exceptions: **la encina**, the oak; **la higuera**, the fig-tree; **la palmera**, the palm-tree; **la acacia**, the acacia. Vid, **parra**, both of which mean grape-vine, are feminine.

29.—The names of the months and the names of the days of the week are also masculine: **Enero es lluvioso**,

January is a rainy month ; *salgo todos los lunes*, I go out every Monday.

30.—The names of rivers, mountains, and seas are masculine : *el Sena*, the Seine ; *el Támesis*, the Thames ; *el Orinoco*, *el Plata*, *el Amazonas* ; *el Mediterráneo*, the Mediterranean (sea) ; *el Báltico*, the Baltic ; *el Mar Negro*, the Black Sea. When not followed by a geographical adjective the word *mar* can indifferently be used in the masculine or feminine gender. *El Himalaya*, the Himalayas, *el Chimborazo*, *el Vesubio* are masculine ; but *la Silla*, a hill near Caracas, and *las Alpujarras* in Spain, are feminine.

31.—Names of fruits are feminine : *la manzana*, the apple ; *la ciruela*, the plum ; *la almendra*, the almond ; *la pera*, the pear ; *la mora*, the blackberry. The exceptions are numerous : *el coco*, the coco-nut ; *el limón*, the lemon ; *el higo*, the fig ; *el aguacate*, the alligator-pear ; *el melocotón*, the peach ; *mango*, *mamey*, *níspero*, *marañón*, *zapote*, etc.

32.—Names of countries ending in *a* are feminine : *China*, *Francia*, France ; *la vieja Inglaterra*, old England ; and names of towns and villages of the same termination : *Sevilla es encantadora*, Seville is charming : *la soñolienta Bogotá*, sleepy Bogota.¹

33.—Nouns ending in *o* are for the most part masculine : *el lago*, the lake ; *el cuerpo*, the body ; *el cántaro*, the pitcher.

34.—Nouns ending in *a* are for the most part feminine : *la casa*, the house ; *la cabeza*, the head ; *la cántara*, the pitcher.

• *a. Mano*, hand, is feminine ; *día*, day, is masculine. A few nouns of Greek derivation ending in *ma* or *ta* are

• ¹ The names of the letters of the alphabet are all feminine : *la a*, *la b*, *la i*, *una hache*, *la qu*, *la omega*, *la beta*, *la ómicron*. *Delta*, triangular alluvial tract at the mouth of a river, is masculine : *el delta del Orinoco*.

masculine : **emblema**, emblem ; **planeta**, planet ; **sistema**, system ; but **asma**, asthma ; **diadema**, diadem ; **estratagem**, stratagem, are feminine.

35.—Nouns ending in **d** are for the most part feminine : **ciudad**, city, town ; **merced**, favour, mercy ; **virtud**, virtue ; but **ardid**, trick ; **césped**, turf, sod ; **sud**, south, and a very few others, are masculine.

36.—Nouns ending in **e** are mostly masculine : the exceptions (which are numerous) are learned by practice. **Alambre**, wire ; **diente**, tooth ; **lacre**, sealing-wax, are masculine ; **calle**, street ; **fuelle**, fountain, feminine ; **arte**, art, is masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.

37.—Nouns ending in **l** are nearly all masculine ; the exceptions are few : **cal**, lime ; **cárcel**, prison-house, jail ; **sal**, salt, are feminine.

38.—Nouns ending in **n** are commonly masculine ; but the exceptions are numerous. The termination **ión** implies, as a rule, the feminine gender, but a few nouns in **ión** are masculine. **Almacén**, store ; **pan**, bread ; **volumen**, volume, are masculine. **Sartén**, frying-pan, is feminine ; so also is **condición**, condition ; but **aluvión**, alluvion ; **embrión**, embryo ; **turbión**, squall, heavy shower ; **escorpión**, scorpion ; **sarampión**, measles, are masculine.

39.—Nouns ending in **r** are masculine : **calor**, heat ; **carácter**, character ; **dolor**, pain, sorrow ; **zafir**, sapphire. The exceptions in nouns commonly used are few : **flor**, flower ; **labor**, work, task ; **segur**, sickle, are feminine. **Mar** (sea) can be used indifferently as masculine or feminine when it is not qualified by a geographical adjective, in which case, as we have already said, it is always masculine.

Un mar tempestuoso or una
mar tempestuosa.

Se dió a la mar.

La mar estaba muy agitada.

A stormy sea.

He sailed.

The sea was rough.

El mar Adriático.

The Adriatic.

El mar Amarillo.

The Yellow Sea.

El Archipiélago (Mar Egeo).

The Aegean Sea.

40.—Nouns ending in **u** are masculine : **espíritu**, spirit, ghost. But **tribu**, tribe, is feminine.

41.—Nouns ending in **z** are for the most part feminine ; but there are many masculine nouns with this termination : **cicatriz**, scar ; **coz**, kick ; **cruz**, cross ; **luz**, light ; **nariz**, nose, are feminine. **Arroz**, rice ; **barniz**, varnish ; **tamiz**, sieve, and some other less common words, are masculine.

VOCABULARY.

agua, *f.*, water.alto, *adj.*, high, tall.

beber, to drink.

bueno, *adj.*, good.café, *m.*, coffee.carne, *f.*, meat.caro, *adj.*, dear.cocina, *f.*, kitchen.

comprar, to buy ; compra, he buys.

comprender, to understand.

con, *prep.*, with.criado, *m.*, servant.

dar, to give.

decir, to say ; dice, he says.

hermana, *f.*, sister.hoy, *adv.*, to-day.Inglaterra, *f.*, England.

llevar, he carries, he takes.

madre, *f.*, mother.muy, *adv.*, very.niño, *m.*, child, boy.padre, *m.*, father.pan, *m.*, bread.para, *prep.*, for, to, in order to.

pasear, to take a walk.

puede, he can.

¿ qué ?, what ?

siempre, *adv.*, always.

tiene, he has ; tienen, they have.

tomar, to take, to drink.

vino, *m.*, wine.

EXERCISE.

El maestro sale a pasear con Juan y Lucía para enseñar bien la lección del día. La madre y el criado salen a comprar pan, café, y carne, cuando Juan y la hermana salen con el maestro. El café en Inglaterra es caro. El café en Inglaterra no es siempre bueno. El pan es muy bueno y la carne también. Alberto llega a la casa a comer con Juan y Lucía. El padre habla con Alberto. Alberto

es alto. La madre llega con el criado. El criado lleva a la cocina el pan, el café y la carne. El maestro, Juan y Lucía llegan de pasear. Juan quiere tomar agua. El maestro no puede tomar agua; puede y quiere tomar vino. Juan comprende hoy la lección muy bien. Pasear es muy bueno para comprender la lección. Lucía dice la lección.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Sale a pasear el maestro ? ¿ Salen Juan y Lucía ? ¿ Qué sale a comprar la madre ? ¿ Cuándo sale la madre a comprar café ? ¿ Sale el criado ? ¿ Para qué sale el maestro a pasear con Juan y Lucía ? ¿ Es caro el café en Inglaterra ? ¿ Es bueno ? ¿ Es siempre bueno el café en Inglaterra ? ¿ Para qué llega Alberto ? ¿ Habla Alberto en la casa con el criado ? ¿ Qué lleva el criado a la cocina ? ¿ Qué quiere tomar Juan ? ¿ Toma vino Juan ? ¿ Toma vino Lucía ? ¿ Puede tomar agua el maestro ? ¿ Qué toma el maestro ? ¿ Es bueno pasear para comprender la lección ?

TO TRANSLATE.

He goes out for a walk. He understands English, Spanish, and French. He speaks Italian very well: he does not speak when he cannot understand. John goes out to buy coffee and bread. There is a friend at the door. There is a friend of the servant in the kitchen. When is the servant going out? Does the servant go out to-day? The boy can drink coffee. The servant is very tall. To-day is a lesson-day. The teacher is now in the house. Coffee is not always good in England. Meat is not very dear. Wine is not good for the child. The servant speaks and goes out. 'The coffee is not good to-day', says the mother. What does the father say?

IV

NOUNS (*continued*)

NUMBER.

42.—THE plural of nouns ending in an unstressed vowel is formed by adding *s* to the singular :

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| amigo, <i>m.</i> , friend | amigos, friends |
| calle, <i>f.</i> , street | calles, streets |
| letra, <i>f.</i> , letter | letras, letters |
| metrópoli, <i>f.</i> , capital | metrópolis, capitals |
| tribu, <i>f.</i> , tribe | tribus, tribes. |

43.—The plural of nouns ending in a consonant or a stressed vowel is formed by adding *es* to the singular. In such cases final *z* changes to *c*, to preserve the same sound.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| alelí, <i>m.</i> , gilliflower | alelías, gilliflowers |
| árbol, <i>m.</i> , tree | árboles, trees |
| as, <i>m.</i> , ace | ases, aces |
| bajá, <i>m.</i> , pasha | bajaes, pashas |
| ciudad, <i>f.</i> , town | ciudades, towns |
| hoz, <i>f.</i> , sickle | hoces, sickles |
| mar, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> , sea | mares, seas |
| margen, <i>f.</i> , margin | márgenes, margins |
| reloj, <i>m.</i> , watch, clock | relojes, watches, clocks |
| una e, an e | dos ees, two e's. |

44.—Exceptions :

a. Although in nouns ending in the unstressed diphthongs *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, *uy* the *y* is a vowel and sounds like a vowel in the singular, in the formation of the plural this *y* is considered to be a consonant and is pronounced like a consonant.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| convoy, <i>m.</i> , convoy | convoyes, convoys |
| ley, <i>f.</i> , law | leyes, laws. |

b. mamá, papá, sofá add only an *s* : mamás, papás, sofás (sofas).

c. Words ending in stressed e add only s: ✕

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| café, <i>m.</i> , coffee-house | café ^s , coffee-houses |
| canapé, <i>m.</i> , lounge, settee | canapé ^s , settees |
| pie, foot | pie ^s , feet. |

The names of the letters of the alphabet ending in e follow the general rule concerning the words ending in stressed vowels: **una ce, dos cees** (a *c*, two *c*'s).

d. Words not stressed on the last syllable and ending in *s* in the singular admit of no change to form the plural:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| el lunes, Monday | los lunes, Mondays † |
| el miércoles, Wednesday | los miércoles, Wednesdays |
| la crisis, <i>f.</i> , the crisis | las crisis, the crises. |

Family names ending in unaccented *es, ez, or is* admit of no change.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| El Señor Martínez, Mr. Martínez | Los Señores Martínez, the Martínez |
| El Señor Llopis, Mr. Llopis | Los Señores Llopis, the Llopis. |

e. The plural of **frac** (dress-coat) is **fracues**.

f. The addition of **s** or **es** to form the plural does not alter the position of the stress in the word.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| árbol, <i>m.</i> , tree | árboles, trees |
| cañón, <i>m.</i> , cannon | cañones, cannons |
| murciélago, <i>m.</i> , bat | murciélagos, bats. |

There are, however, two exceptions: **carácter**, character, makes **caracteres**; **régimen**, régime, rule, makes **regímenes**. One may say either **cráteres** or **crateres**, plural of **cráter**.

g. For the formation of the plural of adjectives the same rules apply as in the case of nouns.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| abrigo, <i>m.</i>, overcoat, fur, shelter. | acaba de llegar, he has just arrived. |
| abuelo, <i>m.</i>, grandfather. | agradable, <i>adj.</i> , agreeable, pleasant. |
| acabar, to finish, to end. | |

| | |
|--|--|
| aire, <i>m.</i> , air. | hombre, <i>m.</i> , man. |
| aprender, to learn. | invierno, <i>m.</i> , winter. |
| baúl, <i>m.</i> , trunk. | ir, to go ; va, he goes ; van, they go. |
| calle, <i>f.</i> , street. | natural, <i>adj.</i> , natural ; naturalmente, <i>adv.</i> , of course, naturally. |
| capaz, <i>adj.</i> , able. | noticia, <i>f.</i> , news. |
| claro, <i>adj.</i> , clear. | partida, <i>f.</i> , party. |
| continuar, to go on, to continue. | pensar, to think, to intend ; piensa, he thinks, he intends. |
| conveniente, <i>adj.</i> , convenient. | pero, <i>conj.</i> , but. |
| debe, he must ; deben, they must. | poder, can ; puede, he can. |
| descansar, to rest. | porque, <i>conj.</i> , because. |
| desear, to wish ; desea, he wishes. | próximo, <i>adj.</i> , next. |
| día, <i>m.</i> , day. | que, <i>conj.</i> , that. |
| discípulo, <i>m.</i> , pupil. | ¿quién?, who? |
| España, <i>f.</i> , Spain. | rico, <i>adj.</i> , rich. |
| está, he is, she is, it is. | seguir, to go on, to follow. |
| extranjero, <i>adj.</i> , foreign. | semana, <i>f.</i> , week. |
| extranjero, <i>m.</i> , foreigner. | todavía, <i>adv.</i> , yet. |
| golondrina, <i>f.</i> , swallow. | viajar, to travel ; viaje, <i>m.</i> , trip, journey. |
| grande, <i>adj.</i> , large, big, great. | |

EXERCISE.

El abuelo llega hoy con una buena noticia. Dice que piensa ir a España el invierno próximo. Juan y Lucía deben ir con él. El maestro de español debe ir también, porque los niños deben continuar sus lecciones. El padre no piensa ir ; pero Alberto, el amigo de los niños, desea mucho viajar por España y el abuelo dice que quiere llevar a Alberto con los niños. Alberto desea ir naturalmente ; pero no sabe todavía. Viajar es fácil, pero es caro, y Alberto no es rico. La amiga de Lucía no va a España, acaba de llegar de Italia y quiere descansar. Dice que es muy agradable viajar por Italia. Para el viaje debe el abuelo comprar abrigos. Los niños deben comprar baúles. Juan es capaz de ir a comprar los baúles y los abrigos.

El abuelo sale para España con las golondrinas, desea aire más claro. El padre llega de la calle y dice que los días son buenos para viajar; está con él un extranjero, hombre muy rico, grande amigo de España y de los niños. Dice que él va también a viajar con ellos. El maestro, los discípulos, los amigos de los niños, el abuelo: ¡qué buena partida de viaje! Para aprender un idioma extranjero viajar es muy conveniente. Los discípulos deben viajar con el maestro.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién llega con una buena noticia? ¿Con qué llega el abuelo? ¿Qué dice él? ¿Van los niños con él? ¿Cuándo? ¿Va el maestro? ¿Desea Alberto ir? ¿Es fácil viajar? ¿Va a España la amiga de Lucía? ¿Qué dice la amiga de Lucía de su viaje a Italia? ¿Qué debe comprar el abuelo para el viaje? ¿Qué deben comprar los niños? ¿Quién va a comprar los abrigos y baúles? ¿Quién llega de la calle con un extranjero? ¿Quién es el extranjero? ¿Es viajar conveniente para aprender un idioma extranjero?

TO TRANSLATE.

The grandfather and the foreigner are going (*van*) to Spain. The children wish to go and John says the teacher must go also. The Spanish lessons must go on. Spain is not a very rich country. Winter is coming. Lucy must buy furs. A foreigner. A foreign teacher. To travel is very pleasant for children. A journey to Spain is very expensive (*caro*). A rich man can travel. It is easy for a rich man to travel. John's father arrives to-day.

V

THE ADJECTIVE

45.—THE Spanish adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun or nouns to which it refers.

1. Masculine adjectives ending in the singular in any vowel except **o** admit of no change in the formation of the feminine.

| | |
|--|---|
| un animal indígena , a native animal. | la tribu indígena , the native tribe. |
| un hombre triste , a sad man. | la mala suerte , bad luck. |
| el asunto es baladí , the subject is worthless. | una conversación baladí , a trifling talk. |

2. Adjectives ending in a consonant are also invariable, as far as gender is concerned :

| | |
|--|---|
| un cielo azul , a blue sky. | la montaña azul , the blue mountain. |
| hombre ruin , low, mean man. | mujer ruin , low woman. |
| el hecho más singular , the most singular fact. | la conducta es singular , the conduct is singular. |
| un dicho cortés , a courteous saying. | una frase cortés , a courteous phrase. |
| el día feliz , the happy day. | una feliz ocasión , a happy occasion. |

3. Adjectives ending in **o** in the masculine change the **o** into **a** for the feminine.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| niño bueno , good boy. | niña buena , good girl. |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|

Exceptions : (a) Adjectives ending in **án, ón**, or add an **a** to form the feminine : **burlón** (masc.), **burlona** (fem.), waggish ; **haragán** (masc.), **haragana** (fem.), idle ; **elemento perturbador**, disturbing element ; **doctrina perturbadora**, subversive doctrine.

The following adjectives in **-or** are invariable as regards gender: **mayor** (larger), **menor** (smaller, younger), **mejor** (better), **peor** (worse), **superior**, **inferior**, **exterior**, **interior**, **anterior**, and some others less frequently used.

(b) Diminutives in **-ete** and augmentatives in **-ote** change to **-eta**, **-ota** for the feminine: **feote** (masc.), too ugly; **feota** (fem.); **regordete** (masc.), chubby, plump; **regordeta** (fem.).

(c) Adjectives expressing nationality have two forms, one for the masculine and one for the feminine, when ending in **-o** or in a consonant: **andaluz** (masc.) Andalusian, **andaluza** (fem.); **danés** (masc.) Danish, **danesa** (fem.); **español** (masc.) Spanish, **española** (fem.); **húngaro** (masc.) Hungarian, **húngara** (fem.).

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

46.—The adjective is generally placed in Spanish after the noun it qualifies: **un hombre honrado**, an honest man, **una mujer hermosa, modesta y desinteresada**, a handsome, unpretentious, and disinterested woman. Adjectives the meaning of which is inseparable from the meaning of the noun which they qualify are, as a rule, placed before the noun: **blanca nieve**, white snow; **verdes praderas**, green prairies:

Oh padre! oh claro sol! O father! O bright sun!

47.—Possessive, demonstrative, and numeral adjectives generally precede the noun: **este niño**, this child; **nuestra casa**, our house; **tres libros**, three books; **primera y segunda lecciones**, first and second lessons.

48.—In some cases the position of the adjective affects its meaning.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Grande hombre. | Great man (in a moral sense) |
| Un hombre grande. | A tall, big man. |
| Un pobre hombre. | A simpleton, a good fellow. |
| Un hombre pobre. | A poor man. |

49.—There are no invariable rules in Spanish determining the position of the adjective: it generally follows the noun, but

usage is the best and only guide. In poetry or in oratorical passages the ordinary rules are not followed.

Ni aislada roca, ni escarpado
monte
del diáfano horizonte
el indeciso término corta-
ban.

No isolated rock, no steep hill
limited the dim line of the
transparent horizon.

NÚÑEZ DE ARCE.

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>acompañar, to accompany, to go with.</p> <p>acostumbrar, to use, to accustom.</p> <p>acostumbrarse, to get used to.</p> <p>adelantado, <i>adj.</i>, advanced.</p> <p>adelante, <i>adv.</i>, forward ; en adelante, hereafter.</p> <p>además, <i>adv.</i>, besides.</p> <p>admirable, <i>adj.</i>, admirable, wonderful.</p> <p>alegre, <i>adj.</i>, joyful, glad.</p> <p>alegría, <i>f.</i>, joy.</p> <p>allí, <i>adv.</i>, there.</p> <p>almacén, <i>m.</i>, shop, store, warehouse.</p> <p>andaluz, <i>m.</i>, <i>adj.</i>, Anda- lusian.</p> <p>aprender, to learn.</p> <p>así, <i>adv.</i>, thus, so.</p> <p>atención, <i>f.</i>, attention, care.</p> <p>cliente, <i>m.</i>, client, customer.</p> <p>¿cómo? <i>adv.</i>, how?</p> <p>componer, to make, to form, to compose.</p> <p>decidir, to decide ; han decidido, they have de- cided.</p> <p>dejar, to leave.</p> <p>dependiente, <i>m.</i>, clerk, seller.</p> <p>durante, <i>prep.</i>, during.</p> | <p>entonces, <i>adv.</i>, then ; para entonces, by then.</p> <p>entretenido, <i>adj.</i>, amusing, entertaining.</p> <p>ese, esa, <i>adj.</i>, that.</p> <p>estar, to be.</p> <p>estudio, <i>m.</i>, study.</p> <p>evitar, to avoid.</p> <p>excursión, <i>f.</i>, excursion, trip.</p> <p>expresarse, to express one- self.</p> <p>falta, <i>f.</i>, lack.</p> <p>hacer, to make.</p> <p>hay, there is, there are.</p> <p>ir a compras } to go shop- ir a tiendas } ping.</p> <p>mañana, <i>adv.</i>, to-morrow.</p> <p>mirar, to look at ; con sólo mirar, simply by looking at.</p> <p>molestia, <i>f.</i>, trouble.</p> <p>mucho, mucha, <i>adj.</i>, much ; muchos, many.</p> <p>novedades, <i>f.</i>, <i>pl.</i>, novelties, new things.</p> <p>objeto, <i>m.</i>, object, aim.</p> <p>poco, poca, <i>adj.</i>, little ; pocos, few.</p> <p>poner, to put.</p> <p>práctica, <i>f.</i>, practice.</p> <p>practicar, to practise.</p> <p>primavera, <i>f.</i>, spring.</p> |
|--|---|

principal, *adj.*, principal.
 pronunciación, *f.*, pronun-
 ciation.
 servicial, *adj.*, obliging, ser-
 viceable.
 si, *conj.*, if; si es posible,
 if possible.

tienda, *f.*, shop.
 todo, toda, *adj.*, every, all.
 tomar parte, to take part.
 varios, *adj.*, several, vari-
 ous.
 viajero, *m.*, traveller.

SER, to be.

Indicative.

Present.

soy, I am
 eres, thou art
 es, he, she, it is
 somos, we are
 sois, you are
 son, they are
 usted es, you are (*sing.*)
 ustedes son, you are (*plur.*)

Future.

seré, I shall be
 serás, thou wilt be
 será, he, she, it will be
 seremos, we shall be
 seréis, you will be
 serán, they will be
 usted será, you will be
 ustedes serán, you will be.

REGULAR VERBS. *First Conjugation.*

HABLAR, to speak.

Indicative.

Present.

hablo, I speak
 hablas, thou speakest
 habla, he or she speaks

hablamos, we speak
 habláis, you speak
 hablan, they speak
 usted habla, you speak.

Future.

hablaré, I shall speak
 hablarás, thou wilt speak
 hablará, he or she will
 speak
 hablaremos, we shall speak
 hablaréis, you will speak
 hablarán, they will speak
 usted hablará, you will
 speak.

NOTE. Subject pronouns are not generally used with the Spanish verb.

EXERCISE.

Han decidido dejar el viaje para la primavera próxima. De esa manera puede Alberto acompañar a sus amigos y así toda la familia toma parte en la excursión que va a estar

muy entretenida. Además, para entonces ya Lucía y Juan estarán muy adelantados en el estudio del español y evitarán así muchas molestias a los viajeros. En adelante hablarán siempre en español para acostumbrarse a la pronunciación. Saben ya componer frases (phrases); pero tienen dificultad (difficulty) en expresarse por falta de práctica. Mañana irán a un almacén español a hacer compras, para hablar, si es posible, con el dependiente que es un andaluz. Hay allí también varios americanos del Sud que hablan español y acostumbran acompañar a los clientes a ver el almacén : son alegres y serviciales. Van siempre adelante y señalan las novedades del día. Los niños comprarán pocas cosas, pero practicarán el español durante una hora o dos : ese es el principal objeto. En el almacén hay cosas admirables y puede el cliente aprender mucho con sólo mirar y poner atención.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Quiénes han decidido dejar el viaje para la primavera próxima ? ¿ Quién puede así acompañar a sus amigos ? ¿ Cómo va a estar la excursión ? ¿ Va toda la familia ? ¿ Quiénes estarán para entonces muy adelantados en el estudio del español ? ¿ Cómo evitarán molestias a los viajeros ? ¿ En qué idioma hablarán en adelante Juan y Lucía ? ¿ Para qué ? ¿ Saben ya componer frases ? ¿ Tienen dificultad en expresarse ? ¿ Deben practicar mucho ? ¿ Cuándo irán al almacén ? ¿ Con quién pueden hablar español allí ? ¿ Es español el dependiente ? ¿ Hay sudamericanos en el almacén ? ¿ Quiénes señalan las novedades ? ¿ Comprarán los niños muchas cosas ? ¿ Qué objeto principal tienen en ir al almacén ? ¿ Qué hay en el almacén ? ¿ Qué puede aprender allí el cliente ?

TO TRANSLATE.

Los días felices de la familia. María tiene abrigos blancos y azules para el viaje a España. Los grandes

baúles de Alberto no están en la casa; él dejó en el almacén los baúles con las pieles y con todas las cosas para el viaje. El padre de Alberto es un grande hombre. El dependiente del almacén es hombre muy grande. Los viajeros practican el español: saben muchas palabras; no pueden formar frases. Deben tomar parte en la conversación. Varios amigos de los viajeros saben también español, pero no lo practican; hablan francés siempre.

VI

THE ADJECTIVE (*continued*)

50.—WHEN placed immediately before the noun the following adjectives drop their final *o* in the singular:

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| alguno , some, any | primero , first |
| bueno , good | postrero , last |
| malo , bad | tercero , third |
| ninguno , no, none | uno , one. |

51.—The apocopation in this case is obligatory for all the above-mentioned words, except **tercero**, which in the expression **dentro de tercero día** (within three days or before the third day) may drop or keep the last *o* (e. g. **dentro del tercer día**).

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mal tiempo hace hoy. | The weather is bad to-day. |
| Ese era su buen deseo. | That was his good wish. |
| Algún día lo verá ella. | She will see him some day. |
| Ningún animal ha entrado. | No animal has come in. |
| Un amigo de mi padre. | A friend of my father. |
| El primer día del año. | The first day of the year. |
| El tercer capítulo. | The third chapter. |
| El postrer contratiempo. | The last mishap. |

52.—**Grande** loses its last syllable in the singular before nouns beginning with any consonant, except **h**:

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| gran señor | great lord |
| gran dama | great lady |
| gran terremoto | great earthquake. |

se llama Luis, this child's name is Lewis.

memoria, *f.*, memory; de memoria, by heart.

mismo, *adj., pron.*, same, self.

nacer, to be born; nació, he was born.

obra, *f.*, work.

otro, *adj.*, other, another;

el otro día, the other day.

país, *m.*, country.

pasar, to pass; pasar la

noche, to spend the night.

pato, *m.*, duck.

placer, *m.*, pleasure.

reciente, *adj.*, recent.

recitar, to recite.

sano, *adj.*, sound, healthy.

según, *prep.*, according to.

Señor, *m.*, Mr., Sir.

supo, he knew.

triste, *adj.*, sad.

venir, to come; viene, he comes.

vida, *f.*, life.

vivir, to live; vive, he lives.

SER, to be.

Indicative.

Past definite.

Fuí, I was

fuiste, thou wast

fué, he was

fuimos, we were

fuisteis, you were

fueron, they were

usted fué (you were) (*sing.*)

ustedes fueron (you were)

(*plur.*)

Imperfect.

era, I was, I used to be

eras, thou wast, thou usedst to be

era, he was, he used to be

éramos, we were, we used to be

erais, you were, you used to be

eran, they were, they used to be

usted era, ustedes eran, you were, you used to be.

REGULAR VERBS. *First Conjugation.*

HABLAR, to speak.

Indicative.

Past definite.

hablé, I spoke

hablaste, thou spokest

habló, he spoke

hablamos, we spoke

hablasteis, you spoke

Imperfect.

hablaba, I spoke, I was speaking, I used to speak

hablabas, thou spokest, etc.

hablaba, he spoke, etc.

hablábamos, we spoke, etc.

Indicative Past definite.

hablaron, they spoke
usted habló, ustedes ha-
blaron, you spoke.

Indicative Imperfect.

hablabais, you spoke, etc.
hablaban, they spoke, etc.
usted hablaba, ustedes ha-
blaban, you spoke, you
were speaking.

EXERCISE.

El maestro de español se llama Don Manuel Quijano : nació en España, pero vive fuera de su país hace tiempo : viaja mucho. Fué maestro de idiomas en América. Conoce casi toda Europa : habla de sus viajes con placer. El país que a menudo viene a su memoria es Dinamarca (Denmark), donde tuvo muchos y muy buenos amigos, según él dice. Sabe de memoria algunos cuentos de Andersen. El otro día durante la lección recitó el cuento del pobre pato que pasó una vida muy triste hasta el día en que supo que era un cisne. Dijo el maestro que ese cuento era la historia de la vida del mismo Andersen. El Señor Quijano puede leer en danés las obras de Andersen y dice que es lectura muy agradable y sana. En español hay también libros que será muy agradable leer con un extenso conocimiento del idioma ; pero hablaremos de lecturas en las próximas lecciones. Ahora llega Don Manuel y él nos contará una entretenida historia como la de ayer. Buenos días, Don Manuel. — Buenos días, amigos ; buenos días, Lucía : usted es la alegría de la casa. ¿ Sabe usted la lección ? ¿ Contará usted hoy la historia del triste pato en español ? Lucía dice : conozco la historia ; no sé todas las palabras españolas del cuento.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Cómo se llama el maestro ? ¿ Dónde nació ? ¿ Vive en su país ? ¿ Por dónde viaja ? ¿ Qué países conoce ? ¿ Qué país de Europa viene a menudo a su memoria ? ¿ Dónde queda Dinamarca ? ¿ Cómo se llama el habitante

de Dinamarca? ¿Quién recitó el cuento de Andersen?
 ¿Cómo se llama el cuento? ¿Quién pasó una vida muy
 triste? ¿Hasta cuándo pasó el pato una vida muy triste?
 ¿Es el pato grande como el cisne? ¿Puede el Señor
 Quijano leer un buen libro en danés? ¿Es agradable la
 lectura de los cuentos de Andersen? ¿Sabe usted leer
 danés? ¿Hay buenos libros en español? ¿Cuándo
 hablaremos de lecturas? ¿Quién llega ahora?

TO TRANSLATE.

There are good books to read, agreeable books, sound books at Don Manuel's house. There is a very amusing Spanish book called *Don Quixote*. Don Manuel often reads it. He knows some pages by heart. He will speak of *Don Quixote*. There are also amusing stories in recent Spanish books. Do you speak Spanish? My friend will speak Spanish. He practises with his teacher every day. He has Spanish books. He can read Spanish, he cannot speak very well. Lucy is the name of my friend: she speaks English and Spanish. She teaches English to Lewis and Mary. She has other lessons.

FEMININE ENDINGS OF NOUNS

54.—Sometimes there are in Spanish two different words to express the masculine or the feminine of nouns meaning living beings: **el hombre, la mujer** (man, woman), **el yerno, la nuera** (son-in-law, daughter-in-law); **el padre, la madre** (father, mother); **caballo, yegua** (horse, mare).

a. Usually masculine nouns ending in **o** or **e** form the feminine in **a**, suppressing the masculine ending: **el hermano, la hermana** (the brother, the sister); **el sirviente, la sirvienta** (the male servant, the female servant); **el primo, la prima** (the male cousin, the female cousin); **el monje, la monja** (the monk, the nun); **regente, regenta** (regent, a man; regent, a woman); but **alcalde** (mayor) makes **alcaldesa** (mayoress); **príncipe** (prince) makes

princesa (princess); **sacerdote** (priest) makes **sacerdotisa** (priestess). **Intérprete** (interpreter) and nouns expressing nationality and ending in **e** are invariable: **ateniense**, m. and f. (Athenian); **caribe**, m. and f. (Caribbean); **complutense**, m. and f. (from Alcalá de Henares).

b. Nouns ending in **d, l, n, r, s**, add **a** to form the feminine: **huésped**, **huéspeda** (the host, the hostess; the guest, the lady guest); **el general**, **la generala** (the general, the general's wife); **el capitán**, **la capitana** (the captain, the captain's wife); **doctor**, **doctora** (doctor, doctress); **señor**, **señora** (sir, lady); **dios**, **diosa** (god, goddess); **inglés**, **inglesa** (Englishman, Englishwoman). **Barón** (baron, baronet) makes **baronesa** (baroness); **conde** (count) makes **condesa** (countess); **poeta** (poet) makes **poetisa** (poetess); **actor** (actor) makes **actriz** (actress); **emperador** (emperor) makes **emperatriz** (empress); **cantor** (singer) makes **cantora** and **cantatriz**.

VII

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

55.—THE personal pronouns in Spanish are :

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| yo , I | nosotros , nosotras , we |
| tú , thou | vosotros , vosotras , you |
| él , he ; ella , she | ellos , ellas , they |
| usted (sing.), you | ustedes (pl.), you. |

56.—The pronoun of the second person singular is **tú**, a form which is only used when addressing persons with whom one is on terms of familiarity, as between father and son, between brothers, and between very intimate friends. **Vosotros**, **vosotras** is the second person plural and is used like the singular in familiar address. Orators addressing their audience or public writers addressing their readers generally use this form of the second person plural.

57.—*Usted* is used in Spanish instead of *tú* in formal address: *dígame usted*, tell me; *¿dónde está usted?*, where are you? It has a plural form, *ustedes*, to be used when addressing more than one person. It should be noted that *usted*, *ustedes*, although used as pronouns of the second person, require the third person of the verb: *usted es*, you are (sing.); *ustedes saben*, you (pl.) know.

a. These forms, in writing, are generally abbreviated into *Vd.*, *Vds.*

58.—As has already been said, personal pronouns in the subject form need not be used with the verb, unless they are required to avoid ambiguity or to emphasize the subject of the sentence.

Usted me dijo que esperara, pero yo no era de esa opinión. You told me to wait, but I was not of that opinion.

As the verb *era* is the form both of the first and the third persons singular of the imperfect, the pronoun must be used in this case for the sake of preciseness.

59.—The object forms of the personal pronouns are as follows:

| | <i>Direct form.</i> | <i>Indirect form.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>yo</i> | <i>me</i> | <i>me</i> |
| <i>tú</i> | <i>te</i> | <i>te</i> |
| <i>él</i> | <i>lo (or le)</i> | <i>le</i> |
| <i>ella</i> | <i>la</i> | <i>le (or la)</i> |
| <i>nosotros (m.), nosotras (f.)</i> | <i>nos</i> | <i>nos</i> |
| <i>vosotros (m.), vosotras (f.)</i> | <i>os</i> | <i>os</i> |
| <i>ellos</i> | <i>los</i> | <i>les</i> |
| <i>ellas</i> | <i>las</i> | <i>les</i> |
| <i>usted</i> | <i>lo (m.), la (f.), a Vd.</i> | <i>le, a Vd.</i> |
| <i>ustedes</i> | <i>los (m.), las (f.), a Vds.</i> | <i>les, a Vds.</i> |

a. The distinction here indicated between the direct and indirect forms of the third person singular (masculine) is not always observed by good writers. In Spain at present custom seems to incline towards the use of *le* for the direct form when referring to persons.

b. When preceded by a preposition the direct or indirect forms of the first and second persons singular are **mí, ti**: **a mí me buscan, no a ti**, they are looking for me, not for you. These forms we shall call prepositional or accentuated forms. The other pronouns keep after a preposition the nominative form. **Hablaban de nosotros**, they were talking about us.

c. The forms **mí, ti** after the preposition **con** form a single word with it and add the syllable **go**:

Ven conmigo. Come along with me.

No puede vivir contigo. He cannot live with you. (See § 85, *b.*)

60.—The direct and indirect forms are generally placed before the verb: **le (or lo) conozco**, I know him; **me dicen**, they tell me; **te llamó ella**, she called you. They may, at the beginning of a sentence, be placed after the verb (with which they then form a single word): **contóme todo lo que sabía**, he related to me all he knew; **parecióme al principio muy difícil**, it seemed to me very difficult at the beginning. With the infinitive and the present participle these forms now always follow the verb: **vino a verme**, he came to see me; **perdió su tiempo buscándola**, he lost his time looking for her. Two or three forms may follow the verb: **tráigamelo**, bring it to me.

a. The direct object of the second person plural added to the imperative plural causes this to lose the last *d* of the verbal form. **Amaos** (not **amad-os**) **los unos a los otros**, love each other. Yet we say **idos** (not **ios**), go (you). The first person plural of the present subjunctive also loses the last letter when **nos** is added to it: **vámonos**, let us go (not **vámosnos**); but not with the other forms of the pronoun: **dejémoslos**, let us leave them; **avisémosles**, let us advise them.

61.—The pronouns of the third person (**él, ella**) can be translated in English *he, she*, and also *it* when **él** or **ella**

refers to an inanimate object which happens to be masculine or feminine. Thus : **Juan viene mañana ; (él) desea conocerte** (John is coming to-morrow ; he wants to know you) ; **Luisa está enferma ; (ella) no puede salir** (Louise is ill ; she cannot go out). **¿Cuándo llegará el correo ? —No sé, acaso (él) no llegue hoy.** (When will the post arrive ?—I do not know, perhaps it will not be in to-day.) **La casa es vieja, aunque de lejos (ella) parece nueva** (the house is old, although from a distance it looks new).

a. **Nos** as a nominative is employed by high dignitaries of the Church, in decrees, letters, pastorals, instead of **Yo** : **Nos, Juan Manuel Rodríguez, por la gracia de Dios, ordenamos y mandamos.** The verb must be put in the first person plural.

b. **Vos** may be employed as a subject when one is addressing God, the Saints, or persons in high authority. **Vos, Señor, conocéis nuestras flaquezas.** The plural is required in such forms of address, whether the vocative refers to several persons or to a single one.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

- 62.—**mi** (pl. **mis**) my
tu (pl. **tus**) thy
su (pl. **sus**) his, her, your, its
nuestro (f. **nuestra** ; pl. **nuestros, nuestras**) our
vuestro (f. **vuestra** ; pl. **vuestros, vuestras**) your
su (pl. **sus**), their, your.

63.—The second person plural of the personal pronouns (**vosotros, vosotras**) and of the possessive adjectives (**vuestro, vuestra, vuestros, vuestras**) is seldom employed in the colloquial Spanish of America.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

- 64.—The possessive pronouns are :

| | |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| mío | mine |
| tuyo | thine |
| suyo | his, hers, yours, theirs |
| nuestro | ours |
| vuestro | yours. |

65.—These pronouns are often used with the article, but they may also be used without it.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ese es tu libro y éste es el mío. | That is your book and this is mine. |
| La casa no es suya sino mía. | The house is not his but mine. |
| Tuyas serán la responsabilidad y la gloria. | The responsibility and the glory will be yours. |

a. To avoid ambiguity *suyo* in the sense of your or yours is replaced by the form *de usted, de ustedes, el de usted, el de ustedes*.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| La palabra de usted decidió el punto. | Your word decided the case. |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| anoche, <i>adv.</i> , last night. | niñez, <i>f.</i> , childhood. |
| ciudad, <i>f.</i> , city, town. | noche, <i>f.</i> , night. |
| conservar, to keep, to preserve. | nombre, <i>m.</i> , name, noun (gram.). |
| deseo, <i>m.</i> , wish. | olvidar, to forget; olvidando, forgetting. |
| dijo, he or she said. | palabra, <i>f.</i> , word. |
| educar, to educate, to train. | pensar, to think; pensé, I thought. |
| ejercicio, <i>m.</i> , exercise, theme. | principiar, to begin. |
| es decir, that is to say. | promesa, <i>f.</i> , promise. |
| estudiar, to study. | prometer, to promise; prometimos, we promised. |
| fácilmente, <i>adv.</i> , easily. | recordar, to recall, to remember. |
| flaco, <i>adj.</i> , frail, meagre, lean, weak. | reparar, to go over. |
| frase, <i>f.</i> , phrase. | sabía (from saber), I knew. |
| guerra, <i>f.</i> , war. | si, <i>conj.</i> , if, whether. |
| hecho, <i>m.</i> , fact; hecho, <i>part.</i> , made. | sin, <i>prep.</i> , without; sin duda, without doubt, doubtless, no doubt; sin embargo, however. |
| importante, <i>adj.</i> , important. | suceso, <i>m.</i> , event, incident. |
| interés, <i>m.</i> , interest. | |
| largo, <i>adj.</i> , long. | |
| mejor, <i>adj.</i> , <i>adv.</i> , better; lo mejor, the best. | |
| menos, <i>adv.</i> , less. | |
| mucho, <i>adj.</i> , <i>adv.</i> , much. | |

talento, *m.*, talent.
tarde, *f.*, afternoon, evening; **buenas tardes**, good afternoon.

último, *adj.*, last.
viejo, *m.*, old man; **viejo**, *adj.*, old.
ya, *adv.*, already.

VERBS.

Ser, *to be*

(*auxiliary irregular*).

Indicative. Future in the past.

sería, I should be
serías, thou wouldst be

sería, he would be
seríamos, we should be

seríais, you would be
serían, they would be

usted sería, you would be.

Hablar, *to speak*

(*regular, first conjugation*).

Indicative. Future in the past.

hablaría, I should speak
hablarías, thou wouldst speak

hablaría, he would speak
hablaríamos, we should speak

hablaríais, you would speak
hablarían, they would speak

usted hablaría, you would speak.

PODER (*irregular*), *to be able, etc.*

Indicative. Present.

puedo, I can
puedes, thou canst
puede, he can
podemos, we can
podéis, you can
pueden, they can
usted puede, you can.

Indicative. Past.

pude, I could
pudiste, thou couldst
pudo, he could
pudimos, we could
pudisteis, you could
pudieron, they could
usted pudo, you could.

EXERCISE.

‘Ayer prometimos al Señor Quijano una buena lección para hoy. ¿La sabes bien, Lucía? — No muy bien, y ¿tú, Juan? — Anoche pensé que la sabía, pero esta mañana la repasé y no sabía ya dos o tres palabras y frases importantes. — Yo, dijo Lucía, olvido fácilmente las frases; pero conservo en la memoria las palabras. El maestro dice que

es menos malo lo contrario (contrary), es decir, olvidar las palabras y conservar las frases en la memoria, y que lo mejor de todo es, sin duda, poder recordar las unas y las otras. Los viejos olvidan las palabras, pero no los hechos. Mi abuela recordaba hasta en sus últimos días los sucesos de la guerra de Crimea ; pero olvidaba siempre los nombres de los nuevos amigos que llegaban a casa con nuestro padre. Hablaba mucho ; acababa una historia y principiaba la siguiente, casi siempre en el mismo orden.' Juan dijo a Lucía : ' Tú ya puedes formar frases largas en español ; yo no puedo ; tu memoria es buena, mi memoria es mala.' — 'Aquí está Don Manuel ya. Don Manuel, hablábamos Juan y yo de usted, de la memoria y de la promesa de ayer. — Buenas tardes, dice el maestro, y ¿ cómo está la lección hoy? — La de Lucía buena, dice Juan ; mi lección no está buena, mi memoria es flaca. ¿ Estudiaba usted mucho en su niñez, Don Manuel ? — Sí, mucho. — ¿ Era buena la memoria de usted ? — No era buena ; pero, como ustedes saben, el hombre puede educar la memoria. Yo la educaba con ejercicios nuevos todos los días. Usted sabe la lección, Lucía, ¿ qué hace para aprender ? — Estudio de día y de noche con mucho interés. Juan me dice que mi memoria es muy buena ; yo pienso que mi deseo de aprender es mejor que mi memoria y que su talento.'

CONVERSATION.

¿ Quién prometió al Señor Quijano una buena lección ?
 ¿ Para cuándo ? ¿ Quién sabe la lección ? ¿ Sabe Juan la lección ?
 ¿ Sabía Juan anoche la lección ? ¿ Cuándo la repasó ?
 ¿ Qué olvida Lucía fácilmente ? ¿ Qué es menos malo : olvidar las frases o las palabras ?
 ¿ Qué es lo mejor ? ¿ Qué olvidan los viejos ? ¿ Qué conservan los viejos en la memoria ?
 ¿ Habla mucho la abuela ? ¿ De qué habla ?
 ¿ Quién puede ya formar frases largas en español ?
 ¿ Era buena la memoria de Don Manuel, cuando era niño ?
 ¿ Se puede educar la memoria ? ¿ Qué hace

Lucía para aprender la lección? ¿Es la memoria de Lucía mejor que la de Juan? ¿Qué piensa Lucía de su deseo de aprender?

TRANSLATE.

This man is a good friend of our teacher. He comes from Madrid. His name is Peter González. He can speak English well. He studied it in Spain in his childhood. His education was very good: he can also speak Italian and French. He could speak those languages when he was still (*todavía*) a child. He thinks (that) he can stay in London (*Londres*) a week. We shall take a walk with him every day. This morning we walked with him in the Park (*Parque*). To-morrow it will be better to go and (*a*) see the town. He must not go out without us. He does not know the town; and in a week he cannot see much of it. These streets are very long. There are many streets. We shall forget our lessons this week, if we walk every day in London with Señor González. — No: he speaks good Spanish also, and we can talk to him in this language. — I was forgetting it.

TRANSLATE.

Yo no sé. Tú hablas mejor que yo. Él y ella pueden aprender el ejercicio. Vosotros no podéis aprenderlo. Juan me enseña la lección. El maestro nos enseña el inglés. Él desea abrirle la puerta a usted. El padre debe educar a su hijo. Juan tiene un hijo: debe educarle. María tiene dos hijas: debe enseñarles bien su (her) idioma. No olvido la lección cuando la estudio bien. ¿Hablas español? — No lo hablo todavía. — ¿Quién tiene los libros? — María los tiene en su casa. — ¿Qué dijo el maestro a los niños? — El maestro les dijo: estudien la lección. A nosotros nos dijo: si la olvidan, repásenla.

VIII

AUXILIARY VERBS

66.—THE verbs **ser** (to be) and **haber** (to have) serve to form the passive voice and the compound tenses in Spanish. They are both irregular verbs.

a. CONJUGATION OF **Haber**, to have.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

he, I have
has, thou hast
ha, he has
hemos, we have
habéis, you have
han, they have.

Imperfect.

había, I had
habías, thou hadst
había, he had
habíamos, we had
habíais, you had
habían, they had.

Past.

hube, I had
hubiste, thou hadst
hubo, he had
hubimos, we had
hubisteis, you had
hubieron, they had.

Future.

habré, I shall have
habrás, thou wilt have
habrá, he will have
habremos, we shall have
habréis, you will have
habrán, they will have.

Future in the past.

habría, I should have
habrías, thou wouldst have
habría, he would have
habríamos, we should have
habrías, you would have
habrían, they would have.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present (and future).

haya, I may have
hayas, thou mayst have

Past (2nd form).

hubiera, that I had, or if I had, etc.
hubieras

haya, he may have
hayamos, we may have
hayáis, you may have
hayan, they may have.

hubiera
hubiéramos
hubierais
hubieran.

Past (1st form).

hubiese, that I had (if I had)
hubieses, that thou hadst
hubiese, that he had
hubiésemos, that we had
hubieseis, that you had
hubiesen, that they had.

Future.

hubiere, if I should have, etc.
hubieres
hubiere
hubiéremos
hubiereis
hubieren.

IMPERATIVE.

habe (tú), have (thou).

habed (vosotros), have (you).

Past participle.
habido, had.

Present participle.
habiendo, having.

b. The use of the verb **haber** is limited in Spanish to the formation of compound tenses (**he hablado**, I have spoken), **cuando hube entrado** (as I had entered); to a number of idioms: **haber menester** (to need, to want), **haber de** (to have to), **ha tiempo** (it is long since); and to the impersonal clauses meaning existence and equivalent to the English expressions: there is, there are, there was, etc. In the formation of these clauses, the plural is not used in Spanish: **hay agua en el jarro**, there is water in the jug; **hay manzanas sobre la mesa**, there are apples on the table.

c. **He** in **he aquí**, **he allí** (behold) has wrongly been described by grammarians as the imperative of *haber*.

d. The English verb *to have*, in the sense of holding or owning, is in Spanish **tener**, which, however, is used as an auxiliary in a limited number of cases (see § 76).

e.

THE VERB *Ser*, to be.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

soy, I am
eres, thou art
es, he is
somos, we are
sois, you are
son, they are
usted es, ustedes son, you
are.

Past.

fuí, I was
fuiste, thou wast
fué, he was
fuimos, we were
fuisteis, you were
fueron, they were
usted fué, ustedes fue-
ron, you were

Imperfect.

era, I was, etc.
eras
era
éramos
erais
eran
usted era, ustedes eran.

Future.

seré, I shall be
serás, thou wilt be
será, he will be
seremos, we shall be
seréis, you will be
serán, they will be
usted será, ustedes se-
rán, you will be.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sea, I may be
seas, thou mayst be
sea, he may be
seamos, we may be
seáis, you may be
sean, they may be
usted sea, ustedes sean,
you may be.

Past (1st form).

fuese, I were
fueses, thou wert
fuese, he were
fuésemos, we were
fueseis, you were
fuesen, they were
usted fuese, ustedes fue-
sen, you were.

Past (2nd form).

fuera, I were, etc.
fueras
fuera
fuéramos
fuerais
fueran
usted fuera, ustedes fue-
ran

Future.

fuere, if I were, etc.
fueres
fuere
fuéremos
fuereis
fueren
usted fuere, ustedes fue-
ren.

INDICATIVE.

Condición
Future in the past.

sería, I should be, etc.
 serías
 sería
 seríamos
 seríais
 serían
 usted sería, ustedes se-
 rían.

IMPERATIVE.

sé (tú), be (thou); sed, be
 (you).

Past participle.
 sido, been.

Present participle.
 siendo, being.

VOCABULARY.

almorzar, to lunch.
 atento, *adj.*, attentive.
 automóvil, *m.*, automobile,
 motor car.
 bizcocho, *m.*, biscuit.
 bollo, *m.*, cake.
 buscar, to look for.
 campo, *m.*, the country.
 castillo, *m.*, castle.
 cerca, *adv.*, near; *cerca de*,
 near.
 contar, to relate.
 contento, *adj.*, content, satis-
 fied; *contento de*, satis-
 fied with.
 cosa, *f.*, thing.
 ¿cuánto?, *adv.*, how much?
 how long?
 cuatro (numeral), four.
 dar, to give; *daba*, he gave.
 decir, to say; *dijo*, he said.
 dulces, *m. pl.*, sweetmeats.
 durar, to last.
 duro, *adj.*, hard.
 emparedado, *m.*, sandwich.
 estar, to be, to stay; *estaba*,
 he was; *estoy*, I am;
estuvieron, they were.

excelente, *adj.*, excellent.
 fiambre, *m.*, cold meat.
 frutas, *f. pl.*, fruit.
 genio, *m.*, character, dis-
 position.
 huevo, *m.*, egg; *huevos*
duros, hard-boiled eggs.
 idea, *f.*, idea.
 iré, I shall go.
 necesario, *adj.*, necessary.
 ocupado, *part., adj.*, occu-
 pied, busy.
 paseo, *m.*, walk; *paseo en*
coche, drive.
 persona, *f.*, person.
 pollo, *m.*, chicken; *pollo*
asado, roast chicken.
 que, *pron.*, that, which.
 quedar, to remain, to stay,
 to be left; to subsist.
 río, *m.*, river.
 sardina, *f.*, sardine.
 tal vez, perhaps.
 te, *m.*, tea.
 uno, una (numeral), one; a
 la una, at one o'clock.
 vecindad, *f.*, vicinity, neigh-
 bourhood.

EXERCISE.

Los niños estuvieron ayer casi todo el día en el campo con el maestro. El padre les dijo por la mañana a Juan y Lucía: 'El maestro me dice que está contento de vosotros: yo también estoy contento de él y de vosotros. El Señor Quijano os llevará al campo en nuestro automóvil. Sed buenos y atentos con él; es una persona excelente. Hay pocos hombres como él. Yo no puedo ir hoy con vosotros: estoy muy ocupado en estos días. Tal vez en la semana próxima iré yo al campo también: entonces me acompañaréis vosotros.' Cuando el padre acabó de hablar llamaron a la puerta. Era Don Manuel Quijano que venía a enseñar la lección. Quedó muy contento cuando los niños le contaron que el padre les daba el automóvil para ir a pasear. Don Manuel es hombre de muy buen genio: con los niños es alegre como si fuera un niño. La idea de ir al campo con sus discípulos lo llenó de alegría. Como el paseo duraría todo el día, Juan y Lucía buscaron el fiambre que era necesario llevar. Almorzarían a la una, cerca del río, y tomarían te a las cuatro en la vecindad del castillo. Llevaron pan, huevos duros, carne fría, emparedados de jamón, sardinas, bollos, bizcochos, un pollo asado, vino, frutas y dulces. Había otras cosas para llevar; pero no eran necesarias.

CONVERSATION.

¿Dónde estuvieron los niños ayer con el maestro?
 ¿Cuándo estuvieron los niños en el campo? ¿Con quién
 estuvieron los niños ayer en el campo? ¿Estaba el padre
 contento de sus hijos (children)? ¿Quién llevaría a los
 niños en automóvil? ¿Qué dijo del maestro el padre de los
 niños? ¿Hay muchos hombres como el maestro? ¿Puede
 el padre ir con los niños? ¿Cuándo irá el padre a pasear
 con los niños? ¿Cuándo llamaron a la puerta? ¿Quién
 era? ¿Quiénes le contaron a Don Manuel que el padre
 les daba su automóvil para pasear? ¿Para qué daba el

padre su automóvil? ¿A quién daba el padre el automóvil? ¿Es Don Manuel hombre de buen genio? ¿Es alegre? ¿Cuánto duraría el paseo? ¿Qué era necesario llevar? ¿Dónde almorzarían? ¿Dónde tomarían el te? ¿Qué cosas llevaron para el almuerzo y para el te? ¿Había otras cosas? ¿Las llevaron?

TRANSLATE.

We take tea at four o'clock. We lunch at one o'clock. At what time do they lunch in Spain? At noon or at one o'clock. We were in town at one o'clock. He was not with us. You (singular) are an excellent man. My children are satisfied with their teacher. I wish to take a walk with my friends. We shall have eggs, cold meat, and fruit for luncheon. There is a boiled egg for you. There is ham for the teacher's friend. Cold ham is a good thing for luncheon. Can you pass me the wine? Where is it? I cannot see it. There it is near the biscuits.

IX

REGULAR VERBS

CONJUGATION OF **Hablar**, to speak.

67.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

hable, I may speak, let me speak
hables, thou mayest speak
hable, he may speak, let him speak
hablemos, we may speak, let us speak
habléis, you may speak, etc.
hablen, they may speak, etc.

Past (1st form).

hablase, I might speak
hablases, thou mightest speak

Past (2nd form).

hablara, I might speak
hablaras, thou mightest speak
hablara, he might speak
habláramos, we might speak
hablarais, you might speak
hablaran, they might speak.

Future.

hablare, if I should speak
hablares, if thou wouldst speak

hablase, he might speak
hablásemos, we might speak
hablaseis, you might speak
hablasen, they might speak.

hablare, if he would speak
habláremos, if we should speak
hablareis, if you would speak
hablaren, if they would speak.

IMPERATIVE.

habla, speak (thou)
hablad, speak (you)

Past participle.

hablado, spoken.

Present participle.

hablando, speaking.

NOTE.—The correspondence between the Spanish and English tenses of the verb is not exact. The translation suggested here for the subjunctive tenses is only applicable to a limited number of cases, as will be seen in the chapters dealing with the Spanish subjunctive.

Aprender, to learn. 2nd Conjugation.

68.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

aprendo, I learn
aprendes, thou learnest
aprende, he learns
aprendemos, we learn
aprendéis, you learn
aprenden, they learn.

Imperfect.

aprendía, I learnt, etc.
aprendías
aprendía
aprendíamos
aprendíais
aprendían.

Past.

aprendí, I learnt, etc.
aprendiste
aprendió
aprendimos
aprendisteis
aprendieron.

Future.

aprenderé, I shall learn, etc.
aprenderás
aprenderá
aprenderemos
aprenderéis
aprenderán.

Future in the past.

aprendería, I should learn, etc.
 aprenderías
 aprendería
 aprenderíamos
 aprenderíais
 aprenderían.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

aprenda, I may learn, etc.
 aprendas
 aprenda
 aprendamos
 aprendáis
 aprendan.

Past (2nd form).

aprendiera, if I should
 learn, etc.
 aprendieras
 aprendiera
 aprendiéramos
 aprendierais
 aprendieran.

Past (1st form).

aprendiese, if I should
 learn, etc.
 aprendieses
 aprendiese
 aprendiésemos
 aprendieseis
 aprendiesen.

Future.

~~aprendiere, that I might
 learn, etc.
 aprendieres
 aprendiere
 aprendiéremos
 aprendiereis
 aprendieren.~~

IMPERATIVE.

aprende, learn (thou).
 aprended, learn (you).

Past participle.
 aprendido.

Present participle.
 aprendiendo.

VOCABULARY.

adelantar, to make progress,
 to advance.

afecto, *m.*, affection.

agradar, to please; me
 agrada, it pleases me,
 I like it.

a menudo, *adv.*, often, fre-
 quently.

América del Sur, *f.*, South
 America.

capital, *f.*, capital (city).

carta, *f.*, letter.

comerciante, *m.*, merchant.
comunicación, *f.*, communication.
comunicar, to communicate.
conocer, to know, to be acquainted with.
correctamente, *adv.*, correctly.
creer, to believe.
desde, *prep.*, since, from.
dificultad, *f.*, difficulty.
entretanto, *adv.*, meanwhile.
enviar, to send.
escribir, to write.
escrito, *escrita*, *adj.*, written.
esperar, to wait.
establecer, to establish.
fechado, *fecha*, *adj.*, dated.
interesante, *adj.*, interesting.
Londres, London.
mes, *m.*, month.
millón, *m.*, million.
modesto, *adj.*, modest.

nunca, *adv.*, never.
pasado, *pasada*, *adj.*, past, last.
placer, *m.*, pleasure.
por, *prep.*, by; **por medio**, by means.
progreso, *m.*, progress.
querido, *querida*, *adj.*, dear.
recibir, to receive.
República Argentina, *f.*, Argentine Republic.
seguramente, *adv.*, surely.
sincero, *sincera*, *adj.*, sincere.
tener, to have, to hold; **tuvo**, he had.
útil, *adj.*, useful.
varios, *varias*, *adj. pl.*, several, various.
venidero, *venida*, *adj.*, coming.
verdad, *f.*, truth; **en verdad**, in truth, indeed.
visitar, to visit.

69.

NUMERALS.

| | | | | | |
|---------|----|---------------|-----------------|-------------|---------|
| uno | 1 | diez y seis | 16 | ciento | 100 |
| dos | 2 | diez y siete | 17 | ciento uno | 101 |
| tres | 3 | diez y ocho | 18 | doscientos | 200 |
| cuatro | 4 | diez y nueve | 19 | trescientos | 300 |
| cinco | 5 | veinte | 20 | mil | 1000 |
| seis | 6 | veinte y uno | 21 ¹ | dos mil | 2000 |
| siete | 7 | veinte y dos | 22 | mil ocho- | |
| ocho | 8 | veinte y tres | 23 | cientos | |
| nueve | 9 | treinta | 30 | noventa | 1890 |
| diez | 10 | cuarenta | 40 | mil cuatro- | |
| once | 11 | cincuenta | 50 | cientos | |
| doce | 12 | sesenta | 60 | noventa | |
| trece | 13 | setenta | 70 | y dos | 1492 |
| catorce | 14 | ochenta | 80 | cien mil | 100,000 |
| quince | 15 | noventa | 90 | | |

¹ Instead of **veinte y uno . . . veinte y nueve**, **veintiuno . . . veintinueve** are frequently used in speech and writing.

EXERCISE.

Los niños recibieron hoy una carta de un amigo que vive en Buenos Aires, capital de la República Argentina. Este amigo se llama Antonio. Sus padres son españoles, comerciantes ricos, establecidos en la América del Sur, desde el año 1890. Antonio nunca ha viajado, es todavía un niño ; pero sus padres desean enviarlo a Europa el año venidero. Conoce a Juan y a Lucía, porque Don Manuel, que es amigo de los padres de Antonio, puso a sus discípulos en comunicación con él para que practicaran el español. Hablar es cosa excelente para aprender un idioma, pero escribir cartas es también útil ejercicio. 'No aprenderán ustedes el español correctamente,' dijo el maestro a Juan y Lucía, 'si no escriben a menudo.' La carta de Antonio dice : 'Queridos amiguitos (little friends) : Recibí su carta fechada el 24 (veinte y cuatro) del mes pasado en Londres. Me agrada saber que hacen ustedes progresos en el estudio del español. Es una lengua fácil, hermosa, muy útil : setenta millones de personas hablan español en América y en España. Su carta está bien escrita. La noticia que me dan de su viaje a España es muy interesante. Mis padres me dicen que el año venidero me enviarán a Europa. Muy seguramente visitaré la gran ciudad de Londres, donde espero tener el placer de ver a ustedes. Entretanto crean en el sincero afecto de su amigo que desea verlos.' Los niños pudieron leer y entender la carta sin dificultad. En verdad están ya adelantados en el estudio del español ; pero ellos no lo creen así, porque son muy modestos.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Quiénes recibieron una carta hoy ? ¿ De quién la recibieron ? ¿ De dónde la recibieron ? Cuándo la recibieron ? ¿ Cómo se llama el amigo de los niños ? ¿ Dónde vive ? ¿ Quiénes son sus padres ? ¿ De qué país son los

padres de Antonio? ¿Qué es Buenos Aires? ¿Dónde queda (is) la República Argentina? ¿Cuándo se establecieron los padres de Antonio en la América del Sur? ¿Qué desean ellos hacer con el niño? ¿Por qué conocen Juan y Lucía a Antonio? ¿Quién los puso en comunicación? ¿Para qué los puso en comunicación? ¿Es conveniente hablar un idioma para aprenderlo? ¿Es conveniente o necesario? ¿Qué dijo el maestro a Juan y Lucía? ¿Puede usted repetir la carta de Antonio? ¿Cuándo estaba fechada la carta de los niños a Antonio? ¿Qué dice Antonio de la carta de sus amigos? ¿Qué cree Antonio de la lengua española? ¿Dónde hablan esa lengua? ¿Cuándo espera venir Antonio a Europa? ¿Pudieron Juan y Lucía leer y entender la carta de su amigo de Buenos Aires? ¿Están él y ella adelantados en el español? ¿Creen ellos estar adelantados? ¿Por qué no lo creen?

TRANSLATE.

The study of Spanish is useful. Seventy millions of people speak this language. Many nations communicate their ideas by means of it. Nineteen different countries and several dependencies (*colonias*) in Europe, America, and Australasia use this language. The Spaniards took it to America in the year 1492. It is a useful, clear, beautiful, and very interesting language. If a man can (*sabe*) speak or write Spanish he can communicate in this language with many millions of people who cannot speak any other language. You can travel in South America from Mexico (*Méjico*) to the Argentine Republic and speak Spanish always: the people will understand you. The study of Spanish is also necessary to learn the character of the people who speak it.

Recibir, to receive. Third Conjugation.

| 70. INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Present.</i> |
| recibo | reciba |
| recibes | recibas |
| recibe | reciba |
| recibimos | recibamos |
| recibís | recibáis |
| reciben. | reciban. |
| <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past (1st form).</i> |
| recibí | recibiese |
| recibiste | recibieses |
| recibió | recibiese |
| recibimos | recibiésemos |
| recibisteis | recibieseis |
| recibieron. | recibiesen. |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Past (2nd form).</i> |
| recibía | recibiera |
| recibías | recibieras |
| recibía | recibiera |
| recibíamos | recibiéramos |
| recibíais | recibierais |
| recibían. | recibieran. |
| <i>Future.</i> | <i>Future.</i> |
| recibiré | recibiere |
| recibirás | recibieres |
| recibirá | recibiere |
| recibiremos | recibiéremos |
| recibiréis | recibiereis |
| recibirán. | recibieren. |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> | IMPERATIVE. |
| recibiría | <i>Present.</i> |
| recibirías | recibe |
| recibiría | recibid. |
| recibiríamos | <i>Past participle.</i> |
| recibiríais | recibido. |
| recibirían. | <i>Present participle.</i> |
| | recibiendo. |

a. There are in Spanish three different conjugations. The verbs ending in **ar**, in the infinitive, are of the first conjugation ; those ending in **er** belong to the second ; and **ir** is the ending of the third. In the regular verbs the stem (that is to say, what is left when **ar**, **er**, or **ir** is taken from the infinitive) remains unaltered in all moods and tenses. So **habl-ar**, to speak, is a regular verb of the first conjugation ; **aprend-er**, to learn, is a regular verb of the second ; and **recib-ir**, to receive, belongs to the third. In the conjugation of these three verbs the stem—**habl-**, **aprend-**, **recib-**, serves, unaltered, to form all the tenses of the verbs : **habl-o**, **habl-é**, **habl-ase** ; **aprend-ía**, **aprend-eré**, **aprend-iere** ; **recib-iría**, **recib-id**, **recib-iendo**. All the regular verbs, according to their ending, are conjugated on the models **habl-ar**, **aprend-er**, **recib-ir**, the conjugations of which have been already given.

b. The compound tenses are formed in Spanish by means of the auxiliary **haber** and the past participle of the respective verb :

He hablado. I have spoken.

Cuando él hubo hablado, terminó la sesión.

When he finished speaking, the sitting ended.

Ella había aprendido la lección cuando volví de compras.

She had learned her lesson when I returned from shopping.

Yo no habría recibido su carta, sin demorar mi partida.

I should not have received her letter, had I not delayed my departure.

Habré acabado el trabajo, cuando usted regrese.

I shall have finished the work when you return.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

71.—The Spanish present tense of the indicative mood is used generally with the same meaning as in English :

Conozco los pormenores del negocio.

I know the particulars of the business.

Vivo por lo regular en el campo, durante el invierno.

I live customarily in the country during the winter.

Deseo a usted buen viaje.

I wish you a good voyage.

a. The verbal forms known in English as progressive or continuous present are also used in Spanish. The verb *estar* takes the place of the English *to be*.

Está lloviendo, it is raining.

They are not so widely used in Spanish as in English: *llueve* means 'it rains' or 'it is raining'.

72.—The perfect, formed with the verb *to have* and the past participle, refers to an action that has already happened, but of which we wish to imply that some traces are still noticeable, as though the action had just ceased.

He visto a mi amigo. I have seen my friend.

This shade of meaning marks the difference between the perfect and the past.

Mi padre murió el año pasado. My father died last year.

a. When a date or a special time is expressed in the sentence the perfect should not be used. It would not be correct to say in Spanish: **mi padre ha muerto el año pasado.**

73.—The imperfect is used to represent an action that coincides either in part of its duration or all of it with another past action.

Hablaban recio, cuando entré. They were talking aloud as I went in.

a. In some cases the imperfect is used to make the expression more vivid or to lend a certain touch of actuality.

¿Conoció usted a Castelar? Fué el mejor orador de su tiempo.
¿Conoció usted a Castelar? Era el mejor orador de su tiempo.
 Did you know Castelar? He was the best orator of his time.

The two Spanish expressions have the same meaning, but the second suggests that the person mentioned is still present in the mind's eye of the speaker.

74.—There is scarcely any difference between the Spanish and the English use of the future tense of the indicative.

Veré mañana a Pedro en el teatro.

I shall see Peter to-morrow at the theatre.

75.—The future in the past (**hablaría, aprendería, recibiría**) is generally used in conditional sentences, as we shall see in connexion with the subjunctive dependent statements. It is also used to express probability or conjecture :

Sería mejor esperar, it would be better to wait.

As a tense of the indicative mood it refers to an action that happens after a past fact :

Dijo que vendría hoy, he said he would come to-day.

Nos aseguró que mañana estaría acabada la obra.

He assured us that the work would be finished to-morrow.

76.—The verb **tener** (to have, to hold) is also used in a few cases to form compound tenses. The tenses so formed have usually the same meaning as those resulting from the combination of **haber** with the past participle of other verbs ; but occasionally there is a difference that can be more easily perceived than defined.

He dicho que salgan. I have said that they may go out.

Les tengo dicho que salgan. I have told them to go out.

He terminado la tarea. I have finished the task.

Tengo terminada la obra. I have the work finished.

a. The employment of the verb **tener** in the formation of compound tenses is limited to verbs used transitively : it would be wrong to say **tengo dormido** for **he dormido**, I have slept.

b. The participle used with **tener** is not invariable as in the case of the compound tenses formed with **haber** :

Esté usted seguro de que para cuando vengan tendré aderezada la cena.

Be sure that I will have the supper ready when they arrive.

Tuve preparadas las camas desde las diez.

I had the beds ready since ten o'clock.

VOCABULARY.

- además, *adv.*, besides.
 antes, *adv.*, before.
 bajar, to come down, to go down.
 campo, *m.*, the country.
 casar, to marry.
 comer, to eat, to dine.
 crecer, to grow, to grow up.
 cuarto, *m.*, room.
 dejar, to leave.
 descansar, to rest.
 edad, *f.*, age.
 encontrar, to find, to find out.
 escuela, *f.*, school; escuela de primeras letras, primary school.
 fatigado, fatigada, *adj.*, tired, fatigued.
 fortuna, *f.*, fortune.
 gracioso, *adj.*, graceful.
 gramática, *f.*, grammar.
 guapo, guapa, *adj.*, good-looking, pretty.
 gustar de, to like, to be fond of.
 hacer, to do; **hacer provecho**, to do good.
 hora, *f.*, hour; ¿qué horas es?, what o'clock is it?
 India (la), *f.*, India.
 instante, *m.*, instant.
 junto, *adj.*, *adv.*, together, near by.
 lástima, *f.*, pity, compassion; es lástima, it is a pity.
 mañana, *f.*, morning; mañana, *adv.*, to-morrow.
 marido, *m.*, husband.
 medio, *adj.*, half; media hora, half an hour.
 minuto, *m.*, minute.
 motivo, *m.*, motive.
 muebles, *m. pl.*, furniture; un mueble, a piece of furniture.
 parecer, to seem; parece bien, it seems right.
 pariente, parienta, *m.* and *f.*, relative.
 pensar, to think; piensa, he thinks, she thinks or you think.
 permanecer, to stay.
 preparar, to prepare.
 provecho, *m.*, profit, good, advantage; le hace provecho, it does him good.
 señorita, *f.*, young lady, Miss.
 sí, *pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves; para sí, for himself, for herself.
 solamente, sólo, *adv.*, only.
 tarde, *f.*, afternoon; tarde, *adv.*, late.
 tiempo, *m.*, time, weather; buen tiempo, good weather.
 tocador, *m.*, dressing-table; objetos de tocador, dressing-table requisites.
 traer, to bring; traje, he brought.
 ver, to see; veía, he or she saw (*imperfect*).
 vez, *f.*, time, occasion.

EXERCISE.

Una amiga de los niños, llamada Magdalena, que vive siempre en el campo, vino esta mañana a visitarlos. Trajo varias cosas, porque piensa permanecer una semana. El viaje de su casa a Londres duró cuatro horas y unos minutos. Llegó un poco fatigada. Lucía la llevó al cuarto que había preparado para ella y allí la dejó reposar unos instantes. Magdalena llegó a las cinco de la tarde. Tuvo tiempo para descansar dos horas antes de bajar a comer. En su cuarto encontró todos los muebles y objetos de tocador necesarios: pudo no haber traído ella muchas de las cosas que trajo.

Lucía está muy contenta con la visita de su amiga. No la veía desde los tiempos en que estudiaban juntas en la escuela de primeras letras. Magdalena ha crecido mucho: es una señorita muy guapa y muy graciosa: tiene diez y siete años solamente, pero parece tener veinte. La vida del campo le hace provecho.

Lucía piensa llevar a su amiga a conocer en Londres los lugares más importantes. Mañana irán a tiendas. Sería una lástima para Magdalena regresar al campo sin conocer las tiendas de Londres. Además tiene que comprar vestidos para sí y para su madre y hermanas. Tal vez era éste, después de visitar a su amiga, el motivo principal de su viaje.

La familia de Magdalena no gusta de venir a la ciudad. En tres años sólo han estado en Londres una vez, por visitar a una parienta que se había casado y dejaba a Inglaterra para ir a vivir con su marido a la India.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién vino a ver a los niños? ¿Dónde vive Magdalena siempre? ¿Cuándo llegó ella? ¿Qué trajo Magdalena? ¿Cuánto tiempo piensa permanecer en Londres? ¿Cuántas horas dura el viaje de la casa de Magdalena a

Londres? ¿Cómo llegó ella? ¿Quién la llevó a su cuarto? ¿Dónde la dejó Lucía? ¿A qué hora llegó? ¿Tuvo tiempo para descansar antes de comer? ¿Qué encontró en su cuarto?

¿Desde cuándo no veía Lucía a Magdalena? ¿Dónde estuvieron juntas? ¿Cuántos años tiene Magdalena? ¿Es muy crecida para su edad? ¿Es guapa? ¿Es buena la vida del campo para ella? ¿Quién llevará a Magdalena a conocer Londres? ¿Regresará Magdalena sin conocer las tiendas de Londres? ¿Qué piensa comprar? ¿Para quién comprará vestidos? ¿Cual fué el principal motivo de su visita a Londres? ¿Y después?

¿Gusta la familia de Magdalena de venir a la ciudad? ¿Cuántas veces han estado en Londres en tres años? ¿A quién venían a visitar? ¿Adónde iba su parienta? ¿Con quién iba?

TRANSLATE.

My friend is coming (*viene*) to London to see me. He can stay only a month: it is a pity. I expect to see him next week. It seems (that) he is not very well. He wishes to take a rest. It would be good to travel. The weather is good.

The children go to school: they stay at school six hours, from ten to four, five days of the week. It does them good. They like to go to school. They will learn useful things. They are studying grammar.

They can read and write their language. When I was at school I liked grammar very much. Now I am studying other things.

The children will be at school all the year. They learn many things at home, besides.

What time is it? When are you coming? It would be well to wait. In an hour the teacher will be here. We shall go with him to the country. He likes the country. Magdalena goes with us. Another young lady

will be with her.—What is her name?—We do not know: we never saw her before. She was not at the school when we were studying.

X

THE ADJECTIVE

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

77.—Most adjectives form the comparative in Spanish with the adverb **más** (more) placed before the positive form.

rico, rich ; **más rico**, richer.
duro, hard ; **más duro**, harder.

a. A few adjectives change their form in the comparative degree.

bueno, good ; **mejor**, better.
malo, bad ; **peor**, worse.

| | |
|--|--|
| Saber es mejor que atesorar riquezas. | To know is better than to hoard riches. |
| No puede decirse que el frío sea siempre peor que el calor. | It cannot be said that cold is always worse than heat. |

b. The regular forms **más bueno**, **más malo** are also used, but less often.

c. The comparatives of **grande**, great, and **pequeño**, little, are **mayor**, greater, and **menor**, smaller. They serve specially to denote abstract differences :

| | |
|---|--|
| Quien navega corre un gran peligro, pero quien vuela corre un peligro mayor. | He who travels by sea runs a great risk, but he who flies runs greater risk. |
|---|--|

| | |
|---|---|
| La falta es pequeña, el castigo menor. | The offence is slight, the punishment slighter. |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|--|
| Mi hermano es mayor que yo dos años. | My brother is two years older than I am. |
|---|--|

Luis es menor que los otros tres estudiantes. Luis is younger than the other three students.

In other cases the ordinary form of comparison is preferred.

El huésped pidió una cuchara más grande. The guest asked for a larger spoon.

d. It should be noted that the word *than* of the English comparative is rendered in Spanish by *que*.

El sabe más que yo y me-nos que su hermano. He knows more than I and less than his brother.

e. **Inferior, superior, anterior, posterior, ulterior** are not always used as comparatives in Spanish. They follow the rules of the ordinary adjectives and do not require the conjunction *que* but the preposition *a* after them, when a comparison is meant.

Es superior a la calumnia. He is above slander.

Es inferior al desdén. He is beneath contempt.

f. Comparison of equality is expressed in Spanish by *tan . . . como, tanto . . . como*.

Es tan bueno como lo parece. He is as good as he seems to be.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

78.—There are in Spanish three demonstrative adjectives corresponding to the three persons of the personal pronouns. **Este** is the thing or person near the speaker, **ese** is the thing or person near the person addressed, **aquel** is the thing or person remote from both.

Le doy este libro para que lo conserve. I am giving you this book to keep.

Acérqueme esa silla. Pass me that chair.

¿Alcanza usted a ver aquellos árboles? Can you see those trees yonder?

79.—The following are the forms of the demonstrative adjectives:

Este, this (masc.)

Esta, this (fem.)

Estos, these (masc. pl.)

Estas, these (fem. pl.)

ese, that (masc.)

esa, that (fem.)

esos, those (masc. pl.)

esas, those (fem. pl.)

Aquel, that (masc.)
 Aquella, that (fem.)
 Aquellos, those (masc. pl.)
 Aquellas, those (fem. pl.).

80.—When used substantively, that is, when the substantive to which they refer is not expressed or when they follow the substantive, the demonstratives are accentuated.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| No quiero éste sino ése. | I do not want this, but that one. |
| No es éste el que yo conozco sino aquél. | This is not the one I know, but that. |
| El perro ése. | That particular dog. |

81.—Este and aquel are used in the sense of the *latter* and the *former*:

| | |
|---|---|
| El agua y el aire lo salvaron; aquélla le ofreció sustento, éste guió su barco a un lugar seguro. | Water and air saved him: the former gave him food, the latter guided his boat to a safe spot. |
|---|---|

a. *Aquel* means also remote times when not used in connexion with *este*.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Aquellos fueron días de gran terror. | Those were days of great terror. |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|

82.—There is a neuter form *esto, eso, aquello* used with reference to ideas previously expressed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Esto es lo que refiere la gaceta. | This is what the newspaper says. |
| Aquello no parecía conforme con los hechos. | That did not seem to be in accord with the facts. |
| Eso y lo que usted dice están en contradicción. | That and what you say are in conflict. |

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

83.—The forms of the personal pronouns for the first and second persons do not change in the reflexive construction.

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Me contento con patatas. | I content myself with potatoes. |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| Tú te abanicas. | You fan yourself. |
| Nos alabamos. | We praise ourselves. |
| Vuelve en tí. | Control yourself. |

84.—In the third person the form **se** takes the place of the direct and indirect object in reflexive constructions. After a preposition **sí** is used instead of **se**.

| | |
|--|--|
| Él se conoce. | He knows himself. |
| Ella se da al estudio. | She gives herself up to study. |
| Ellos se establecieron en Madrid. | They settled in Madrid; they came to reside in Madrid. |
| Ellas se admiran a sí mismas. | They admire themselves. |
| Lo dijo para sí. | He said it to himself. |

a. It is to be noted that the reflexive constructions in Spanish do not always correspond to a reflexive form in English.

85.—**Se** is also used in Spanish to denote the reciprocal action of the verb, in the third person plural, both for the direct and indirect object :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Se odian. | They hate each other. |
| Se prodigan alabanzas mutuas. | They lavish praise on each other. |

a. The reciprocal forms of the third person, singular and plural, after a preposition are rendered by **sí**.

| | |
|---|---|
| Fastidia, habla siempre de sí. | He bores, he is always talking about himself. |
| Volvieron en sí, después de un gran susto. | They recovered their senses after a great fright. |
| Tienen querellas entre sí. | They have quarrels amongst themselves. |

b. **Sí** preceded by the preposition **con** makes a single word with it and adds *go* (see § 59, *c*).

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Ella traía consigo un perro faldero. | She was bringing a lap-dog with her. |
|---|--------------------------------------|

c. The form **sí** cannot be used after the preposition **sin**, because this preposition can scarcely take a reflexive or reciprocal sense.

d. The Academy in its Spanish Grammar lays it down that in some cases the sense excludes the use of *se* in reflexive sentences and gives the following examples :

Mendoza llevó a la exposición su retrato hecho por él. Mendoza took to the exhibition his portrait painted by himself.

Mis amigos de Villaviciosa me enviaron flores, cultivadas por ellos. My Villaviciosa friends sent me some flowers that they had cultivated themselves.

There is nothing reflexive in these examples. **Flores cultivadas por ellos** is not a reflexive sentence: in the reflexive sentence the subject and the object are one and the same.

86.—In Spanish there are certain constructions with *se* which are reflexive only in form. (See § 310.)

| | |
|---|---|
| Se sabe. | It is known. |
| Se dijo entonces. | It was then said. |
| Se conocían las intenciones del enemigo.¹ | The intentions of the enemy were known (one knew the intentions . . .). |

87.—In some cases *se* is simply the form *le* or *les* altered for the purpose of avoiding the alliteration resulting from the concurrence of the direct and indirect forms of the pronoun of the third person singular or plural, and has no reflexive meaning :

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Se lo di (= Le lo di). | I gave it him. |
| Dígaselo. | Tell him so. |
| Púsoselo en la mano (= Puso le lo en la mano). | He put it in his hand. |
| Se lo avisé a ellos. | I made them aware of it. ² |

¹ *Se* is here the equivalent of the French *on* (*on sait, on dit*), which is a contraction of the word *homme* (man). In Spanish we also use the indeterminate pronoun *uno* in phrases of this kind :

| | |
|---|--|
| Uno sabe a qué atenerse cuando habla con gentes dignas de confianza. | One knows what one can depend upon when one is speaking to trustworthy people. |
| Una necesita el apoyo del hombre (a woman speaking) | One needs the support of man (see § 161, a). |

² Note that in the use of these forms *se* is always put first. **Se te espera a las diez**, you are expected at ten ; **se nos notificó la demanda**, we were served with the writ. **Te** goes before **me**, and **le** or **lo** is the last.

88.—The reflexive Spanish form is often translated in English by means of an ordinary transitive verb and the corresponding possessive pronoun :

Se corta las uñas. He cuts his nails.
Se le erizaron los cabellos. His hair stood on end.

THE SUPERLATIVE.

89.—The superlative is formed in Spanish either by means of the adverb **muy** placed before the adjective or by adding the termination **ísimo, ísima**.

Muy bueno, very good.

Bellísimo, very handsome.

90.—The last vowel of the adjective, when it ends in a vowel, is dropped to add the termination **ísimo** or **ísima**. **Triste**, sad ; **tristísimo**, very sad. Adjectives of three or more syllables, having the stress on the antepenultimate and ending in **eo, ico, fero, vomo**, do not admit of this inflection. Adjectives ending in **co** change **c** to **qu** to preserve the hard sound of **c** : **rico, riquísimo** ; and those ending in **go** change the **g** to **gu** to preserve the sound : **amargo**, bitter ; **amarguísimo**.

91.—Adjectives having the diphthongs **ie** or **ue** in the stressed syllable change these letters into **e** or **o** when the termination is added. **Ardiente**, ardentísimo ; **bueno**, bonísimo. But the change does not take place when the original Latin word has the **ie** or **ue**. **Paciente** (*patiens*), pacientísimo ; **frecuente** (*frequens*), frequentísimo. Yet **fiero** (from *ferus*) makes fierísimo.

92.—The following superlatives are irregular in their formation : **benévolo**, benevolent—benevolentísimo, very, most benevolent ; **fiel**, faithful—fidelísimo, very faithful ; **sagrado**, sacred—sacratísimo, most sacred. Adjectives ending in **ío** double the vowel **i** in the superlatives : **pío** (pious), piísimo (most pious). Some adjectives have two forms for the superlative : **pobre** (poor), pobrísimo and

paupérrimo; fértil (fertile), **fertilísimo** and **ubérrimo**; **bueno** (good), **bonísimo** and **óptimo**; **malo** (bad), **malísimo** and **pésimo**; **grande** (great), **grandísimo** and **máximo**; **pequeño** (small, little), **pequeñísimo** and **mínimo**. Note that the second form is the Latin superlative.

93.—There is no exact correspondence as regards the use of the superlative in English and Spanish. **Juan es alto, Luis es altísimo y Carlos es el más alto de los tres**; John is tall, Louis is very tall, and Charles is the tallest of the three. The first superlative (**altísimo**) cannot be rendered in English by tallest, and the second, which is rendered in English by the tallest, is expressed in Spanish by the article and the comparative form followed by **de**. **El mejor vino del mundo**, the best wine in the world. Note in this case the use of the preposition **de** instead of the English *in*.

94.—CONJUGATION OF **Estar**, *to be, to stay, to remain*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

estoy, I am
estás, thou art
está, he is
estamos, we are
estáis, you are
están, they are.

Present.

esté, I be, etc.
estés
esté
estemos
estéis
estén.

Past.

estuve, I was
estuviste, thou wast
estuvo, he was
estuvimos, we were
estuvisteis, you were
estuvieron, they were.

Past (1st form).

estuviese, I were
estuvieses, thou wert
estuviese, he were
estuviésemos, we were
estuvieseis, you were
estuviesen, they were.

Imperfect.

estaba, I was
estabas, thou wast,
 etc. (*regular*).

Past (2nd form).

estuviera, I were
estuvieras, thou wert
estuviera, he were
estuviéramos, we were
estuvierais, you were
estuvieran, they were.

INDICATIVE.

Future.

estaré, I shall be, etc.
(*regular*).

Future in the past.

estaría, I should be, etc.
(*regular*).

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

estuviere, if I were, etc.
estuvieres
estuviere
estuviéremos
estuviereis
estuvieren.

IMPERATIVE.

está, be (thou)
estad, be (you).

Past participle.

estado, been.

Present participle.

estando, being.

a. **Estar** and **ser**, though corresponding in most cases to the English verb *to be*, are not interchangeable in Spanish: in fact the correct use of these two verbs is a crucial test of the student's mastery of the language. The rule most easy of application is that **ser** implies permanency and **estar** implies position as well as temporary or transitory states of being.

La tierra es redonda.

The earth is round.

La verdad fué siempre enemiga del error.

Truth was always the enemy of error.

La plata está cara en estos días.

Silver is dear nowadays.

Estuve ayer en el campo.

I was in the country yesterday.

This rule is not always applicable, and the best plan is to follow good usage.

VOCABULARY.

acarrear, to bring upon, to bring to, to carry.
adoptar, to adopt.
arriesgar, to risk.

aumento, *m.*, increase.
autor, *m.*, author, writer.
beneficio, *m.*, benefit, favour.

bien, *m.*, good ; *adv.*, well.
castellano, *adj.*, Castilian.
caudal, *m.*, wealth, plenty.
circulación, *f.*, circulation.
colegio, *m.*, college.
compañero, *m.*, companion.
contribuir, to contribute ;
contribuye, he contrib-
 utes.
correr, to run ; **correr a**,
 to hasten to.
desconocido, *adj.*, un-
 known.
dinero, *m.*, money.
docena, *f.*, dozen.
en vez de, instead of.
escoger, to choose, to se-
 lect.
establecer, to establish ;
se establece, he settles
 down.
extraer, to draw, to extract.
festivo, *adj.*, festive, humo-
 rous.
francés, *adj.*, French.
ganar, to win, to earn.
hacer, to make ; **hizo**, he
 made.
héroe, *m.*, hero.
hijo, *m.*, son.
inmenso, *adj.*, immense.
invertir, to invest, to invert.
justo, *adj.*, just.
ligar, to attach, to bind.
lograr, to get, to attain.
mejora, *f.*, improvement.
mitad, *f.*, half.
modo, *m.*, mode, manner ;
de modo que, so that.
natal, *adj.*, native, natal.
natural, *adj.*, native, na-
 tural.
ni, *conj.*, nor, neither.

nieto, *m.*, grandson.
página, *f.*, page.
penetrante, *adj.*, keen, pene-
 trating, shrewd.
perder, to lose ; **pierde**, he
 loses.
población, *f.*, population.
pocos, **pocas**, *adj. pl.*, few.
poder, can ; **podía**, he
 could.
poner, to put ; **pongo**, I
 put ; **pone**, he puts ;
puso, he put.
popular, *adj.*, popular.
por lo menos, at least.
premio, *m.*, reward.
privado, *adj.*, private.
producir, to produce.
proporcionar, to provide.
pues, *conj.*, because, as,
 then.
recuperar, to recover, to
 get back.
sacar, to draw, to draw
 out.
sentido, *m.*, sense, mean-
 ing.
siglo, *m.*, century.
sociedad, *f.*, society.
sorpresa, *f.*, surprise.
suelo, *m.*, soil, land, ground.
tomar, to take ; **tomar**
cariño, to become at-
 tached.
venir, to come ; **vino**, he
 came.
ventaja, *f.*, advantage, bene-
 fit, gain.
volver, to return, to come
 back.
vuelta, *f.*, return ; **a la**
vuelta de, within, in the
 course of.

EXERCISE.

Juan y Lucía tuvieron hoy una agradable sorpresa. El maestro les hizo leer una página de un escritor español para ver si la entendían. Este escritor es Mariano José de Larra, uno de los más populares entre los autores españoles de la primera mitad del siglo XIX. Nació en Madrid el 24 de Marzo de 1809. Cuando tenía ocho años pasó a Francia con su padre e hizo en las escuelas de aquel país sus primeros estudios, de modo que, de (as) niño, sabía mejor la lengua francesa que la española; pero al volver a España, en 1817, a un colegio de Madrid, recuperó inmediatamente el uso de su lengua natal, en que vino a ser modelo. Esta es la página del festivo escritor castellano: 'Un extranjero que corre a un país que le es desconocido, para arriesgar en él sus caudales, pone en circulación un capital nuevo, contribuye al bien de la sociedad, a quien hace un inmenso beneficio con su talento y su dinero. Si pierde es un héroe; si gana, es muy justo que logre el premio de su trabajo (work), pues nos proporciona ventajas que no podíamos acarrearlos solos. Este extranjero que se establece en este país no viene a sacar de él el dinero; a la vuelta de media docena de años, no es extranjero ya, ni puede ser extranjero; sus intereses y su familia le (or lo) ligan al nuevo país que ha adoptado; toma cariño al suelo donde ha hecho su fortuna, al pueblo donde ha escogido una compañera; sus hijos son españoles y sus nietos serán también españoles; en vez de extraer el dinero ha venido a dejar un capital que traía, invirtiéndolo y haciéndolo producir; ha dejado otro capital de talento, que vale por lo menos tanto como el dinero; ha dado de comer a los pocos o muchos naturales que ha ocupado (employed) necesariamente; ha hecho una mejora y ha contribuido al aumento de la población con su nueva familia.' El maestro cambió

algunas palabras y frases para hacer más fácil el sentido y los niños entendieron muy bien.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Quién había preparado una sorpresa para los niños ?
 ¿ Qué sorpresa fué ésta ? ¿ Quién fué Mariano José de Larra ?
 ¿ Dónde y cuándo nació ? ¿ Qué edad tenía cuando fué a vivir a Francia ?
 ¿ Con quién fué a Francia ? ¿ Dónde hizo sus primeros estudios ?
 ¿ Qué lengua aprendió cuando era niño ?
 ¿ En qué año volvió a España ? ¿ Sabía todavía el español ?
 ¿ Cómo contribuye un extranjero al bien del país a donde va a establecerse ?
 ¿ Es justo que gane dinero en el país ?
 ¿ Saca él dinero del país donde se establece ?
 ¿ Continúa siempre siendo extranjero ?
 ¿ Quiénes le ligan al país de adopción ?
 ¿ Por qué se toma cariño al país adoptado ?
 ¿ Son extranjeros sus hijos y sus nietos ?
 ¿ Qué otro capital invierte que no es dinero ?
 ¿ Cuánto vale ese capital ?
 ¿ A quién da de comer ?
 ¿ Quiénes aumentan la población del país ?
 ¿ Entendieron los niños la página de Larra ?
 ¿ Qué hizo el maestro con algunas palabras y frases ?
 ¿ Para qué hizo el cambio ?

TRANSLATE.

A book written by Mariano José de Larra. I can understand many pages of this book, but I cannot understand it all. Larra was a shrewd writer ; he was also humorous. There are many Spanish authors. Cervantes is the best. His best book is *Don Quixote*. This book is gay and also very sad.

Spain is a large country in Europe, France is larger, Russia is the largest. France is very rich, but England is the richest. South America is a very large continent. It is not very well known in Europe. It is said that South America is a very rich continent. It is known that South America will be very rich.

There is a desire to know where his house is. He settled down in Madrid. He knows himself. She decided (*se decidió*) to leave to-morrow. He was told the truth. He is not known. She will be called to-day.

TRANSLATE.

Esta casa es nueva, aquella es novísima. Un autor jovialísimo y poco conocido. Su libro se entiende fácilmente. El español es una lengua fácil; más fácil que el francés o el italiano. La mañana ha sido clara; el día será clarísimo. Sé (I know) que Enrique llegará mañana. Dice que permanecerá en Londres un mes o cinco semanas. Piensa en ese tiempo conocer las cosas más importantes de la ciudad. Desea volver a Madrid. Visitará a París. Sus amigos de Francia desean verlo. Enrique ha vivido en París muchos años. Tiene muchos amigos en esa ciudad. Dice que viviría en París con agrado.

XI

NEUTER GENDER—RELATIVE
PRONOUNS

95.—IF we take into consideration simply the agreement of noun and adjective there are two genders in Spanish: masculine and feminine. But certain pronouns and adjectives when used to refer to ideas, predicates, or statements previously expressed have a neuter gender.

Sé esto porque Juan me lo dijo. I know this, because John told it me.

Esto and **lo** belong to the neuter gender. If instead of the word **esto**, which means, in this case, something of a general character to which reference has been made, we use a noun of the feminine or masculine gender, both **esto** and **lo** should give place to the corresponding masculine or feminine forms.

¿Sabes la noticia?—La sé, Have you heard the news?
 porque Juan me la dijo —Yes, I know it because
 y es ésta: el Ministro John told me it, and it is
 ha muerto. this: the Minister is dead.

96.—Adjectives used substantively to express abstract qualities are preceded by the neuter form of the article:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Lo bueno. | What is good. |
| Lo útil antes que lo agradable. | Usefulness before pleasure. |
| Lo futuro depende de lo presente. | The future depends on the present. |
| Lo mío y lo tuyo. | What is mine and what is yours. |

97.—Ello is the neuter form of the pronoun of the third person.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ello puede ser cierto, pero yo no lo creo. | It may be true, but I do not believe it. |
|--|--|

a. The forms for the direct and indirect object of the third person neuter are **lo** and **le** respectively.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Ha llegado la reina, pero lo ocultan. | The queen has arrived, but the fact is concealed. |
|---------------------------------------|---|

Lo replaces the statement 'ha llegado la reina'.

In **ha llegado la reina, pero la ocultan**, the meaning is: the queen has arrived, but they are concealing her.

| | |
|--|--|
| Las gacetas lo afirman, yo no le doy crédito. (Le, indirect object.) | The newspapers state it, I give no credence to it. |
|--|--|

98.—The neuter forms of the demonstrative pronouns are: **esto, eso, aquello**. They are used with reference to place and relation in accordance with the same rules as the masculine and feminine forms.

| | |
|---|---|
| Esto y lo que dice el diario precipitó mi viaje. ¹ | This and what the newspaper says hastened my departure. |
|---|---|

¹ Note that after two or more subjects of the neuter gender the verb is in the singular.

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Eso no está bien. | That is not right. |
| La lucha fué recia para lograr aquello. | The struggle to get that was hard. |

99.—The infinitive form of the verb, which is often used in Spanish as a noun, can be referred to in another sentence only by means of a neuter form of the pronoun.

| | |
|--|---|
| Desea estudiar, pero se desentendiende de ello fácilmente. | He wants to study, but he is prone to neglect doing so. |
|--|---|

a. It is to be noted that when the infinitive is used with the definite article the form required is that of the masculine gender, but even in this case it must afterwards be referred to by means of the neuter form of the pronoun :

| | |
|--|---|
| El madrugar es sano ; es preciso acostumbrarse a ello. | To rise early is wholesome ; it is necessary to get used to it. |
|--|---|

a. A predicative noun, whether masculine or feminine, is always referred to in the neuter gender :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ¿Es usted la reina ? — Sí lo soy. | Are you the queen ?—Yes, I am. |
| ¿Es usted mi vecino ? — Eso es. | Are you my neighbour ?—Precisely. |

100.—Note the idiomatic use of the neuter gender in the following expressions, both colloquial and literary :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Lo melancólica que estaba la tarde. | The sadness that pervaded the afternoon. |
| Lo caras que estaban las frutas. | The dearness that prevailed in fruit. |
| ¡ Y eso que era muy pobre ! | And very poor at that. |
| A eso de las diez. | Towards ten o'clock. |
| Ello es que su carrera está cortada. | The fact is that his career is cut short. |

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

101.—The relative pronouns in Spanish are *que* (invariable), that ; *quien*, *quienes*, who ; *el cual*, *la cual*, *los cuales*, *las cuales*, which ; *cuyo*, *cuya*, *cuyos*, *cuyas*, whose.

102.—**Que** may be used with reference both to persons and things :

| | |
|--|---|
| El comerciante que vive cerca de tu casa. | The merchant who lives near your house. |
| El viento que pasa. | The passing wind. |

a. **Que** may also be used in referring to clauses and predicative nouns or adjectives, whether preceding or following :

| | |
|---|---|
| Fué llamada la isla San Juan de Ulúa, en que anduvo la devoción mezclada con la lisonja. | The island was called Saint John of Ulúa, in which devotion and flattery were mixed together. |
| El suelo de Holanda, de estéril e ingrato que era, se ha convertido en un jardín continuado. | The soil of Holland, ungrateful and barren as it was, has been turned into one continuous garden. |

b. In its invariable form **que** may be either subject or object according to the nouns which it represents :

| | |
|---|---|
| Este es el niño que llegó ayer (<i>subj.</i>). | This is the boy who arrived yesterday. |
| El libro que divierte e instruye es el mejor (<i>subj.</i>). | The book that entertains and gives information is the best. |
| Las casas que vendió el banco (<i>obj.</i>). | The houses the bank sold. |
| Los sucesos de que hago memoria (<i>obj.</i>). | The events I recall to mind. |

c. Note that **que**, as a relative, cannot be omitted in Spanish as in English.

d. **Que** may be used in connexion with the article, and then it is the equivalent of *who*, *he who*, *those who*, *that which*, etc. With the neuter article it means 'what'.

| | |
|---|---|
| El que te adula te agravia. | He who flatters you, insults you. |
| Cuando llegó la niña comprendimos que ella era la que él venía a buscar. | When the girl arrived we saw that she was the one he was looking for. |

El premio pertenecerá a los que lleguen primero.

¿Tiene usted el libro que busco? — No, sino el que dejó aquí D. Pedro.

Lo que dicen es cierto.

The prize will belong to those who arrive first.

Have you the book I am looking for? — No; but that which Don Pedro left here.

What they say is true.

103.—CONJUGATION OF *Tener*, to have, to hold.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

tengo
tienes
tiene
tenemos
tenéis
tienen.

Past.

tuve
tuviste
tuvo
tuvimos
tuvisteis
tuvieron.

Imperfect.

tenía, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

tendré
tendrás
tendrá
tendremos
tendréis
tendrán.

Future in the past.

tendría
tendrías
tendría
tendríamos
tendríais
tendrían.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

tenga
tengas
tenga
tengamos
tengáis
tengan.

Past (1st form).

tuviese
tuvieses
tuviese
tuviésemos
tuvieseis
tuviesen.

Past (2nd form).

tuviera
tuvieras
tuviera
tuviéramos
tuvierais
tuvieran.

Future.

tuviere
tuvieres
tuviere
tuviéremos
tuviereis
tuvieren.

IMPERATIVE.

ten
tened.

Past participle.

tenido.

Present participle.

teniendo.

VOCABULARY.

- acerca de, about.
 agricultura, *f.*, agriculture.
 algodón, *m.*, cotton.
 algunos, algunas, *adj. pl.*, some.
 allá, *adv.*, there.
 aprecio, *m.*, esteem, appreciation.
 azúcar, *m.*, sugar.
 cabeza, *f.*, head; a la cabeza, at the head.
 calumniado, *adj.*, slandered.
 calzado, *m.*, boots, shoes, etc.
 carrera, *f.*, career.
 casa comercial, *f.*, commercial house.
 caucho, *m.*, india-rubber.
 cesar, to cease; sin cesar, incessantly.
 civilización, *f.*, civilization.
 comercio, *m.*, commerce, trade.
 como, *adv.*, as, like.
 correspondencia, *f.*, correspondence; llevar correspondencia, to carry on correspondence.
 costumbre, *f.*, custom, usage.
 cuantioso, *adj.*, copious.
 cuero, *m.*, hide, leather.
 deber, to owe, to be owing.
 dedicar, to dedicate, to give up to.
 departamento, *m.*, department.
- Diego, *m.*, James.
 diferente, *adj.*, different.
 diligencia, *f.*, industry, activity, diligence.
 éxito, *m.*, success.
 exportar, to export.
 exterior, *adj.*, foreign.
 factor, *m.*, factor, agent.
 ferretería, *f.*, hardware.
 fortuna, *f.*, fortune, riches.
 géneros, *m. pl.*, goods.
 gentes, *f. pl.*, people.
 honradez, *f.*, honesty.
 importar, to import.
 lana, *f.*, wool.
 largo, *adj.*, long.
 llevar, to carry.
 mal, *adv.*, badly.
 mercadería, *f.*, merchandise, goods.
 mostrador, *m.*, counter.
 mundo, *m.*, world.
 negar, to deny.
 oficio, *m.*, trade, occupation.
 posición, *f.*, position.
 pronto, *adj.* and *adv.*, prompt, soon.
 puesto, *adj.*, *past participle of poner*, to put.
 reputación, *f.*, reputation.
 seguir, to follow, to pursue.
 seguro, *adj.*, sure.
 sino, *conj.*, but.
 suave, *adj.*, mild, soft.
 tiempo, *m.*, time, weather.
 utensilio, *m.*, tool, utensil.

EXERCISE.

El padre de Juan piensa dedicar su hijo a la carrera del comercio. En ella ha hecho Don Diego (así se llama el padre) su fortuna que es cuantiosa y con ella ha logrado ganar la consideración de las gentes y el aprecio de sus compañeros de oficio. Algunas personas dicen mal del comercio; no se puede negar que algunos comerciantes hacen mal uso de su posición; pero el calumniado mostrador ha sido y es un factor de civilización. El comerciante ha puesto en comunicación los varios países y ha contribuido de este modo a hacer las costumbres más suaves.

Juan desea también seguir la carrera del comercio. Está estudiando español, porque este idioma es hoy importantísimo para los que la siguen. A menudo recibe Don Diego cartas en español, que no puede entender porque él no ha aprendido esta lengua, y las pasa a un dependiente sudamericano que lleva la correspondencia con los clientes de España y de Hispano América. Este dependiente, que ha vivido en Inglaterra muy largo tiempo, conoce bien las necesidades del comercio exterior y las costumbres comerciales de Europa, de modo que sus servicios son valiosísimos para Don Diego. Como los negocios crecen sin cesar, es seguro que muy pronto Juan estará a la cabeza de un departamento español en la casa comercial de su padre. En vez de un dependiente español o sudamericano tendrá media docena. Esta casa exporta a la América del Sud géneros de algodón y de lana, ferretería, utensilios de agricultura, calzado y otras mercaderías. Importa de allá café, cueros, caucho y azúcar. La casa de Don Diego tiene una excelente reputación no sólo en Europa sino en todo el mundo. Esto lo debe a su honradez y diligencia y al éxito.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cómo se llama el padre de Juan? ¿A qué carrera piensa dedicar a su hijo? ¿Cómo hizo Don Diego su

fortuna? ¿Es grande su fortuna? ¿Qué ha logrado ganar con su fortuna? ¿Quién dice mal del comercio? ¿Hay comerciantes que hacen mal uso de su posición? ¿Cómo ha contribuido el comercio a hacer más suaves las costumbres?

¿Qué carrera desea seguir Juan? ¿Por qué estudia español? ¿Qué hace Don Diego con las cartas en español que recibe a menudo? ¿Quién lleva la correspondencia con los clientes españoles e hispanoamericanos? ¿Dónde ha vivido el dependiente largo tiempo? ¿Por qué son muy valiosos sus servicios para Don Diego? ¿Por qué estará Juan pronto a la cabeza de un departamento español en la casa comercial de su padre? ¿Cuántos dependientes españoles o sudamericanos tendrá entonces? ¿Qué géneros exporta la casa a la América del Sur? ¿Qué importa de allá? ¿A qué debe la casa de Don Diego su excelente reputación?

TRANSLATE.

They say he will come to-morrow. We know that he will come very soon, but we are not sure that he will be here to-morrow. He will stay with us a week or two; but he will return to the country next month; his family is there. His family does not come to the city in winter. They used to come in summer. I do not understand that: I think the country is better in summer than in winter. We have received a book from our sister. We read it for a few hours in the morning. It is a most interesting book about the customs of the animals in South America. We have not in England many of the animals that we see in this book; the stories about them are extraordinary (*extraordinarias*).

We expect to go to see our friends as soon as they leave the school. We have not seen them this year. They live in Manchester. Manchester is a large city. Our friends like it very much. We have never been there.

TRANSLATE.

Vamos a leer en el libro de Lucía. Es lo mejor que podemos hacer hoy. No se puede salir. El día no está claro. Tal vez mañana será mejor. ¿Qué vamos a leer? Leamos acerca de las costumbres del mono (monkey). Esto es muy entretenido. En aquellos países la vida es diferente de la vida de Europa; por eso los animales de América son también diferentes de los animales de Europa.

¿Qué sabe usted de la niña que vive en la casa número 15? — Sé que su padre es comerciante. — ¿Sabe usted la edad de la niña? — Sí, la sé; pero no debo decir eso a usted. La casa en que vive es grande, clara (light, bright), muy buena para los niños de su edad; me gusta mucho.

XII

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

104.—THE relative **quien** (pl. **quienes**) is used to refer to nouns representing persons, or things personified, and is the equivalent of **el que, la que, los que, las que**.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| Las que vienen son mis amigas. | } | They who are coming are my friends. |
| Quienes vienen son mis amigas. | | |

a. But it must be noted that **quien** cannot always take the place of the relative **que**, preceded by the various forms of the article, even if these forms make reference to persons: we can say **el hombre que vino**, but not **el hombre quien vino**. To be properly used in subordinate clauses it must include its antecedent:

| | |
|--|---|
| Asegura, quien tiene ra- zones para saberlo, que Juan ha muerto. | Somebody who has grounds for knowing it affirms that John has died. |
|--|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Quien me busca me hallará.</p> <p>Entraron a las diez las damas, quienes, sin esperar la llegada de los hombres, pasaron al salón.</p> | <p>He who looks for me will find me.</p> <p>The ladies, who proceeded to the drawing-room without waiting for the arrival of the gentlemen, came in at ten o'clock.</p> |
|---|---|

In the last example **quienes** must necessarily be used, because the relative **que** would imply that not all the ladies arrived at ten, but only some of them, and these few alone proceeded to the drawing-room. When the subject of the subordinate clause does not limit the meaning of the subject of the main clause **quien** must be used; otherwise **que** is the proper word.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Las mujeres que llegaron tarde no encontraron puesto.</p> | <p>The women who arrived late did not find a seat.</p> |
|--|--|

Not all the women, but those who came in late.

b. After a preposition **quien** is generally used, but **que** is not excluded with *de*:

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>El soldado de quien (or de que) hablábamos ayer.</p> <p>No sé a quién acudir.</p> | <p>The soldier of whom we were speaking yesterday.</p> <p>I do not know to whom I should apply.</p> |
| <p>El abogado a quien conozco y con quien usted ha consultado el punto.</p> | <p>The lawyer I know and whom you have consulted on the matter.</p> |

105.—**El cual, la cual, lo cual, los cuales, las cuales** are translated by *who* or *which*. This relative can be used in reference to persons or things, instead of *who* or *that* or *which*, specially after a preposition.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Hay en la costa un peligro mayor, el cual debe evitarse con un rodeo.¹</p> | <p>There is, on the coast, a greater danger which must be avoided by means of a circuit.</p> |
|--|--|

¹ **Que** might also be used in this case; but **el cual** has the advantage of preciseness. **Que** might mean either the coast or the danger; **el cual** can only mean the danger.

Estos son los principios, según los cuales debe decidirse la controversia (que, as a relative, can never be used after según).

These are the principles according to which the controversy must be decided.

Ya están aquí los dueños de la biblioteca, con los cuales debe usted tratar.

Here are the owners of the library, with whom you must deal.

106.—Cuyo is a relative and at the same time a possessive adjective: it is the equivalent of *whose*, and may be used with reference to persons, animals, or inanimate objects.

No conozco al hombre de cuyos hijos me hablaba usted ayer.

I do not know the man of whose sons you were speaking to me yesterday.

Los libros cuya pérdida lamentamos.

The books the loss of which we deplore.

a. Some good classical authors and certain bad writers of our own time use *cuyo* instead of *el cual*, depriving it of its secondary meaning of possession. This practice is fortunately diminishing.

107.—Que, cual, quien, cuyo when used to frame interrogative sentences, whether direct or indirect, are accentuated.

¿Qué hora es?

What time is it?

¿De quién tiene usted la noticia?

From whom did you get the news?

¿Cuyo es este libro?

Whose book is this?

No sé cuál de mis amigos ha estado a verme.

I do not know which of my friends has been to see me.

108.—CONJUGATION OF Decir, to say, to tell (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

digo

dices

dice

decimos

decís

dicen.

Present.

diga

digas

diga

digamos

digáis

digan.

Past.

dije
dijiste
dijo
dijimos
dijisteis
dijeron.

Imperfect.

decía, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

diré
dirás
dirá
diremos
diréis
dirán.

Future in the past.

diría
dirías
diría
diríamos
diríais
dirían.

Past (1st form).

dijese
dijeses
dijese
dijésemos
dijeseis
dijesen.

Past (2nd form).

dijera
dijeras
dijera
dijéramos
dijerais
dijeran.

Future.

dijere
dijeres
dijere
dijéremos
dijereis
dijeren.

IMPERATIVE.

di
decid

Past participle.
dicho.

Present participle.
diciendo.

SPANISH FORMS OF ADDRESS.

109.—The word **Señor** in Spanish when followed by a family name is translated by *Mr.*, and **Señora** by *Mrs.*

¿Sabe usted, Señor Martínez, dónde está mi amigo? Do you know, Mr. Martínez, where my friend is?

a. When the person concerned is not addressed directly, **Señor** must be preceded by the article.

El Señor Martínez hablará esta noche en el salón de conferencias. Mr. Martínez will speak to-night in the lecture-room.

110.—Before a Christian name the word **Don** is used. **Don** does not take the article.

Don Guillermo es profesor de idiomas. Mr. William is a professor of languages.

a. In the feminine the word **Doña** is employed:

Doña María González es la mujer de nuestro amigo. Mrs. Mary González is the wife of our friend.

111.—In Spain and in some Spanish American countries **Don** and **Doña** (abbreviated into **D.**, **D^a**.) are considered to be a more respectful title than **Señor**, **Señora** (abbreviated **Sr.**, **Sra.**)

a. The two titles are often used together : **El Sr. D. Juan de Robles** ; **la Sra. D^a. Ana de Núñez**.

VOCABULARY.

actual, *adj.*, actual, present.

América Meridional, *f.*, South America.

aun, *adv.*, even.

bajo, *prep.*, under.

bastar, to suffice.

central, *adj.*, central.

clima, *m.*, climate.

común, *adj.*, common.

conquistador, *m.*, conqueror.

curso, *m.*, course.

deber, to owe ; **debido a**, owing to.

descubrir, to discover.

difusión, *f.*, diffusion.

dominio, *m.*, domain.

entre, *prep.*, between.

extremo, *m.*, furthest end.

ganar, to gain, to win ; **ganar en**, to increase.

imprensa, *f.*, press.

lazo, *m.*, bond, tie.

no obstante, *conj.*, notwithstanding.

Norte, *m.*, North.

obligarse, to oblige oneself, to engage oneself.

obtener, to obtain, to secure.

orden, *f.* or *m.*, order.

origen, *m.*, origin, source.

pequeño, *adj.*, small, little.

permiso, *m.*, leave.
pertenecer, to belong.
por completo, wholly.
portugués, *m.* and *adj.*, Portuguese.
poseer, to possess, to own.
propagar, to propagate.
pureza, *f.*, purity.
recorrer, to go over, to travel.
región, *f.*, region.
relativo, *adj.*, relative.
rey, *m.*, king.
solicitar, to ask for.

solo, sola, *adj.*, only, alone.
Sur, *m.*, South.
tampoco, *adv.*, not either, neither, nor.
territorio, *m.*, territory.
tierra, *f.*, land, earth.
uniforme, *adj.*, uniform.
uso, *m.*, usage.
valer, to be worth; **no vale la pena**, it is not worth while.
vecino, *m.*, neighbour; *adj.*, neighbouring.
ya, *adv.*, already, now.

EXERCISE.

Desde Méjico hasta el extremo Sur de la América Meridional se habla una sola lengua en lo que antes estuvo bajo el dominio del rey de España. Esta lengua es la lengua española que se conserva con relativa pureza en aquellas regiones. Hay pequeñas diferencias de un país a otro, pero el extranjero que aprende bien el español puede hacerse entender desde Méjico hasta la Argentina sin dificultad y puede a un mismo tiempo comprender a los habitantes de todas aquellas repúblicas.

Cuando los conquistadores solicitaban y obtenían permiso para ir a descubrir tierras se obligaban a ponerlas bajo la Corona (Crown) de Castilla y a propagar en ellas el idioma castellano. Daban esta orden los reyes porque en la misma España el idioma no era uniforme. De esta manera los españoles americanos lograron tener en su lengua un uso común, cosa que al tiempo de la conquista no existía en España, y aun hoy no se ha logrado por completo. Los actuales habitantes de la América Española tienen sobre los de otras partes del mundo la inmensa ventaja de poseer un solo idioma, el cual, debido a la facilidad de las comunicaciones, que aumentan siempre, y a la difusión de la imprenta, gana cada día en uniformidad, no obstante las

diferencias de clima y de costumbres entre los pueblos donde se habla. En Europa, en el curso de pocas horas, puede el viajero recorrer territorios en los cuales se hablan lenguas diversas, de vario origen y aun sin lazo aparente entre sí. Los habitantes de los pequeños países como Dinamarca deben aprender varios idiomas para poder comunicarse con sus vecinos. En la América Meridional el idioma castellano y el portugués, muy semejante al castellano, bastan para comunicarse con una población de muchos millones. En la América del Norte y en la América Central se habla inglés en los Estados Unidos y el Canadá, y español en los otros países.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Dónde se habla la lengua española en América? ¿ A quién pertenecieron antes esos territorios? ¿ Quién llevó a América la lengua española? ¿ Cómo se conserva allí esta lengua? ¿ Hay diferencias de un país a otro? ¿ Son grandes esas diferencias? ¿ Hay dificultad en hacerse entender en la América Española hablando español? ¿ Puede usted decir el nombre de las Repúblicas donde se habla español en América? ¿Cuál es la sola república de la América Meridional donde no se habla español? ¿ Qué idioma se habla en el Brasil (Brazil)? ¿ Quiénes descubrieron la América en el siglo XV? ¿ Quiénes conquistaron la América Española? ¿ Quiénes conquistaron el Brasil? ¿ A qué se obligaban los conquistadores cuando obtenían permiso para ir a descubrir tierras? ¿ Por qué daban los reyes esta orden? ¿Cuál fué el resultado de ella? ¿ Era uniforme la lengua en España al tiempo de la conquista? ¿ Qué ventaja tienen los habitantes de la América Española sobre los de otras partes del mundo? ¿ De qué manera gana en uniformidad cada día el español de América? ¿ Qué idiomas bastan en Sud América para comunicarse con las gentes? ¿ Y en la América del Norte? ¿ Es lo mismo en Europa?

TRANSLATE.

What is this? What house is this? This is our friend's house. Who lives in it? Two foreigners who have come (*venido*) to visit the country. Will they remain here long (*largo tiempo*)? They say they will stay here until the end (*el fin*) of the year. They will spend the winter in town.

Can you tell me the name of the woman we saw yesterday in the street when we were going to pay a visit to Peter?—Yesterday I did not know who she was; to-day I do know; Mrs. Ramírez told me. She is a Spanish woman of whom it is said that she is writing a book about this country: her name is Mrs. Arenal. She is a very good writer (*escritora*), whose books are well known in Spain and even in France and England. There are not many authoresses (*escritoras*) in Spain.

What did Mr. López tell you about his pupils?—He said Charles is good, Edward is indifferent (*regular*), but Mary, whose exercises are always excellent, is the best.—What languages is she learning?—French and Spanish: she can now read and speak French without difficulty, but she cannot understand French people when they talk to each other. She knows Spanish better.

TRANSLATE.

Quien sabe español puede comunicarse con setenta millones de hombres que hablan esta lengua. Quien tiene a sus padres tiene todo lo mejor que se puede poseer en el mundo. La mujer (woman) de quien hablábamos ayer es hermana de D. Carlos. ¿De quién son estos libros? or ¿Cúyos son estos libros?—Son del amigo de Juan, la persona con quien visitó usted ayer la biblioteca. Hoy deben llegar Pedro, Juan y Guillermo, quienes, según creo, permanecerán en la ciudad unas semanas, durante las cuales harán algunos negocios y visitarán los lugares más importantes. No conozco al autor cuyas obras he comprado

hoy y de las cuales se dice que todos los españoles deben leerlas.

¿Es usted la madre de estos niños? — Sí lo soy. — ¿Cuál es el mayor de ellos? — El mayor es Carlos; la menor, María. — ¿Están ya en la escuela? — No, tienen maestro en casa. Su (their) padre no quiere ponerlos en la escuela. El maestro, que es una persona excelente, viene cuatro días en la semana, enseña durante dos horas, y sale a paseo con los niños. Con tan buen maestro, el padre dice que no es necesario poner los niños en la escuela. Aquí aprenden lo que deben aprender y sólo eso.

15 20
10
13 XIII

41

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

112.—THE most extensive use of the subjunctive forms is found in the subordinate sentences depending on a verb expressing doubt, uncertainty, or some other frame of mind.

| | |
|---|---|
| <u>Dudo</u> que lleguen a tiempo. | I doubt whether they will arrive in time. |
| <u>Espero</u> que usted recupere pronto la salud. | I hope you will soon recover (your health). |
| <u>Temo</u> que usted no guarde el secreto. | I fear you will not keep the secret. |
| <u>Deseamos</u> que todos estén satisfechos. | We hope they are all satisfied. |
| <u>Extraña</u> que usted recurra a ellos. | He is surprised that you have resorted to them. |
| <u>No creen</u> que sea demasiado tarde para empezar. | They do not think it is too late to begin. |

In all these examples the verb of the main clause is in the indicative mood, present tense, and hence the verb in the subordinate clause is also in the present tense.

Estén satisfechos, recurra, sea are forms of the present tense of the subjunctive, and they refer to something happening simultaneously with the expression of the wish, surprise, or uncertainty; but **lleguen, recupere** and **guarde** refer to the future, that is, to something that will happen after the expression of doubt, hope, or fear. In Spanish, the present tense of the subjunctive mood is also used to express future actions or states of being.

If we change the tense of the verb in the main clause, the tense of the subordinate clause must be changed correspondingly.

| | |
|---|--|
| Yo dudaba que llegaran (or llegasen) a tiempo. | I was in doubt whether they would arrive in time. |
| Temí que usted no guardara el secreto. | I was afraid you would not keep the secret (or I was afraid of your not keeping the secret). |
| Extrañaría que usted lo hiciera (or hiciese). | I should be surprised at your doing it. |
| Esperaremos que vengan. | We shall wait for their arrival. |

In the last example, **vengan** is used in a future sense, because the verb of the main clause is in the future.

113.—There are two forms of the subjunctive mood to denote the past tense in subordinate clauses such as we are analysing: these two forms are **hablase** and **hablara**, and they correspond to the past and to the imperfect of the indicative.

If we say in the indicative:

| | |
|--|--|
| Advertí que hablaban en el cuarto vecino, | I noticed that they were talking in the next room, |
|--|--|

we must say, when changing the meaning of the verb in the main clause from certainty to denial or doubt:

| | |
|---|--|
| No dije que hablaran (or hablasen) en el cuarto vecino. | I did not say that they were talking in the next room. |
|---|--|

Dudaba que hablasen en el cuarto vecino. I was in doubt whether they were talking in the next room.

In sentences of this kind, where the verb in the subordinate clause is dependent on another verb expressing doubt, uncertainty, wish, surprise, etc., or a negation, the two forms of the past tense of the subjunctive mood may be indiscriminately used.

114.—The Spanish subjunctive is often employed to express condition, hypothesis, or supposition. For this purpose the form used for the future is generally the one ending in **-re**.

Le escribiré mañana si tuviere tiempo. If I should have time I shall write to you to-morrow.
Si resolvieras leer el libro que te recomiendo, avísame para enviártelo. Should you make up your mind to read the book that I am recommending you, please let me know and I will send it to you.

115.—When the condition is expressed by means of some word other than **si**, the form of the present subjunctive may be used, instead of the future, to express a coming action or state of being.

Como sea (or fuere) posible demorar mi viaje, le acompañaré al teatro esta noche. If it is possible to delay my departure I shall accompany you to the theatre to-night.

Note that with **si** the form **sea** is excluded. The indicative might be used: **si tengo tiempo le escribiré mañana**; but then we have a genuine indicative construction, and the fine shade of doubt and desire implied by **tuviere** would disappear.

a. For the past in the subjunctive of supposition the forms to be used are **hubiese** or **hubiera** combined with the past participle.

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Como hubiera (or hubiese) sido posible demorar mi partida le habría acompañado al teatro anoche.</p> | <p>Had it been possible to delay my departure I should have accompanied you to the theatre last night.</p> |
|---|--|

116.—After verbs such as decir, creer, afirmar, pensar, without negation the conditional sentence preceded by si calls for the indicative forms both in the if-clause and the then-clause :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>El creía que, si los enemigos se presentaban por el flanco derecho, sería fácil rechazarlos.</p> | <p>He thought that, should the enemy appear on the right flank, it would be easy to repulse him.</p> |
|---|--|

117.—If the supposition comes after a verb expressing doubt, fear, hope, or negation the indicative is used in the if-clause, but the subjunctive form in -ra or -se must be used in the then-clause :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Dudaba que, si los enemigos se presentaban por el flanco derecho, fuera posible vencerlos.</p> | <p>He doubted of the possibility of defeating the enemy should he appear on the right flank.</p> |
|---|--|

118.—The subjunctive is also used to take the place of the imperative forms of the first and third persons. As orders can be given directly only in the second person, the imperative mood has no first or third person. But as sometimes the sense implies that we address the command to ourselves or in the third person, these persons of the imperative are supplied by what may be called the optative forms of the subjunctive.

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>¡Muramos!</p> | <p>Let us die!</p> |
| <p>Diga él lo que quiera, la verdad es que está loco.</p> | <p>Let him say what he likes : the truth is that he is crazy.</p> |
| <p>Pasen los hombres a la derecha y las mujeres a la izquierda.</p> | <p>Let the men go to the right and the women to the left.</p> |

119.—Spanish has this peculiarity: that the second

person of the verb, when it is desired to express courtesy, consideration, or lack of familiarity with the person addressed, is replaced by the third. In this case also the optative forms take the place of the imperative. We say in the direct use of the imperative :

Ven acá que te necesito. Come here, for I want you.
Tomad lo que os envían. Take what they send you.

But if the sense of command be implied with reference to **usted** or **ustedes**, we say :

Venga usted acá que le (or lo) necesito. Come here, for I want you.
Tomen ustedes lo que les envían. Take what they send you.

120.—The imperative forms cannot be used negatively : therefore the optative is used also instead of the imperative in negative sentences of command.

No salgas. Do not go out.
No digáis eso. Do not say that (*plur.*).

121.—The sentences in which the conditional sense implies negation at the same time are not subject to the same rules as apply to the ordinary forms of the conditional sentences. In these sentences the forms in **-se**, **-ra**, and **-ría** have not a past but a present meaning, and their application, according to the best accepted usage, is as follows : in the first part of the condition (or if-clause) the sense requires the forms in **-se** or **-ra** ; in the second part (or then-clause) the form in **-ría** is accepted by current usage, but the form in **-ra** is not excluded.

Si usted lo creyera (or creyese) procedería de otro modo. If you believed it you would act differently.
Como nosotros tuviéramos (or tuviésemos) lo necesario, no pediríamos empleo. Had we what we need, we should not be looking for employment.

Note that in both sentences a negative sense is conveyed: *if you believed it* implies disbelief. The two languages coincide in this peculiarity and also in the use of the past, although the sense is manifestly present. If we say: **Como nosotros tuviéramos lo necesario, resolvimos no pedir empleo** (having what we needed, we decided not to ask for employment), the sense is affirmative, and the tense is manifestly past. In this case good usage requires the past, **resolvimos** and not **resolveríamos**, in the second part of the sentence.

122.—The compound forms **hubiese hablado, hubiera hablado, habría hablado**, follow the same rules as the simple forms.

| | |
|---|---|
| Si hubiera (or hubiese) sabido la noticia, me habría quedado en casa. | Had I known the news, I should have remained at home. |
| Como no hubiera comprado ya sombrero, habría tomado el que me ofreció usted. | Had I not already bought a hat, I should have taken the one you offered me. |

a. In Spanish as in English the conjunction **si** (if) may be omitted in these sentences.

| | |
|--|---|
| Hubiera él sabido lo que había sucedido y no demorara su partida. | Had he known what had happened he would not have delayed his departure. |
|--|---|

123.—When no condition is implied in phrases introduced by the conjunction **como**, the past subjunctive may be translated by means of the present participle in English.

| | |
|--|--|
| Como no supiéramos que venía no lo esperamos. | Not knowing that he was coming, we did not wait for him. |
|--|--|

The English construction may also be used in Spanish: **No sabiendo que venía, no lo esperamos.**

124.—Although some grammarians believe that they have reduced to strict rules the use of the subjunctive forms of the Spanish verb, it must be borne in mind that the best authors of

the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries do not generally conform their practice to precise rules, 'as might be expected', because 'we find that in language the correspondence between fact-statements and thought-statements on the one hand, and fact-forms and thought-forms on the other, is not always perfectly logical' (Henry Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, p. 109).

125.—CONJUGATION OF *Querer*, *to want, to wish, to love, to be fond of* (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

quiero
quieres
quiere
queremos
queréis
quieren.

Past.

quise
quisiste
quiso
quisimos
quisisteis
quisieron.

Imperfect.

quería, etc. (*regular*)

Future.

querré
querrás
querrá
querremos
querréis
querrán.

Future in the past.

querría
querrías
querría
querríamos
querríais
querrían.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

quiera
quieras
quiera
queramos
queráis
quieran.

Past (1st and 2nd forms).

quisiese or quisiera
quisieses or quisieras
quisiese or quisiera
quisiésemos or quisieramos
quisieseis or quisierais
quisiesen or quisieran.

Future.

quisiere
quisieres
quisiere
quisiéremos
quisiereis
quisieren.

IMPERATIVE.

quiere (tú)
quered (vosotros).

Past Participle.

querido.

Present Participle.

queriendo.

VOCABULARY.

- acaso**, *adv.*, perhaps.
adelanto, *m.*, progress, advance.
admirar, to admire; **admiración**, *f.*, admiration.
antiguo, *adj.*, old, ancient.
aplaudir, to applaud.
aprovechar, to profit by, to take advantage of.
arte, *m.*, art.
auditorio, *m.*, audience.
aunque, *conj.*, although.
calcular, to calculate.
calurosamente, *adv.*, enthusiastically, warmly.
camino, *m.*, road.
ciencia, *f.*, science.
conferencia, *f.*, lecture; **conferenciante**, *m.*, lecturer.
cuenta, *f.*, account; **dar cuenta de**, to relate.
cuidado, *m.*, care.
cultivar, to cultivate.
curioso, *adj.*, curious.
después de, *adv.*, after.
dictar, to deliver (a speech), to dictate.
documento, *m.*, document.
dudar, to doubt.
edificar, to build, to edify.
egipcio, *m. and adj.*, Egyptian.
entusiasmo, *m.*, enthusiasm.
escritura, *f.*, writing.
exclamar, to exclaim.
grado, *m.*, degree.
hora avanzada de la noche, late at night.
humanidad, *f.*, humanity, human kind.
ignorar, to be ignorant of.
indio, *m.*, Indian.
instructivo, *adj.*, enlightening, instructive.
inventar, to invent.
ir, to go; **fuimos**, we went; **fueron**, they went.
labrar, to work; **labrar la tierra**, to till.
largamente, *adv.*, at length.
levantar, to raise, to lift.
luna, *f.*, moon.
lleno, *adj.*, full.
mansión, *f.*, mansion.
medir, to measure.
mejicano, *m.*, Mexican.
movimiento, *m.*, motion.
música, *f.*, music.
pintura, *f.*, painting, picture.
poesía, *f.*, poetry.
poseer, to possess; **poseyeran**, they might possess.
preferir, to prefer.
primitivo, *adj.*, primitive.
publicar, to publish.
pueblo, *m.*, people.
siempre, *adv.*, yet, at all events.
sorprendente, *adj.*, surprising.
subyugar, to subdue.
suntuoso, *adj.*, sumptuous.
tejer, to weave.
tocar, to fall to one's share, to touch.
tradición, *f.*, tradition.
tropa, *f.*, troop.

¿Qué edad tiene usted? How old are you?

¿Cuántos años tiene su hijo de usted? How old is your son?

EXERCISE.

Fuimos anoche a la conferencia que dictó en el Ateneo D. Federico (Frederick) sobre las costumbres de los mejicanos, antes de la conquista de América. Es sorprendente el grado de adelanto a que había llegado ese pueblo. Los mejicanos sabían tejer, labraban la tierra, edificaban suntuosas mansiones; conocían el arte de hacer caminos, tenían un género (kind) de escritura como los antiguos egipcios y cultivaban la música, la pintura y la poesía. Sabían medir el tiempo y calculaban los movimientos de la luna. Dijo D. Federico que si los españoles hubieran tenido más cuidado en conservar las tradiciones de aquel pueblo, la ciencia habría podido aprovecharlas en beneficio de la humanidad. Es posible que aquellos indios poseyeran secretos que el hombre moderno acaso ignore. El conferenciante dudaba que al tiempo de la conquista los indios mejicanos subyugados por los españoles fuesen (*or* fueran) los mismos que habían levantado las pirámides (pyramids) que hoy son la admiración del mundo. Habló largamente del *Popol-Vuh*, uno de los documentos más curiosos de la historia primitiva de América, y dijo que, aunque este libro hubiera sido escrito por los naturales, como se afirma (as it is stated), después de la conquista, siempre tiene gran mérito por las tradiciones de que da cuenta, las cuales no han podido ser inventadas por los autores del libro. Don Federico, lleno de entusiasmo, llegó a decir que él habría preferido vivir en tiempo de Cortés, el conquistador de Méjico, si le hubiese tocado hacer parte de las tropas que fueron a Nueva España. 'No se hubieran perdido entonces, exclamó, muchos de los ricos tesoros históricos, de cuya existencia sólo sabemos hoy por la tradición.' La conferencia fué muy instructiva, y aplaudida calurosamente por

el auditorio. ¿Quién pudiera guardarla toda en la memoria! Como la publiquen, la compraremos sin duda.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién dictó la conferencia en el Ateneo anoche? ¿De qué habló D. Federico? ¿Estaba civilizado Méjico antes de la llegada de los españoles? ¿Qué cosas sabían hacer los mejicanos? ¿Conocían la escritura? ¿Tenían caminos? ¿Podían medir el tiempo? ¿Tuvieron cuidado los españoles de conservar todas las tradiciones de los indios? Si las hubieran conservado, ¿quién se aprovecharía hoy de ellas? ¿En beneficio de quién? ¿Es posible que los indios hubieran poseído secretos que hoy se ignoran? ¿Por quién fueron subyugados los mejicanos? ¿Los indios subyugados por los españoles era el mismo pueblo que había edificado los monumentos que se conservan hoy? ¿Qué es el *Popol-Vuh*? ¿Quién escribió este libro? ¿Cuál es su mérito? ¿Podría creerse que los autores inventaran esas tradiciones? ¿Quién conquistó a Méjico? ¿Qué nombre dieron los españoles a Méjico? ¿En qué tiempo hubiera querido vivir D. Federico? ¿Qué cosas habría él salvado si hubiera estado con las tropas de Cortés? ¿Cómo sabemos hoy de los tesoros históricos perdidos en Méjico? ¿Fué buena la conferencia? ¿Quién aplaudió? ¿Cómo fueron los aplausos? ¿Querría usted saberla de memoria? Si la publican, ¿la comprará usted?

TRANSLATE.

No puedo hacerlo porque no tengo tiempo; si pudiera, lo haría. Me dijo que esperara hasta mañana, que como él pudiese (*or* pudiera) hablar con D. Carlos, no dejaría de comunicarle mis ideas. Estoy esperando: si Don Carlos no quisiere comprar la casa, la tomaré yo mismo.

Los que llegaren tarde no hallarán cuarto: hay muchos huéspedes (*guests*) ya en la casa. Como mi amigo no tuviere donde quedarse, lo llevaré a casa. Creo que no

haya modo de salir mañana para París : hay muchos viajeros que han estado esperando turno (turn).

¿Dónde estaría Carlos anoche? — No creo que haya estado en su casa. Mi hermano lo vió en la calle a una hora avanzada de la noche. — ¿Sale siempre de noche? — No siempre, pero muy a menudo.

Los que quieran ir a la conferencia esta noche, deben hablarle a D. Federico. Yo iría, si pudiese ; pero me espera un amigo a quien debo acompañar al teatro (theatre). Acaso pueda ir a la próxima conferencia : es el sábado a las cuatro.

Traiga usted los libros ; el profesor ha llegado ya. No esperemos más. Carlos y Alberto no llegarán a (in) tiempo. Me dijeron que comenzáramos la lección, si a las dos no habían llegado.

TRANSLATE.

If he had spoken in (a) time, we should have known also in time what was to be done. I believed he knew that his father was here. Let us say what we know of the lesson. The lecturer said he would have preferred to live in the times of Hernán Cortés. It is easier to say this than to believe it. Give me the book.

Do you know the lesson? — I knew it last night, but I may have forgotten it. I do not think you have forgotten it. — Nor do I ; but there are many difficult phrases in the exercise, and I should not wonder if I had forgotten some. — Would you like to say one or two of the most difficult phrases? I can tell you if they are not correctly formed (*formadas*).

I want to buy a book, and I want to read it and give it to you. — What book is that? — The *Popol-Vuh*. — Curious title (*título*)! Is it in Spanish? Were it not in Spanish or in English, we could not read it.

Let us not want to know more than the teacher ; he says the exercise is not good : we must believe it. If it were good, he would be the first (*primero*) to say so.

XIV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

126.—THE impersonal verbs, in Spanish as in English, are only used in the third person singular of each tense ; but while in English they are always introduced by the neuter pronoun of the third person, in Spanish no subject is expressed.

| | |
|--|--|
| Nieva. | It snows. |
| Estaba granizando cuando llegué. | It was hailing when I arrived. |
| Ha llovido mucho este verano. | It has rained a great deal this summer. |
| Lloverá pronto, ya está tronando. | It will rain soon: it is thundering already. |

127.—There are a few verbs that are only occasionally used as impersonal.

| | |
|---|--|
| Conviene señalar de una vez la diferencia entre los dos puntos de vista. | It is convenient to point out at once the difference between the two points of view. |
| Basta escribir la carta por ahora. | It is enough for the present to write the letter. |
| Importa descubrir el objeto de su venida. | It is important to find out what is the object of his coming here. |

128.—The verb *ser* combined with adjectives like *necesario*, *conveniente*, *importante*, is used also in sentences that appear to be impersonal, though the subject can be supplied.

| | |
|--|---|
| Es necesario averiguar la verdad. | It is necessary to discover the truth. |
| Es preciso que usted lo guíe. | It is necessary that you should show him the way. |

In such phrases as these the subjunctive must be used with the subject of the subordinate clause :

| | |
|---|--|
| Es necesario que yo salga. | It is necessary for me to go out. (It is necessary that I should go out.) |
| Es urgente que sepan la noticia. | It is urgent for them to know the news. (It is urgent that they should know the news.) |
| Era preciso que usted regresara inmediatamente. | It was necessary for you to come back immediately. |

129.—**Hacer** is used impersonally to express the state of the weather.

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Hace frío. | It is cold. |
| Hará mucho calor este verano. | It will be very hot this summer. |

a. **Hacer** also expresses lapse of time :

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Hace diez años no le veo. | I have not seen him these ten years. |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|

130.—The verb **haber** is likewise used in an impersonal form in the sense of *to exist*, like the verb *to be* in English in such expressions as *there is, there was, there were* (see § 66, b).

| | |
|--|--|
| Hay una reunión todas las semanas en casa de los Suárez. | There is a reception every week at the Suárez's. |
| Había por lo menos mil compradores presentes. | There were at least a thousand buyers present. |
| Puede haber irrupciones aéreas el mes entrante. | There may be air raids next month. |
| Habrá misa solemne el jueves. | There will be a high mass next Thursday. |

a. Note that the inflexions of the verb are always in the singular, even when in English the plural form is required. In Spanish the noun is in the accusative case, while in English the noun is the nominative of the sentence.

b. In the expression **ha tiempo**, it is long since . . . , **haber** is also impersonal in appearance.

131.—The verb **haber** followed by the conjunction **que** is likewise used in an impersonal form to express necessity or obligation.

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Hay que tener presentes sus deseos. | His wishes must be borne in mind. |
| Hubo que abandonar las posiciones. | The positions had to be abandoned. |

132.—**Tener que** has the same meaning, but it can be used in all tenses and persons.

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Tengo que salir. | I have to go out. |
| Tendremos que aguardar hasta el lunes. | We will have to wait until Monday. |

133.—CONJUGATION OF **Saber**, to know (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sé
sabes
sabe
sabemos
sabéis
saben.

Present.

sepa
sepas
sepa
sepamos
sepáis
sepan.

Past.

supe
supiste
supo
supimos
supisteis
supieron.

Past (1st form).

supiese
supieses
supiese
supiésemos
supieseis
supiesen.

Imperfect.

sabía, etc. (*regular*).

Past (2nd form).

supiera
supieras
supiera
supiéramos
supierais
supieran.

Future.

sabré
sabrás
sabrás
sabremos
sabréis
sabrán.

Future.

supiere
supieres
supiere
supiéremos

Future in the past.

sabría
sabrías

sabría
 sabríamos
 sabríaís
 sabrían.

supiereís
 supieren.

IMPERATIVE.

sabe
 sabed.

Past participle.
 sabido.

Present participle.
 sabiendo.

VOCABULARY.

aconsejar, to advise.
 avisar, to advise, to warn,
 to notify.
 ayuda, *f.*, help.
 barrio, *m.*, quarter, ward.
 caballo, *m.*, horse.
 carga, *f.*, burden, load, car-
 go.
 cargo, *m.*, charge; tener a
 su cargo, to keep.
 contar con, to count on, to
 rely, to depend on.
 desalquilado, *adj.*, vacant.
 directamente, *adv.*, straight.
 dolor, *m.*, pain; doloroso,
adj., painful.
 elegir, to choose, to elect.
 embarcar, to ship; embar-
 carse, to go on board.
 empezar, to begin, to start.
 emprender, to undertake, to
 start.
 encima, *adj.*, above, over;
 quitarse de encima, to
 get rid of.
 enfermo, *adj.*, ill, sick; en-
 fermedad, *f.*, illness, dis-
 ease.
 esposo, *m.*, husband; es-
 posa, *f.*, wife.
 estación, station, season.

frío, *m. and adj.*, cold.
 gasto, *m.*, expense.
 gestión, *f.*, conduct, manage-
 ment; hacer gestiones,
 to take steps.
 la Habana, *f.*, Havana.
 hallar, to find; hallar una
 salida, to find an out-
 let or solution.
 horror, *m.*, horror, awe;
 tomar horror a, to abhor.
 huérfano, *m.*, fatherless,
 orphan.
 imposible, *adj.*, impossible.
 lejos, *adv.*, far; lejano, *adj.*,
 distant.
 llover, to rain; llueve, it
 rains.
 marcharse, to walk out, to
 leave.
 medio, *adj.*, half; son las
 dos y media, it is half
 past two.
 miseria, *f.*, poverty, misery.
 morir, to die; murió, he
 died.
 muerte, *f.*, death.
 Norte, *m.*, North.
 Pacífico, *adj.*, Pacific.
 parte, *f.*, part; por parte de,
 on the part of; through.

pronto, *adj., adv.*, prompt, quick ; promptly ; **por lo pronto**, for the moment.
pueblo, *m.*, village, people.
punto, *m.*, point, question, matter.
quitarse, to move away.
realizar, to realize, to sell.
sueldo, *m.*, salary.

teatro, *m.*, theatre.
traste, *m.*, fret ; **dar al traste con**, to spoil, to destroy.
tronar, to thunder ; **truena**, it thunders.
viuda, *f.*, widow ; **viudo**, *m.*, widower.
voz, *f.*, voice ; **dar voces**, to cry.

En casa de Juan, at John's. **En casa de mi amigo**, at my friend's. **Hace calor**, It is hot.

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|
| domingo | Sunday | Abril | April |
| lunes | Monday | Mayo | May |
| martes | Tuesday | Junio | June |
| miércoles | Wednesday | Julio | July |
| jueves | Thursday | Agosto | August |
| viernes | Friday | Septiembre | September |
| sábado. | Saturday. | Octubre | October |
| Enero | January | Noviembre | November |
| Febrero | February | Diciembre | December. |
| Marzo | March | | |

El primero de Agosto.

The first of August.

El dos de Enero.

The second of January.

El treinta de Mayo.

The thirtieth of May.

El veintiocho de Febrero.

The twenty-eighth of February.

El quince de Abril.

The fifteenth of April.

EXERCISE.

Después de la muerte de D. Martín su esposa y su hija, que ya estaba hecha una mujer, se hallaron solas en Matanzas, casi en la miseria, pues la enfermedad había dado al traste con lo poquísimos que quedaba. Realizaron los muebles y se fueron a la Habana, donde tenían algunos parientes, y éstos, por quitarse la carga de encima, les aconsejaron marcharse a España y les dieron para el viaje y para los primeros gastos que tuvieran hasta llegar a Madrid, que era el punto que Justa había elegido. Con su hermano Ricardo no había que contar, pues ella le había tenido casi

siempre a su cargo en Barcelona; Pepe, el menor, que estaba en un pueblo no lejos de la Habana, era bueno, pero tenía un sueldo miserable y mucha familia, y, además, Justa había tomado horror a la Isla y lo que quería era ir a España, que, por estar más lejos, le parecía mejor. En Madrid estaba su hermano Luis, y con su ayuda podrían hallar alguna salida y por lo pronto hacer gestiones para obtener la pensión, a que, por parte de su padre, creían tener derecho como huérfana y viuda. Así, pues, se embarcaron madre e hija y emprendieron su último viaje a España; llegados a Santander, tomaron el tren (train) para Madrid, y desde la estación del Norte fueron directamente a casa de Luis, que vivía en el extremo del barrio del Pacífico, creyendo darle una sorpresa, pues no le habían avisado su llegada. Pero la sorpresa, y dolorosa, fué la de las viajeras que hallaron el piso desalquilado, y, por un vecino de la casa, supieron que Luis, con su mujer, había salido para Filipinas pocos días antes, y que acaso en aquel momento se estaría embarcando para Barcelona.

ÁNGEL GANIVET.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cómo quedaron, la esposa de D. Martín y su hija, después de la muerte de D. Martín? ¿Cómo habían perdido lo poco que tenían? ¿Dónde murió el padre? ¿Adónde se marcharon la madre y la hija? ¿Qué tuvieron que vender para el viaje? ¿Dónde quedan la Habana y Matanzas? ¿Es Cuba un país continental? ¿Dónde tenían parientes las señoras? ¿Qué les aconsejaron estos parientes? ¿Qué les dieron para el viaje y para los primeros gastos que tuvieran hasta llegar a Madrid? ¿Qué es Madrid? ¿Quién había elegido a Madrid para ir a vivir allí? ¿Quién era Justa? ¿Por qué no podían contar con Ricardo? ¿Quién lo había tenido a su cargo en Barcelona? ¿Dónde estaba Pepe,

el hermano menor? ¿Qué se dice de Pepe? ¿Por qué quería Justa venir a España? ¿Dónde vivía su hermano Luis? ¿En qué podría ayudarles? ¿Por qué creían Justa y su madre tener derecho a pensión? ¿A qué ciudad de España llegaron primero? De Santander ¿a dónde fueron? ¿A qué estación llegaron en Madrid? ¿En qué barrio vivía Luis? ¿Le habían avisado su llegada? ¿Por qué no le avisaron? ¿Quién recibió la sorpresa? ¿Adónde se había marchado Luis? ¿Qué estaría haciendo Luis, tal vez, en ese momento?

TRANSLATE.

It thunders. It was thundering last night when he arrived. It rained yesterday from morning till night. He feared it might rain before two o'clock.

It is necessary for him to know the day of my departure. It is very important to decide this question. If it is not decided to-day I shall have to inform my father. There is an important question to (*que*) decide about our salary. There were several measures to take before the end of the month.

I have to go out. They had to remain at their friend's because it was raining. It may be. It may not be. If he does not arrive to-day I shall have to write to him that the rooms in the hotel have been taken by another traveller. We had to remain in a village three hours before we could resume (*continuar*) our voyage. It was a sad place, but our friend, D. Luis, who lives there, took us (*nos llevó*) to his house, and we remained there in very good company until five o'clock, when we went back to the station.

The horse was not known in America before the Spanish conquest, and without it the conquest and colonization (*colonización*) of the continent would have been much more difficult than it was. It might, perhaps,

have been impossible. The natives feared these animals that they had never seen before.

It is very cold to-day. It will be warmer next month.

TRANSLATE.

¿Qué hora es? Son las diez. ¿A qué hora llegó usted? Eran las nueve y media. Eran las nueve y diez minutos cuando salí de casa. Es ya muy tarde para (to) ir al teatro: son las nueve y cuarto. La conferencia de mañana empezará a las dos; debemos estar allí a las dos menos cuarto (a quarter to two). Hace frío en Rusia en el mes de Febrero. Cuando estuvimos en Sud América hacía mucho calor.

¿Qué día del mes es hoy? Hoy es primero (first) de Agosto. ¿Qué día de la semana? Miércoles. ¿Cuántos días tiene la semana? Siete. ¿Cuántos días tiene Junio? Junio trae treinta días. ¿Qué meses traen treinta y un días? Enero, Marzo, Mayo, Julio, Agosto, Octubre y Diciembre. Su carta está fechada el cinco de Octubre. Creo que para (by) el diez de Noviembre ya mi hermano habrá recibido los libros necesarios para ir a la escuela.

Hace mucho tiempo no veo a Juan. Hace tres años y medio llegó a esta ciudad un viajero sudamericano de quien recibí las primeras lecciones de español. Venía de Bolivia, hablaba muy bien su lengua y era hombre de extensos y variados conocimientos. Se llamaba D. Valeriano Arce Rodríguez, tenía cuarenta y cinco años y parecía ser mucho más joven.

XV

EXAMPLES OF THE SPANISH USE OF
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN ITS
VARIOUS FORMS COMPARED WITH
THE INDICATIVE

134.—Affirmative statement :

Present.

Me dice que le ha acontecido una desgracia
(Indicative).

He tells me he has met
with a misfortune.

Past.

Me dijo que le había acontecido una desgracia (Ind.).

He told me that he had
met with a misfortune.

Future.

Digo que para entonces le habrá acontecido una desgracia (Ind.).

I say that he will by then
have met with a misfortune.

Doubt, negation, fear, &c. :

Present.

No me dice que le haya acontecido una desgracia (Subjunctive).

He does not tell me that
he has met with a misfortune.

Past.

Nome dijo que le hubiera (or hubiese) acontecido una desgracia (Subj.).

He did not tell me that
he had met with a misfortune.¹

¹ Subordinate clauses governed by a verb implying negation or by a negative sentence require the subjunctive, as we have said (§ 113); but when the negation makes reference to the existence of an absolute fact, to a necessity or obligation, the indicative may be used :

Esta señora no debe saber que el muerto es su hijo (necessity).

This lady must not know that the
dead person is her son.

Esta señora no sabía que el muerto fuera su hijo (doubt).

This lady did not know that the
dead person was her son.

Future.

Temía que para entonces le hubiera (or hubiese) acontecido una desgracia (Subj.).

He feared that he might have met by then with a misfortune.

135.—While a positive statement requires the indicative to be used for both the present and past in the principal and subordinate clauses, in complex sentences expressing negation, doubt, hope, or similar states of mind, the indicative is used in the main and the subjunctive in the subordinate clauses.

136.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Present (or Future) with si:

Si paga sus deudas, conservará su buen nombre (Indicative).

Should he pay his debts, he will keep his good name.

With other words indicating condition :

Como pague sus deudas, conservará su buen nombre (Subjunctive in the first clause).

Provided he pays his debts, he will keep his good name.

Past.

Si pagó sus deudas, conservó su buen nombre (Indicative).

If he paid his debts, he kept his good name.

Future.

Si pagare sus deudas, conservará su buen nombre (Subjunctive in the first clause, not in the second).

If he should pay his debts, he will keep his good name.

Ignora que su madre ha caído enferma (positive fact).

He does not know that his mother has been taken ill.

Ignora que su madre haya caído enferma (doubt, uncertainty).

He does not know whether his mother has been taken ill.

No sé lo que me digo (positively).

I do not know what I am saying.

No sé qué le diga (doubtfully).

I do not know what I should tell you.

137.—Condition implying negation :

Present.

Si pagara (or pagase) sus deudas, conservaría su buen nombre (implying that he will not pay).

If he paid his debts, he would keep his good name.

Past.

Si pagara (better, si hubiera pagado) en aquella ocasión sus deudas, conservara (or hubiera conservado or habría conservado) su buen nombre.

Had he then paid his debts, he would have kept his good name.

138.—OPTATIVE (independent clauses).

Present or Future.

Pasemos ahora a tratar de los adverbios.

Let us now go on to deal with the adverbs.

Traiga usted las obras de Shakespeare.

Bring the works of Shakespeare.

No pretendamos alterar el orden de la naturaleza.

Let us not pretend to change the order of nature.

139.—The following sentences may offer some difficulty to the English student.

La primera vez que Don Quijote entrara en una venta fué para encontrar en ella a Don Jerónimo.

It was to find Don Jerónimo that Don Quijote first entered an inn.

In this sentence from a Spanish newspaper the use of *entrara* instead of *entró* is not justified. This practice, it is true, has been followed by good writers, but it should not be encouraged. The sense is affirmative ; there is no suggestion of doubt, wish or hope, and, therefore, good usage calls for the indicative forms.

- 140.—**Sólo hubo en Sevilla un caballero que no rindiera homenaje a Cervantes.** There was in Seville only one gentleman who did not pay homage to Cervantes.

The verb **haber**, when it implies existence, requires the indicative forms in the clauses depending on it; but in the sentence given above the word **sólo** implies a negation, and the sense is: **No hubo sino un caballero que no rindiera homenaje**, that is: There was but one gentleman who did not pay homage. Hence the use of the subjunctive is correct in this case.

- 141.—**No era más que la sombra de una sensación: como si mirara (or mirase) beber a otro y le viera tragar algo.** It was only the shadow of a sensation: as though he were looking at somebody who was drinking and saw him swallow something.

The if-clause here implies negation: the subjunctive forms in **-se** or **-ra** are quite correct.

- 142.—**Querían que se lo dijera (or dijese) más claro.** They wanted me to put it to them more clearly.

Querer is one of the verbs which always govern the subjunctive; in the subordinate clauses depending on it the forms in **-se** or **-ra** must be used for the past, as in the sentence under consideration.

143.—**Sea como fuere, sea lo que fuere**, are idiomatic phrases meaning 'however it may be'. Other verbs and relatives can be used similarly:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| Sea quien fuere. | Whoever he might be. |
| Suceda lo que sucediere. | Happen what may. |
| Venga lo que viniere. | Whatever may happen. |
| Dígalo quien lo dijere. | Whoever may say so. |

144.—The interjection **ojalá** is an Arabic phrase adopted by the Spaniards with its original meaning of *Allah grant that . . .* or *Would to heaven*, and it, therefore, involves the use of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses.

- Ojalá no se sepa esto. May heaven grant that it
does not leak out.
- Ojalá lo hubiera sabido. I wish I had known it.
- 145.—¿A quién podía ocu- Who could have thought
rrírsele que los techos se that roofs might go up in
fueran por lo alto como the air like lifts?
ascensores?

The main clause is an implied negation, the subordinate clause, therefore, must be formed with a subjunctive.

- 146.—Aunque intentara Though he tried to sleep, it
dormir, fuéle imposible. was impossible for him.

Aunque intentó dormir would also be permissible: but the past subjunctive gives to the sentence a shade of unfulfilled wish which the directness of the indicative does not suggest. Yet this practice of using the subjunctive instead of the indicative in cases similar to this is not always justified. For instance, in the following sentence of the same author **terminara** is not the best form to adopt.

- Pocos momentos habían** A few moments had elapsed
pasado desde que ter- since the dinner had fin-
minara la comida. ished.

In fact the whole construction cannot be considered as good idiomatic Spanish. The most natural way of expressing the same thought would be: **Pocos momentos habían transcurrido desde el fin de la comida.**

- 147.—Quizá estuviese (or Perhaps he was still in
estuviera) todavía en Mexico in 1608.
Méjico en 1608.

Quizá estaba todavía en Méjico en 1608 is likewise allowable; but the subjunctive stresses the uncertainty of the fact.

- Aprieta la mano y recí-** Shake hands and receive
beme por esposo si qui- me as your husband if you
sieres. like.

Quieres instead of quisieres would have the same meaning in this sentence, but the subjunctive is more polite, and implies uncertainty.

148.—No es de extrañar que su intercesión molestara a las gentes.

It is not to be wondered at that his intercession annoyed the people.

149.—No había marco que encerrara todo esto.

There was no frame to enclose all this.

150.—Con estas razones perdió el pobre caballero el juicio, y desvelábase por entenderlas y desentrañarles el sentido que no se lo sacara, ni las entendiera el mismo Aristóteles si resucitara para sólo ello. No estaba muy bien con las heridas que Don Belianís daba y recibía, porque se imaginaba que, por grandes maestros que le hubiesen curado, no dejaría de tener el rostro y todo el cuerpo lleno de cicatrices y señales. Pero, con todo, alababa en su autor aquel acabar su libro con la promesa de aquella inacabable aventura y muchas veces le vino deseo de tomar la pluma y darle fin al pie de la letra, como allí se promete; y sin duda alguna lo hiciera y aun saliera con ello, si otros mayores y continuos pensamientos no se lo estorbaran.

Over conceits of this sort the poor gentleman lost his wits, and used to lie awake striving to understand them and worm the meaning out of them; which Aristotle himself could not have made out or extracted had he come to life again for that special purpose. He was not at all easy about the wounds which Don Belianis gave and took, because it seemed to him that, great as were the surgeons who had cured him, he must have had his face and body covered all over with seams and scars. He commended, however, the author's way of ending his book with the promise of that interminable adventure, and many a time was he tempted to take up his pen and finish it properly as is there proposed, which no doubt he would have done, and made a successful piece of work of it too, had not greater and more absorbing thoughts prevented him. (ORMSBY'S trans.)

(CERVANTES.)

VOCABULARY.

- acercarse**, to approach, to draw near.
actitud, *f.*, attitude.
ademán, *m.*, gesture, attitude.
ágil, *adj.*, nimble.
alcance, *m.*, reach; **ponerse al alcance**, to get within reach.
alimentar, **alimentarse**, to feed, to feed on.
apoderarse, to possess oneself of a thing, to get hold of.
aproximarse, to approach, to come near.
atacar, to attack.
atisbar, to watch, to spy, to pry.
burlar, to hoax.
cada, *adj.*, each, each one.
carne, *f.*, flesh, meat; **carne humana**, human flesh.
cazar, to hunt.
centro, *m.*, centre.
cerdo, *m.*, pig, swine.
corto, *adj.*, short.
crecimiento, *m.*, growth.
cubierto, *adj.*, covered.
cuerpo, *m.*, body.
daño, *m.*, detriment, damage; **en su daño**, to his detriment.
defender, to defend.
demasiado, *adj.*, too much; *adv.*, too.
designación, *f.*, name, designation.
devastación, *f.*, devastation.
devorar, to devour.
diferencia, *f.*, difference.
- divertirse**, to amuse oneself.
enemigo, *m.*, enemy.
entonces, *adv.*, *conj.*, then.
erróneo, *adj.*, wrong, erroneous.
extender, to extend, to stretch; **extiende**, he extends.
falda, *f.*, slope.
fastidiar, to annoy.
fuerte, *adj.*, strong.
fuerza, *f.*, strength.
ganado, *m.*, cattle.
garra, *f.*, paw.
gato, *m.*, cat.
gracia, *f.*, gracefulness, grace.
habitar, to inhabit.
hermoso, *adj.*, handsome.
huir, to flee, to run away; **huye**, he flees.
imitar, to imitate, to ape.
jaguar, *m.*, jaguar.
ligero, *adj.*, swift.
macizo, *adj.*, massive, solid.
mancha, *f.*, spot, stain.
miembro, *m.*, limb, member.
mono, *m.*, monkey.
montaña, *f.*, mountain.
montés, *adj.*, wild.
mula, *f.*, mule.
musculoso, *adj.*, brawny, muscular.
notable, *adj.*, remarkable, notable.
oscuro, *adj.*, dark.
observar, to observe.
orilla, *f.*, bank (of a river).
paciencia, *f.*, patience.
piel, *f.*, skin.
plenitud, *f.*, fullness.

popularmente, *adv.*, popularly.
 rápido, *adj.*, quick, rapid, swift.
 rayado, *adj.*, striped.
 rebaño, *m.*, herd.
 redondo, *adj.*, round.
 robusto, *adj.*, robust.
 selvoso, *adj.*, woody.
 sin, *prep.*, without; sin embargo, however.
 soler, to accustom, to be wont.

sugerir, to suggest.
 tamaño, *m.*, size.
 temible, *adj.*, fearful.
 tigre, *m.*, tiger.
 toro, *m.*, bull.
 tortuga, *f.*, turtle.
 tratar, to try, to treat.
 trópico, *m.*, tropic.
 vaca, *f.*, cow.
 valerosamente, *adv.*, bravely, courageously.
 valle, *m.*, valley.
 venado, *m.*, deer.

EXERCISE.

El jaguar.

De los gatos que habitan el nuevo mundo el más grande y más hermoso es el jaguar, popularmente conocido en aquellas regiones con el nombre de tigre, aunque la designación es errónea porque hay notables diferencias entre el jaguar y el tigre del antiguo mundo. El jaguar, en la plenitud de su crecimiento, es poco menor, en tamaño, que el tigre, pero en vez de tener, como éste, la piel rayada, está cubierto de manchas redondas oscuras con un punto negro en el centro de cada una de ellas.

Todo su cuerpo, robusto y musculoso, sugiere la idea de fuerza. Sus miembros cortos y macizos no tienen la gracia de los otros animales de su familia, pero es ágil como ellos, y rápido en sus movimientos.

Vive en los valles del trópico o en las faldas de las montañas selvas, desde Panamá hasta el Sud del Brasil. Se alimenta de venados, de monos, y en las orillas de los grandes ríos atisba a las tortugas y se apodera de ellas para devorarlas. No podría cazar monos, si estos animales no se le acercaran por curiosidad a mirarlo. Los monos se divierten en observar las actitudes del jaguar, tratan de imitarlo y a veces se le aproximan con intención de fastidiarlo y burlarse de él. El jaguar espera con paciencia

que se pongan a su alcance y, cuando extiende la garra, comprende el mono, demasiado tarde y en su daño, que hay un animal más fuerte que él y más ligero en sus ademanes de cazador.

En los rebaños suele hacer el jaguar grandes devastaciones. El toro, sin embargo, no huye de él y defiende a las vacas, poniéndose delante de ellas cuando el enemigo se acerca.

El jaguar no ataca al hombre, pero se defiende valerosamente si es perseguido. Sin embargo, cuando llega a devorar un hombre por defenderse, le toma gusto a la carne humana y la busca después cuando tiene hambre. Es entonces un enemigo temible.

Caza también cerdos monteses y tiene predilección por la carne de caballo y de mula.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cuál es el más grande y más hermoso de los gatos del nuevo mundo? ¿Con qué otro nombre es conocido el jaguar? ¿Se le puede llamar tigre? ¿Cuál es el tamaño del jaguar en la plenitud de su crecimiento? ¿Tiene el jaguar la piel rayada? ¿Qué tiene en vez de rayas? ¿Cómo son las manchas? ¿Puede usted decirme cómo es el cuerpo del jaguar? ¿Qué sugiere? Diga usted cómo son los miembros de este animal. ¿Tienen las formas del jaguar la gracia de los otros animales de su familia? ¿Qué otros animales de esta familia conoce usted?

¿Dónde habita el jaguar? ¿De qué se alimenta? ¿Qué animal busca en las orillas de los grandes ríos? ¿Podría el jaguar cazar monos, si ellos no lo buscaran? ¿Cómo se divierten los monos con el jaguar? ¿Para qué se le acercan? ¿Qué hace entonces el jaguar? ¿Es el mono más ligero que el jaguar?

¿Dónde suele el jaguar hacer devastaciones? ¿Huye el toro del jaguar? ¿Cómo defiende las vacas?

¿Ataca el jaguar al hombre? ¿Sabe defenderse de él?
 ¿Cuándo busca el jaguar la carne humana? ¿Es temible entonces?

¿Qué otros animales son perseguidos por el jaguar?
 Diga usted otra vez lo que hemos leído acerca del jaguar.

TRANSLATE.

Quisiera yo tener tiempo para viajar. Iría a España, a la América Meridional, a Cuba y a Méjico. Muchas cosas útiles puede el viajero aprender en esos países, si observa con atención y sabe aprovechar lo que observa. Si yo hubiera sabido hace dos años lo que sé hoy acerca del Nuevo Mundo, no habría permanecido en Europa todo este tiempo. Ahora, sin embargo, tendré que estar aquí muchos años, porque estoy aprendiendo un oficio y cuando lo sepa ya será demasiado tarde para viajar.

Estuve anoche en casa de D. Santiago Izquierdo, comerciante uruguayo, que vive en Londres hace diez años. Don Santiago no me dijo que pensara ir pronto a la América del Sur; pero sus amigos creen que, si él pudiera, partiría inmediatamente. Su familia vive en el Uruguay. Si su mujer y sus hijas vivieran siempre en Europa, él no pensaría en volver a su patria, porque ya no le gusta viajar. Tiene sesenta y nueve años y aunque es sano y robusto prefiere su casa al buque de vapor (steamer) y al vagón del ferrocarril (railway carriage).

Es necesario que esperen ustedes hasta mañana para escribir la carta. El vapor llega esta noche y traerá correspondencia de Málaga. La semana pasada no fué preciso esperar, porque no hubo vapor y era indiferente escribir el miércoles o el sábado.

TRANSLATE.

Could you tell me what time it is?—It is two o'clock. It was half past one when I left the railway station.—I must be at home at ten minutes to four; could you tell me at

what time I should be at the station?—You must be at the station at a quarter past three: after that there is a train at thirty-five minutes past three.—That would be too late.

Is this your first journey to Spain?—Yes. I always wished to go there, but only now have I found time to do so. I could have gone two years ago, but then my father was going to Paris and I had to go with him. It would have been better to go then, because I could have stayed two or three months, in the autumn and the winter. Now I can only be there for seven weeks. It is a very short time to see all the things that I want to see in Spain. However, as I know more of the Spanish language than I knew in those days I hope to be able to study the country and understand the people better.

Have you seen your friend Mr. Kennedy since his arrival (*llegada*)?—No; I wish (*ojalá*) I had seen him. He has two books for me, that I want to read to my father during our stay in the country. Where is Mr. Kennedy now?—I think he is in London, in the same house where he used to live before. . . . Write to him.—I think that is the best thing to do.

XVI

ORDINAL NUMBERS AND INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS

151.—THE ordinal numbers are in Spanish:

| | |
|-------------------------|---------|
| Primero | first |
| Segundo | second |
| Tercero | third |
| Cuarto | fourth |
| Quinto | fifth |
| Sexto | sixth |
| Séptimo | seventh |
| Octavo | eighth |
| Noveno (or nono) | ninth |

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| Décimo | tenth |
| Undécimo (or onceno) | eleventh |
| Duodécimo | twelfth |
| Décimotercio (or décimo tercero) | thirteenth |
| Décimocuarto | fourteenth |
| Décimoquinto (and so on) up to | fifteenth |
| Vigésimo | twentieth |
| Vigésimo primero (or vigésimo primo) (and so on) up to | twenty-first |
| Trigésimo | thirtieth |
| Cuadragésimo | fortieth |
| Quincuagésimo | fiftieth |
| Sexagésimo | sixtieth |
| Septuagésimo | seventieth |
| Octogésimo | eightieth |
| Nonagésimo | ninetieth |
| Centésimo | hundredth |
| Ducentésimo | two hundredth |
| Trecentésimo | three hundredth |
| Cuadringentésimo | four hundredth |
| Quingentésimo | five hundredth |
| Sexcentésimo | six hundredth |
| Septingentésimo | seven hundredth |
| Octogentésimo | eight hundredth |
| Nonagentésimo | nine hundredth |
| Milésimo | thousandth |
| Dosmilésimo | two thousandth |
| Millonésimo | millionth. |

NOTE.—In ordinals made of two words like **décimotercio** common usage requires the alteration of both elements of the word to form the feminine; so we say: **capítulo décimoquinto**, **lección décimatercera**. But in the last edition of the Dictionary of the Spanish Academy we read **Décimocuarta edición**.

152.—In Spanish the cardinal numbers are used to express the day of the month, with the exception of the first:

| | |
|--|---|
| Estamos a 1º. (primero) de Mayo. | We are at the 1st of May. |
| El golpe de estado de 2 (dos) de Diciembre. | The <i>coup d'état</i> of the 2nd December. |
| Le esperaremos hasta el 21 (veintiuno) del mes entrante. | We shall wait for you until the 21st of next month. |

153.—With the names of kings or popes the ordinals are used up to 9th :

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| Felipe segundo. | Philip II. |
| Carlos tercero. | Charles III. |
| Carlos quinto. | Charles V. |
| Pío nono. | Pius IX. |

a. Either the cardinal or the ordinal number may be used in the case of tenth :

| | |
|------------------------|------------|
| León diez or décimo. | Leo X. |
| Carlos diez or décimo. | Charles X. |

b. From tenth upwards the cardinal numbers alone are accepted by good usage, although as regards the names of Popes some writers use the ordinals after ten also :

| | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Luis diez y seis. | Louis XVI. |
| Carlos doce. | Charles XII. |
| Juan veinte y dos. | John XXII. |

154.—In quoting laws, chapters, pages, paragraphs the cardinal numbers are used from two upwards :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| El Congreso aprobó ayer la ley dos. | Yesterday Congress passed Law no. 2. |
| Hemos llegado al capítulo siete. | We have reached Chapter VII. |

a. But the ordinal numbers are also recognized by good usage up to twelfth :

| | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| El capítulo cuarto termina en la página cincuenta y cinco. | Chapter IV ends on page 55. |
|--|-----------------------------|

155.—With centuries the ordinal numbers are used up to the tenth or twelfth :

En el siglo cuarto (IV) de la era cristiana. In the fourth century of the Christian era.

Vivió en el siglo décimo (X). He lived in the tenth century.

El siglo once o undécimo. The eleventh century.

a. After twelfth the cardinal numbers are used :

El siglo diez y ocho. The eighteenth century.

El siglo veinte. The twentieth century.

156.—*Ambos, ambas* means the one and the other conjointly :

Iban ambos a caballo. They were both riding on horseback.

¿Conoce usted al Alcalde o al Secretario?—Los conozco a ambos. Do you know the Mayor or the Secretary?—I know them both.

a. When the two objects to which reference is made are not taken conjointly *ambos* cannot be used :

¿Es este paquete para Juan, para mí o para ambos?—Para ninguno de los dos. Is this parcel for John, for me, or for both?—For neither.

¿Quién es mayor, usted o su hermano?—Yo soy el mayor de los dos (not de ambos).¹ Who is the elder, you or your brother?—I am the elder of the two.

b. 'Both' is translated *tanto . . . como* or *así . . . como* in expressions like 'both the mother and the son were thrown into the flames': *tanto la madre como la hija fueron arrojadas a las llamas.*

Se expresa muy bien así en inglés como en italiano. He expresses himself very well both in English and Italian.

¹ Yet we find in good writers :

Ni una ni otra de ambas posiciones nos satisface (M. de Unamuno). None of these two standpoints is satisfactory to us.

So that, despite the grammarians, it is perhaps pedantry to condemn this form of expression.

La victoria fué una sorpresa lo mismo para nosotros que para el enemigo. The victory was a surprise both for us and for the enemy.

157.—The fractional numbers are the same as the ordinals from fourth to twelfth :

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| medio or mitad | half |
| tercio or tercera parte | third |
| cuarto | fourth |
| quinto | fifth |
| octavo (or ochavo) | eighth |
| duodécimo | twelfth. |

a. From twelfth upwards fractional numbers are formed by the adding of **-avo** to the cardinal, up to 999th :

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| dozavo (or duodécimo) | twelfth |
| catorzavo | fourteenth |
| veinteavo | twentieth |
| treintavo | thirtieth |
| centavo (or centésimo) | hundredth |
| novcientos sesenta y dosavo | 962nd |
| milésimo | thousandth |
| millonésimo | millionth. |

INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

158.—The indeterminate adjectives **alguno, alguna, algunos, algunas** (some); **ninguno, ninguna, ningunos, ningunas** (none, not any), lose the last letter in the masculine singular when placed before a noun.

Debemos encontrar algún modo de resolver el problema. We must find some way to solve the problem.

Algunos viajeros prefirieron quedarse en el puerto. Some travellers chose to remain in port.

Ningún ciudadano puede rehusar el cumplimiento de su deber. No citizen can refuse to fulfil his duty.

Ningunos libros tan buenos como los del editor López. No books so good as those of López, the publisher.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ¿Conoce usted los amigos de la Sra. Méndez?—He visto a alguno. | Do you know Mrs. Méndez's friends?—I have seen one of them. |
| ¿Tiene usted parientes en esta ciudad?—No tengo ningunos. | Have you any relatives in this town?—I have none. |
| ¿Están en la escuela todos sus hermanos?—No todos, pero algunos. | Are all your brothers at school?—Not all, but some. |

159.—**Alguien** (pronoun) takes the place of **algún hombre, alguna persona**, and cannot be used with reference to animals or inanimate beings.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Alguien ha llegado. | Somebody has come. |
| Me hablaba de alguien a quien yo no conocía. | He was talking to me of somebody I did not know. |

160.—**Nadie**, also a pronoun, is the equivalent of **ninguna persona**, nobody.

- | | |
|---|--|
| No conozco a nadie en Valladolid. | I know nobody in Valladolid. |
| Nadie se cree con derecho al premio. | Nobody pretends to have won the prize. |

a. As **nadie** means **ninguno de**, it cannot be used in a partitive sense. It would be wrong to say: **nadie de sus hermanos quiso socorrerlo** (none of his brothers wanted to help him).

In this case **ninguno** takes the place of **nadie**:

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ninguno de los generales acudió a la cita. | None of the generals answered the summons. |
|---|--|

161.—**Uno u otro** or **cualquiera de los dos** means *either*, and **ninguno de los dos** is translated by *neither*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Uno u otro están equivocados o ambos. | Either the one or the other is wrong or both are wrong. |
| ¿A quién debo consultar de los dos?—A cualquiera de ellos. | Which of the two shall I consult?—Either. |
| Esperé a Juan y a Pedro hasta las tres y ninguno de los dos vino. | I waited for John and Peter until three o'clock and neither came. |

a. **Uno, una** are indeterminate pronouns of the third person, which are used sometimes instead of **se**. **Uno no sabe qué decir, No se sabe qué decir** (one does not know what to say) : see § 86, note.

162.—**Nada** means *nothing*, and refers often to general ideas or concepts :

| | |
|--|---|
| Nada es mejor que una buena conciencia. | Nothing is better than a good conscience. |
| La interrogué, pero no dijo nada. | I questioned her, but she said nothing. |

163.—It is to be noted that in Spanish **ninguno, nada,** and **nadie** may be used with **no** to emphasize the negation.

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| No conozco a nadie aquí. | I do not know anybody here. |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|

Three or more negative expressions may be used in the same phrase to emphasize its meaning :

| | |
|---|--|
| No dijo nada de nadie (three negations). | He did not say anything about anybody. |
| No le he debido nunca nada a nadie (four negations). | I have never owed anything to anybody. |

164. **Cualquiera** (whichever) may be used as adjective or pronoun ; **quienquiera** is always a pronoun.

| | |
|--|--|
| Aquí me encontrará usted a cualquiera hora que venga. | You will find me here at whatever time you may come. |
| Cualquiera diría que es usted extranjero. | Anybody would say that you were a foreigner. |
| Quienquiera que sea, es preciso recibirlo. | Whoever he may be, it is necessary to receive him. |

a. **Cualquiera** and **quienquiera** take the plural forms **cualesquiera** and **quienesquiera**.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cualesquiera diversiones a que la juventud se entregue deben estar vigiladas por los padres. | Any amusements to which youth is given should be watched over by parents. |
|---|---|

b. **Cualquiera** may lose the last letter when used as an adjective and placed before the noun :

Me dijo que viniera cualquier día de la semana próxima. He told me to come any day next week.

165.—**Todo, toda, todos, todas** (all, every), is an indeterminate adjective which very often requires the article after it : **Todo el día, toda la noche**, all day, all night ; **todas las flores del jardín están dedicadas a la celebración de su natalicio**, all the flowers of the garden are destined for the celebration of her birthday ; **la casa toda**, the entire house.

a. It may be used pronominally or substantively :

Todos estamos expuestos a errar. We are all prone to err.

Habla de todo con asombrosa frescura. He talks about everything with astonishing assurance.

Todo me es igual. It is all the same to me.

b. Note the construction with the personal pronoun :

Todos nosotros estábamos seguros de la victoria. We were all sure of victory.

c. **Todo** used as a pronoun in a general sense is neuter :

Todo está bien : hemos convenido en ello (not él). Everything is right : we have agreed to it.

d. With nouns taken in a general sense **todo** is used without the article : **Toda autoridad procede del pueblo**, all authority derives from the people.

166.—**Más, menos** and **demás** are invariable adjectives.

Más casas hay en la aldea que árboles. There are more houses in the village than trees.

Una pena menos. One sorrow less.

167.—**Propio** with the possessive adjectives means *own* :

Mi propia casa está en Madrid. My own house is at Madrid.

Lo vió con sus propios ojos. He saw it with his own eyes.

168.—Cada is an invariable adjective meaning *each* or *every*:

| | |
|---|--|
| Ponga cada libro en su puesto. | Put each book in its place. |
| Cada operario a su oficio. | Every workman to his trade. |
| Cada día trae su afán. | Each day brings its care. |
| Gana un peso en cada diez libros que vende. | He makes a dollar on every ten books he sells. |

a. Cada cannot, as in English, be used pronominally in Spanish. The words *uno* or *cual* must be added to it when the noun to which it refers is not expressed.

| | |
|---|--|
| Compré cien toneladas de heno a diez y ocho pesos cada una. | I bought one hundred tons of hay at eighteen dollars each. |
| Cada cual ocupó su puesto en la clase. | Every one took his place in the class. |

169.—Sendos (*sendas*) means *each one* in the sense of distribution:

| | |
|---|--|
| Venían en sendas hacaneas. | Each one came riding her nag. |
| Y mirando (Sancho) a los del jardín tiernamente y con lágrimas les dijo que le ayudasen en aquel trance con sendos paternoster y sendas avemarías (CERVANTES). ¹ | And (Sancho) looking pitifully round about the garden with tears in his eyes, desired that they would in that doleful [emergency] join with him each in a Pater-noster and an Ave Maria (SHELTON). |

¹ It is to be noted that most of the English translations of *Don Quixote* since Shelton's times have rendered this passage wrongly: Motteux says '*a few Paternosters and Ave-marias*'; Duffield states that Sancho 'prayed that they would each help him in that peril with *two Paternosters and two Avemarias*', and more recently Ormsby goes further in saying that Sancho 'bade them help him . . . with *plenty* of Paternosters and Ave Marias'. Watts says 'a couple'.

Sendos (from the Latin *singuli*) is not of frequent colloquial use, and seems even to be disappearing from the literary language. Some people, and a few writers amongst them, have given the word the unwarrantable meaning of large, strong, out of proportion.

VOCABULARY.

- admitir**, to admit, to accept.
albillo, *m.*, wine of white grápe.
amistad, *f.*, friendship.
antes bien, on the contrary.
apetito, *m.*, appetite.
asiento, *m.*, seat; **hombre de mucho asiento**, solid, well-balanced man.
bastante, *adv.*, quite, very, enough; **bastante más joven**, a good deal younger.
bonito, *adj.*, pretty, good-looking.
camisa, *f.*, shirt.
cena, *f.*, supper, dinner.
cesar, to cease, to stop.
clase, *f.*, kind, class.
cocinera, *f.*, woman-cook.
coloquio, *m.*, talk, conversation.
compatible, *adj.*, suitable, compatible.
corbata, *f.*, neck-tie.
cordial, *adj.*, hearty, cordial.
chuleta, *f.*, chop.
decencia, *f.*, decency.
decente, *adj.*, decent.
deleitar, to please, to delight.
dentadura, *f.*, set of teeth, the teeth.
deparar, to offer, to afford.
despojar, to deprive of, to despoil; **despojarse de su traje**, to undress, to strip.
diente, *m.*, tooth.
donaire, *m.*, graceful carriage, wit, elegance.
emplear, to employ, to use.
entrar, to enter, to come or go in.
escaso, *adj.*, scarce, short.
exponer, to lay down, to explain.
fin, *m.*, end; **al fin**, at last.
formalidad, *f.*, seriousness, gravity, formality.
frisar, to approach, to border.
frito, *adj.*, fried.
gallego, *m.* and *adj.*, Galician.
habla, *f.*, language, talk.
huésped, *m.*, guest, host.
inesperado, *adj.*, unexpected.
instruir, to teach, to inform.
joven, *adj.*, young.
lavar, to wash.
lavoteo, *m.*, hurried wash.
limpio, *adj.*, clean.
locuacidad, *f.*, talkativeness, loquacity.
mahón, *m.*, nankeen.
manchego, *adj.*, belonging to la Mancha.
migas, *pl.*, marrow (dish); crumbs.
misterioso, *adj.*, mysterious.
molestarse, to bother, to worry.
narrar, to narrate, to relate.
nombrar, to name.
ocuparse en, to busy oneself with.
ojo, *m.*, eye.
patriota, *m.* and *f.*, patriot.
patrona, *f.*, hostess, landlady.
peculio, *m.*, money, private purse, pecuniary resources.

- pez, *m.*, fish.
 pintoresco, *adj.*, picturesque.
 poco, *adj.*, little; a poco, shortly afterwards.
 preceder, to precede.
 presentar, to present, to introduce.
 presuroso, *adj.*, hasty, speedy.
 prolijidad, *f.*, prolixity.
 recomendar, to recommend.
 regordete, regordeta, *adj.*, plump, chubby.
 relación, *f.*, friendship; con relación a, regarding.
 risueño, *adj.*, smiling.
 ropa, *f.*, clothes; ropita, modest wardrobe.
 rubicundo, *adj.*, ruddy, rosy with health.
 sazón, *f.*, opportunity, season; a la sazón, for the time being, at present.
 servir, to serve; servir la cena, to lay the supper.
 singular, *adj.*, singular, single.
 sólo, *adv.*, only; tan sólo, only.
- soltar, to let loose, to loose, to loosen.
 sosegado, *adj.*, quiet.
 suerte, *f.* luck, chance.
 sujeto, *m.*, person; *adj.*, tied, liable.
 terriblemente, *adv.*, frightfully, terribly.
 tímido, *adj.*, timid, shy, coy.
 toalla, *f.*, towel.
 torcer, to twist; torcer los ojos, to squint.
 trabar, to bind, to tie; trabar relaciones, to become friends.
 traje, *m.*, dress; trajecito, unassuming, plain dress.
 único, *adj.*, only.
 uva, *f.*, grape; uvas de albillo, white wine grapes.
 vena, *f.*, vein.
 ventura, *f.*, chance, luck.
 vestimenta, *f.*, act of dressing, dress.
 vestir, vestirse, to dress.
 viso, *m.*, lustre; persona de viso, man of consequence.
 vivaracho, *adj.*, lively.
 vivienda, *f.*, house, residence, home.

EXERCISE.

Salió Mendizábal presuroso, llamando a su esposa e hija, y a poco se presentaron éstas con el agua y toallas limpias. Era la patrona regordeta y vivaracha, bastante más joven que su marido; mala dentadura, el habla gallega, manos de cocinera. La niña, tímida y rubicunda, habría sido muy bonita si no torciera terriblemente los ojos. Precedíalas el risueño padre que, al presentar a la familia, volvió a soltar la vena de su

verbosidad (loquacity). El Sr. D. Fernando traería, según él, buen apetito. Pronto se le serviría la cena. Casa más sosegada no se encontraba en todo Madrid, y como no admitían sino huéspedes recomendados, nunca tenían más que cinco o seis, y a la sazón, por ser verano, tan sólo dos, sin contar al Sr. D. Fernando, los cuales eran personas de mucho asiento y formalidad. A la hora de la cena los conocería el nuevo huésped y trabaría con uno y otro sujeto relaciones muy cordiales. . . . Dejaronle al fin para que se lavase y, despojado de su trajecito de mahón, se ocupó el huésped en sacar del baúl la única ropita decente que traía, y camisa y corbata, para vestirse con toda la decencia compatible con su escaso peculio. Durante las operaciones de lavoteo y vestimenta no cesaba de pensar en la ventura inesperada y misteriosa con que entraba en Madrid. . . . Cenando migas excelentes con uvas de albillo, peces del Jarama fritos y chuletas a la *papillote*, hizo conocimiento con los dos huéspedes que la suerte le deparaba por compañeros de vivienda. . . . El uno frisaba en los cincuenta años, y en las primeras frases del coloquio se declaró manchego y patriota. Su locuacidad no molestaba; antes bien, instruíá deleitando, porque narraba los sucesos y exponía las opiniones con singular donaire y una prolijidad pintoresca. Debía de tener muchas y muy buenas amistades con personas en aquel tiempo de gran viso, porque al nombrarlas empleaba casi siempre formas familiares. . . . El segundo huésped era D. Pedro Hillo, natural de Toro.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién salió presuroso llamando a su esposa y a su hija? ¿Quién era Mendizábal? ¿Quiénes trajeron el agua y las toallas? ¿Puede usted decirme cómo era la patrona? ¿Era menor o mayor que su marido? ¿Cómo tenía las manos? ¿Cuál era su modo de hablar? ¿Qué me dice usted de la niña? ¿Era bonita? ¿Por qué no

era bonita? ¿Quién entró adelante? ¿Quién fué presentado por Mendizábal a la familia? ¿Qué pensaba Mendizábal del apetito de D. Fernando? ¿Cuándo le servirían la cena al huésped? ¿Era sosegada la casa? ¿Admitían en ella toda clase de huéspedes? ¿Cuántos tenían a la sazón? ¿Por qué tenían tan pocos? ¿Cuántos eran, contando a D. Fernando? ¿Eran los huéspedes personas cualesquiera? ¿A qué hora los conocería el nuevo huésped? ¿Para qué lo dejaron? ¿Qué vestido (vestimenta) tenía puesto? ¿Era rico? ¿Tenía muchos vestidos? ¿De dónde sacó su ropa? ¿En qué pensaba esa tarde cuando se vestía? ¿Qué fué la cena? ¿A quiénes conoció en la cena? ¿Qué edad tenía uno de los huéspedes? ¿De dónde era? ¿Conocía personas de viso? ¿Quién era el otro? ¿De dónde era natural?

TRANSLATE.

Estuve en América en 1906. Viajé por Méjico, Guatemala, Cuba, Venezuela, Colombia, el Ecuador y el Perú. Deseaba llegar a Colombia en Agosto, pero ya estaba Septiembre muy adelantado, cuando vimos la costa. El primero de Octubre salí de Bogotá para ir a Quito. Empleé en el viaje veinte y dos días, pasando por Panamá. Iban conmigo varias personas que conocían el país y me ayudaron con sus buenos consejos (advice). Es Quito una ciudad de setenta mil habitantes, aunque algunos autores dicen que tiene ochenta mil. Está sobre la línea equinoccial (Equator) a una altura (height) de nueve mil trescientos noventa y cinco pies (feet). Es ciudad muy antigua. Era una ciudad ya muy antigua cuando los españoles la ocuparon en mil quinientos treinta y cuatro. El Ecuador hizo parte durante algún tiempo, después de la independencia (independence), de la República de Colombia.

TRANSLATE.

Charles XII of Sweden is one of the most chivalrous (*caballerescas*) and attractive figures in the history of Europe during the first years of the eighteenth century. His life was short and full of action and thought. He was only thirty-six at the end of it.

Philip II of Spain built, twenty-eight miles from Madrid, a palace (*palacio*), which is known under (*con*) the name of *Escorial*. They began (*empezaron*) to build it in 1573. It was finished twenty-one years later.

Nobody now knows who were the first inhabitants of America. Nothing is known of the communications that may have existed (*existido*) between that Continent and the Old World. But there are some reasons (*razones*) for believing that communications existed. Whatever these reasons may be, we must say that there are no conclusive (*concluyentes*) proofs to decide the point.

Who has been here to see you to-day?—I do not know that anybody has been to see me. The landlady would have told me if anybody had called, and if anybody did call he ought to have left his name, whoever he was.

XVII

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES—
PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES—
LETTER-WRITING

170.—IN order to increase or diminish the meaning or force of nouns, adjectives, and sometimes also of adverbs, certain terminations are added to these words, according to rules that are not always followed by usage in a uniform manner. The words altered in this way are called augmentatives when an increase in the meaning is suggested, and diminutives in the contrary case.

a. The most frequently used endings for the formation of augmentatives are **-ón, -azo, -ote** :

árbol, arbolón, arbolote (large tree).

hombre, hombrón (tall man).

perro, perrazo (big dog).

alto, altote (very high).

b. When the word to which the endings are to be added ends in an unaccented vowel, this letter is dropped. It is to be observed that the accent of the word changes to the first vowel of the ending. **-ón** and **-ote** have, in some few words, a diminutive value :

rata, rat ; ratón, mouse.

ala, wing ; alón, wing stripped of its feathers.

isla, island ; islote, islet.

torre, tower ; torreón, turret.

c. In some cases these endings suggest the idea of clumsiness or grotesqueness, and are used in a contemptuous sense :

soltero, single, unmarried man ; **solterón**, old, incorrigible bachelor.

libro, book ; **librote**, big, ill-planned book.

d. Two endings may sometimes be used conjointly to emphasize the meaning of the augmentative :

hombre, hombrón, hombronazo (big, loutish man).

pícaro, picarón, picaronazo (great rogue).

171.—The diminutive endings are of much more frequent occurrence than the augmentatives. The rules for the use of the diminutive endings are less arbitrary than those for the use of the augmentatives.

a. **-ececito, -ececico, -ececillo, -ecezuelo**, may be used, according to the Academy, with monosyllables ending in *e*. The rule has been coined for the word **pie**, foot, which admits of the following forms: **piececico, piececito, piececillo**. There are not many monosyllabic nouns or adjectives ending in *e* in Spanish, and of these **fe** (faith) does not

admit of any diminutive termination, and, as for **te** (tea), usage in very familiar language would only accept **tecito**.

b. **-ecito, -ecico, -ecillo, -ezuelo** are used—

(1) with monosyllables ending in a consonant or **y** :

flor, flower ; **florecita**, little flower.

nuez, nut ; **nuececita**, small nut.

red, net ; **redecilla**, small net, mesh.

rey, king ; **reyezuelo**, petty king.

sal, salt ; **salecita**, a little salt.

(2) with nouns or adjectives of two syllables having the diphthongs **ei, ie, or ue** in the first syllable :

cuerpo, body ; **cuerpecito**, small body.

diente, tooth ; **dientecillo**, little tooth.

hueso, bone ; **huesecillo**, small bone.

peine, comb ; **peinecito, peinecillo** (also **peineta**), small comb.

reina, queen ; **reinecita** (also **reinita**), little queen.

(3) with dissyllables ending in **-ío, -ía** :

friecito, somewhat cold ; **riecito**, little river.

and (4) with dissyllables ending in unaccented **-ia** or **-e** :

bestia, beast ; **bestezuela, bestiecilla**, little beast.

calle, street ; **callecita**, small street.

hombre, hombrecito, hombrecillo, little man.

Yet in Spanish America diminutives such as **Dieguito, huesito, cuerpito** are often heard.

c. **-cico, -cillo, -cito, -zuelo** are added to words of more than one syllable ending in **r** or **n** :

almacén, store ; **almacencito**, small store.

oración, prayer ; **oracioncita**, little prayer.

joven, young man ; **jovencito**, little young man.

altar, altar ; **altarcillo, altarcito**, little altar.

labor, work ; **laborcita**, small piece of work.

bribón, rogue ; **bribonzuelo**, little rogue.

Yet we say **Señorito**, from the dissyllable **Señor**.

d. The endings **-ico**, **-ito** (less frequently **-eto**), **-illo**, **-uelo** are applied to all words not comprised in the preceding rules.

perrito, little dog ; **patico**, little duck ; **arbolillo**, little tree ; **pozuelo**, little well ; **ojalito**, small buttonhole.

e. When the diminutive ending begins with a vowel and the word to which it is added ends with a vowel, the last letter of the original is dropped : **pie**, **pi-ececito** ; **casa**, **cas-ita** ; **libro**, **libr-ito** ; **pozo**, **poz-uelo**, **poc-ito**, **poc-illo**.¹

f. The stress of the words, altered to form the diminutives with all the endings specified in the preceding paragraphs, changes to the penultimate syllable of the ending.

Casa, **casita** ; **cámara**, **camarilla** ; **oración**, **oracioncita** ; **pie**, **piececillo** ; **escaparate**, **escaparatito** ; **árbol**, **arbolillo**.

g. Diminutives formed with the termination **-ín** have the stress on the last syllable : **corbata**, neck-tie, **corbatín** ; **cámara**, room, **camarín** ; **flauta**, flute, **flautín**.

h. Words ending in **z** alter this letter to **c** before an ending the first letter of which is **e** or **i** : **pez**, fish, **pececillo** ; **nariz**, nose, **naricilla**. Words ending in **-ca**, **-co** alter each of these to **que** or **qui** in the diminutive : **boca**, mouth, **boquilla** ; **loco**, madman, **loquito** ; **barca**, boat, **barqueta**. Words ending in **-ga**, **-go** alter this termination to **gue**, **gui** : **Diego**, James, **Dieguito** ; **carga**, load, **carguita**. The object of these alterations, which, by the way, occur in all kinds of inflexions, is simply to preserve the sound of the letter in the original word.

172.—With the termination **-ón** for the augmentatives, and **-ín** for the diminutives, the gender of the nouns changes sometimes :

pared, *f.*, wall.

mujer, *f.*, woman.

corbata, *f.*, neck-tie.

paredón, *m.*, large wall.

mujerón, *m.*, big, clumsy woman.

corbatín, *m.*, small tie.

¹ The **z** changes to **c** before **i** to keep the soft sound : see below (*h*).

a. It is still more singular that masculine nouns ending in *-a*, which should form the diminutive in *-ito* or *-ico*, preserve at the end the *a* of the original, without changing the gender:

poeta, poet.

poetilla, poetaster.

poema, poem.

poemita, short, little poem.

This peculiarity occurs even with proper nouns of the masculine gender ending in *-as*, which keep the *a* and the *s* in the diminutive. A sonnet by Quevedo begins:

'**Si un Eneillas** (from Eneas) **viera, si un Pimpollo.**'

'**Hola, poetilla, ¿le falta a usted una sílaba para completar alguno de esos que llama versos?**' CUERVO, *Apuntaciones*.

173.—Adjectives may, in familiar style, be used in the diminutive form: **feíto**, rather plain; **blanquito**, whitish. On a more limited scale this is also the case with adverbs: **tardecito**, a little late; **tempranito**, rather early; **apenitas** (coll.), barely, only just; and present participles: **andandito**, just going on; **corriendito**, in a bit of a hurry.

174.—Augmentatives and diminutives are of frequent occurrence in familiar conversation and in everyday language, but are seldom used in serious literature. Sometimes a shade of endearment is coupled with the meaning of the diminutives, and in some cases they are used only to express affection, as when a son speaks of his mother as **mamacita**. **Señorita** is the unmarried lady, and **señorito**, in Spain, is, for the servants, either the unmarried man, whatever his age, or the young husband.

PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES.

175.—A great number of prefixes and suffixes are common to English and Spanish, and it often happens that words formed with the addition of these elements preserve similar appearances in both languages. This superficial likeness is apt to be deceptive, and the student should be cautioned against assuming that similarity of form implies similarity of meaning.

PREFIXES.

176.—Among the prefixes preserved in both languages in words of Latin or Greek origin or of recent formation the following are of frequent occurrence:

ab-, abs-: **abrupto**, abrupt; **abstinente**, abstinent.

ad-: **adornar**, to adorn; **adherir**, to adhere.

ante-: **antecedente**, antecedent; **antediluviano**, antediluvian.

- anti-:** Anticristo, Antichrist; **antídoto**, antidote; **antípodas**, antipodes.
- bi-:** bicicleta, bicycle; **bilateral**, bilateral; **bilingüe**, bilingual.
- circun-:** **circunferencia**, circumference; **circunstancia**, circumstance; **circunspecto**, circumspect.
- com-, con-:** **conducta**, conduct; **combinar**, to combine; **contener**, to contain; **convencer**, to convince; **comenzar**, to commence.
- contra-:** **contraste**, contrast; **contrabando**, contraband; **controversia**, controversy.
- de-:** **devoto**, devout; **degradar**, to degrade; **derivación**, derivation; **dependiente**, dependent.
- des-, dis-:** **desdén**, disdain; **descontar**, to discount; **desmembrar**, to dismember; **discreto**, discreet; **distante**, distant; **desgracia**, in the sense of loss of favour, disgrace.
- em-, en-:** **emblema**, emblem; **embrión**, embryo; **energía**, energy; **entusiasmo**, enthusiasm.
- ex-:** **excelente**, excellent; **extirpar**, to extirpate; **expatriar**, to expatriate; **extender**, to extend.
- extra-:** **extraordinario**, extraordinary; **extravagante**, extravagant.
- im-, in- (negative):** **imposible**, impossible; **impuro**, impure; **inepto**, inept; **insípido**, insipid; **intacto**, intact; **independiente**, independent.
- inter-:** **intérprete**, interpreter; **internacional**, international.
- intro-:** **introducir**, to introduce.
- per-:** **perfume**, perfume; **perfidia**, perfidy; **perfecto**, perfect.
- pos-, post-:** **posponer**, to postpone; **póstumo**, posthumous.
- pre-:** **precepto**, precept; **preferir**, to prefer; **presente**, present.
- preter-:** **preternatural**, preternatural; **pretérito**, preterite.
- pro-:** **profano**, profane; **prodigio**, prodigy; **producir**, to produce; **proceder**, to proceed.
- re-:** **resistir**, to resist; **redimir**, to redeem.
- sub-:** **subterráneo**, subterranean; **suburbio**, suburb; **sugestión**, suggestion; **subordinado**, subordinate.
- trans-:** **transitorio**, transitory; **transformar**, to transform; **transatlántico**, transatlantic.
- ultra-:** **ultramarino**, ultramarine; **ultramontano**, ultramontane.

SUFFIXES.

177.—Many of the Latin suffixes adopted by the Spanish language for the formation of derivatives are also employed in English, and a considerable number of words so formed are similar in the two languages. But, as already stated, the meaning of the words occasionally follows different lines.

178.—The following suffixes supply frequent cases of both similarity of form and correspondence of meaning :

- ble** : **amable**, amiable (kind); **tolerable**, tolerable; **posible**, possible; **legible**, legible (readable); **durable**, durable (lasting); **sensible** in Spanish means 'sensitive'. The English word 'sensible' corresponds to **sensato** in Spanish.
- ico** : **público**, public; **tónico**, tonic; **cínico**, cynic; **fanático**, fanatic. The suffix **-ica** used in Spanish to designate the various branches of learning is in English **-ic**: **lógica**, logic; **aritmética**, arithmetic; but some of these nouns are preferably used in the singular in Spanish, whereas in English they generally require the plural: **física**, physics; **óptica**, optics; **matemática** or **matemáticas**, mathematics.
- ían, -iano** : **guardián**, guardian; **cristiano**, Christian.
- ano** : **profano**, profane; **pagano**, pagan; **humano**, human, humane; **italiano**, Italian.
- ante, -ente** : **habitante**, inhabitant; **arrogante**, arrogant; **agente**, agent; **estudiante**, student; **inocente**, innocent; **decente**, decent.
- ar** (adjectives) : **popular**, popular; **singular**, singular; **peculiar**, peculiar.
- al** : **animal**, animal; **capital**, capital; **legal**, legal; **moral**, moral; **leal**, loyal.
- ario** : **ordinario**, ordinary; **primario**, primary; **necesario**, necessary.
- ficar** (-fy-verbs) : **fortificar**, to fortify; **edificar**, to edify.
- cto** : **acto**, act; **perfecto**, perfect; **intacto**, intact.
- in, -ino** : **clandestino**, clandestine; **argentino**, Argentine; **latino** (people), **latín** (language), Latin; **cristalino**, crystalline; **divino**, divine.
- ina** : **fibrina**, fibrine; **gelatina**, gelatine; **glicerina**, glycerine.
- és** (national nouns) : **francés**, French; **inglés**, English; **portugués**, Portuguese; **japonés**, Japanese; **siamés**, Siamese.

- oso : **furioso**, furious ; **belicoso**, bellicose ; **gracioso**, gracious, graceful ; **jocoso**, jocose ; **luminoso**, luminous ; **ominoso**, ominous. Some English adjectives of Latin origin ending in *-ous* are formed differently from the Spanish, in which they keep the same root : **bárbaro**, barbarous (barbarian) ; **crédulo**, credulous ; **obvio**, obvious.
- orio : **contradictorio**, contradictory ; **ilusorio**, illusory ; **satisfactorio**, satisfactory.
- icia : **avaricia**, avarice ; **justicia**, justice.
- cia : **falacia**, fallacy ; **inercia**, inertia.
- ancia, -encia : **constancia**, constancy ; **clemencia**, clemency ; **ciencia**, science.
- ión, -ción, -sión : **aluvión**, alluvion ; **acción**, action ; **tensión**, tension.
- ón : **razón**, reason ; **sazón**, season.
- tor : **rector**, rector ; **director**, director ; **actor**, actor.
- or : **honor**, honour ; **clamor**, clamour ; **esplendor**, splendour.
- ura : **figura**, figure ; **estructura**, structure.
- ivo : **activo**, active ; **positivo**, positive ; **nativo**, native.
- icio : **novicio**, novice ; **artificio**, artifice (device).
- ada, -ata : **arcada**, arcade ; **cabalgata**, cavalcade ; **balaustrada**, balustrade ; **serenata**, serenade.
- aje : **lenguaje**, language ; **coraje**, courage ; **paje**, page.
- mento, -miento : **argumento**, argument ; **instrumento**, instrument ; **sentimiento**, sentiment.
- ismo : **despotismo**, despotism ; **egoísmo**, egoism, egotism.
- ista : **egoísta**, egotist, egoist ; **florista**, florist.
- idad, -edad, -dad or -tad : **civilidad**, civility ; **variedad**, variety ; **libertad**, liberty.
- bundo : **vagabundo**, vagabond ; **moribundo**, moribund.
- itud : **actitud**, attitude ; **gratitud**, gratitude.

NOTE.—Suffixes like **-umbre** (**pesadumbre**, weight, sorrow), **-izo** (**hechizo**, charm ; **postizo**, artificial), and others which are not used in words of similar formation in the two languages, are not included in this list.

VOCABULARY.

- acompañar, to enclose, to send along with.
- acuerdo, *m.*, agreement; de acuerdo con, in accordance with.
- artículo, *m.*, article, merchandise.
- cargo, *m.*, charge; a cargo de, against.
- causar, to cause, to be the cause of.
- compañía, *f.*, company.
- condición, *f.*, condition.
- conocimiento, knowledge; conocimiento de embarque, bill of lading.
- consideración, *f.*, consideration; de consideración, considerable.
- contestar, to answer, to reply to.
- convenir, to agree, to agree to.
- corriente, *adj.*, current, instant.
- cubrir, to cover, to pay.
- curso, *m.*, course.
- decir, to say; es decir, that is to say.
- demora, *f.*, delay.
- derecho, *m.*, right, claim.
- despacho, *m.*, despatch, expedition.
- dignar, to deign, to please.
- estimado, *adj.*, esteemed, dear (as: dear Sir).
- factura, *f.*, invoice.
- fruto, *m.*, fruit, product, commodity.
- giro, *m.*, bill of exchange, draft.
- gracias, *f. pl.*, thanks.
- grato, *adj.*, grateful, welcome, agreeable.
- huelga, *f.*, strike.
- información, *f.*, information.
- mercado, *m.*, market.
- mercancía, *f.*, merchandise, commodity.
- motivo, *m.*, motive; con motivo de, owing to, because of, by reason of.
- nota, *f.*, note, notice; tomar nota, to note.
- pedir, to ask for, to order; pedido, *m.*, order.
- perjuicios, *m. pl.*, damages.
- permitir, to allow; permitirse, to beg.
- peseta (pta.), *f.*, Spanish coin, nominally the equivalent of a franc.
- preciso, *adj.*, precise.
- recibo, *m.*, receipt.
- reclamación, *f.*, claim.
- remesa, *f.*, remittance.
- responsable, *adj.*, responsible.
- sobre, *prep.*, on, about, above.
- sumo, *adj.*, the utmost; a lo sumo, at most.
- tal, *dem. adj.*, such, such a.
- tardar, to delay, to be late.
- transporte, *m.*, transport, transportation; compañías de transporte, transport companies.
- venta, *f.*, sale.

179.—*Letter-writing.* The forms of address in common use in Spanish are :

Estimado Señor, Dear Sir.

Estimado Señor Cueto, Dear Mr. Cueto.

Muy estimado Señor, My dear Sir.

Muy Señor mío, Dear Sir.

Muy Señor nuestro, Dear Sir.

Estimados Señores, Dear Sirs, Gentlemen.

Muy Señores míos (or nuestros), Dear Sirs.

Muy Señora mía (or Estimada Señora), Dear Madam.

Mi querido Señor y amigo, Dear Mr. So and So.

Muy Señor mío y amigo, Dear Mr. So and So.

Mi querido amigo, Dear Friend, My dear Friend.

Mi querido Carlos, Dear Charles, or My dear Charles.

Mi querido Doctor, My dear Doctor.

a. The letter to which one is referring is spoken of as *su apreciable, su estimada, su favorecida*, your esteemed, your favour, the word 'carta' being understood.

The following are some of the phrases used at the beginning of letters :

| | |
|--|---|
| Me refiero a su carta de ... y ... | In reference to your letter of ... I ... |
| Tengo el honor de avisar a Vd. recibo de su apre- ciable ... | I beg to acknowledge the re- ceipt of your esteemed ... |
| He sido favorecido con el recibo de su atenta comunicación de ... | I have been favoured by yours of ... |
| Me apresuro a contestar su apreciable del 20 de los corrientes ... | I hasten to reply to your favour of the 20th inst. ... |
| La suya de 10 del pasado está en mi poder ... | Yours of the 10th ultimo is to hand ... |
| Tengo a la vista la última de Vds. fechada el 10 de Agosto ... | I have before me your last letter dated August the 10th ... |

180.—It is the custom in Spain (though not in Spanish America) to put at the end of the letter immediately before the signature the initials **q. b. s. m.** (who kisses your hand) in addressing a man, or **q. b. s. p.** (who kisses your feet) when addressing a lady. These initials stand for **que besa su mano, que besa sus pies.**

181.—The expressions Yours faithfully, Yours truly, Your obedient servant, etc., are rendered in Spanish by **Su atento servidor, Su seguro servidor, Su muy atento y seguro servidor**, which are generally abbreviated into **S. A. S., S. S. S.,** or **S.A.S.S.** as follows:—

Soy de Vd.

A. S. S.

q. b. s. m.,

Gabriel Hernández.

I am

Yours faithfully,

GABRIEL HERNÁNDEZ.

Quedo de Vd. muy

A. S. S.

q. b. s. m.

Luis Rocha.

I remain

Yours faithfully,

LUIS ROCHA.

En espera de sus gratas órdenes, tengo el honor de ofrecerme

S. A. S. S.

Expecting to receive your kind orders, I have the honour to be

Yours faithfully...

No teniendo otro asunto a que referirme por ahora quedo de Vd.

A. S. S.

With nothing else for the present,

I remain

Yours faithfully...

Saludamos a Vd. muy atentamente.

We are yours, etc.

EXERCISE.

1139, Long Acre.

Londres, W.C. 2, 26 de Marzo de 1918.

Señores Merino e Indaburu,

Málaga (España).

Estimados Señores:

Con su apreciable de 20 de los corrientes tuvimos el agrado de recibir la factura y el conocimiento de embarque

relativos a nuestro pedido de Febrero 3. Damos a Vds. las gracias por el despacho de las frutas, pero nos permitimos observar que la demora en la expedición de esta mercancía puede causarnos perjuicios de consideración. Nosotros contábamos con que en ésta, como en otras ocasiones, podríamos recibir en el curso de tres, a lo sumo de cuatro semanas, los frutos pedidos, y nuestros clientes en esta ciudad estaban seguros de poder realizar el artículo en el mercado, si llegaba, como lo esperaban, a fines de Febrero. Es posible que en caso contrario, es decir, si no logran vender esta fruta, quieran hacernos a nosotros responsables de la demora. Si así fuere, sobre lo cual, por otra parte, no tenemos hasta ahora información precisa, Vds. convendrán con nosotros en que nos queda el derecho de hacerles la debida reclamación.

Tomamos nota de que la demora ha procedido principalmente de las dificultades en que se han encontrado las compañías de transporte con motivo de las huelgas; pero, en tal caso, Vds., que conocen las condiciones en que se hace la venta de la fruta, han debido avisarnos por telégrafo en mejor oportunidad.

Acompaña a la presente un giro a su favor por ptas. 1035.⁹⁰, que cubre el saldo a cargo nuestro, de acuerdo con su factura. Dígnense avisarnos recibo.

En espera de sus gratas comunicaciones quedamos de Vds.

A. S. S.

q. b. s. m.

G. NAVARRO E HIJOS.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cómo se empieza una carta en español? ¿Qué fecha tiene la carta de G. Navarro e hijos a Merino e Indaburu?

¿De qué mes y día era la carta de Merino e Indaburu a la cual contestaban G. Navarro e hijos el 26 de Marzo?

¿Qué recibieron Navarro e hijos con la carta de Merino e Indaburu? ¿Qué pedido despachaban estos señores?

¿ Había sido despachado en tiempo el pedido ? ¿ En cuánto tiempo pensaban Navarro e hijos que podrían recibir las frutas ? ¿ De qué estaban seguros los clientes ? Si los clientes no lograren vender la mercancía ¿ a quién harán responsable de los perjuicios ? ¿ Tenían ellos información precisa sobre si los clientes harían reclamación ? ¿ De qué procedió la demora en el despacho de las mercancías ? ¿ Qué compañías fueron afectadas por las huelgas ? ¿ Quiénes debieron avisar por telégrafo que había huelga ? ¿ Hubo remesa de dinero con la carta de Navarro e hijos ? ¿ Qué cosa es un giro ? ¿ Cuánto valía el giro enviado por Navarro e hijos ? ¿ Qué pagaban con eso ? Diga usted qué es una factura. ¿ Qué es un saldo ? Dé Vd. algunos ejemplos de las frases usuales de cortesía con que se terminan ordinariamente las cartas en español. ¿ Qué quieren decir las iniciales 'q. b. s. p.' y 'q. b. s. m.' que se colocan antes de la firma ? ¿ Se usan estas iniciales en América como en España ?

TRANSLATE.

La carta de mi padre llegó por el correo (post) de ayer. Recibí con ella doscientos veinte y cuatro pesos argentinos para mis gastos de los tres meses siguientes. Mi padre me dice que los negocios no van bien por ahora. Las cosechas han sido escasas y, naturalmente, los negocios de comisión en que él se ocupa no han estado muy activos. Espera, sin embargo, que habrá una mejora considerable en el año venidero.

Un amigo me escribe de Lima con fecha veinte y cinco de Marzo que piensa venir a Londres en Junio con su familia. Desea información sobre el precio (cost) de las subsistencias (life) en esta ciudad. Le han dicho que las subsistencias son aquí muy caras y quiere estar seguro de que los gastos no son superiores (are not above) a su hacienda (his means). Es hombre muy rico, pero no quisiera, según me dice, gastar más de lo necesario para vivir decentemente.

La Sta. María Rodríguez, de Valparaíso, hija de D. Valeriano, ha sido nombrada profesora de español en el colegio donde recibió su diploma. Sus discípulos y discípulas la estiman mucho y están muy contentos de recibir lecciones de ella; pero quisieran que en vez de tres les diera cinco lecciones por semana. Ella dice, sin embargo, que el discípulo puede aprender mucho con su solo esfuerzo (*effort*) y que tres lecciones semanales son suficientes (*enough*) para los discípulos que tienen interés en aprender el idioma. Durante la noche los discípulos pueden ir a las conferencias que dicta (*delivers*) la Señorita Rodríguez en español, en el Círculo Filológico.

TRANSLATE.

The post will arrive to-day. For three weeks we have had no letters from our family. There have been delays in the delivery (*distribución*) of letters; perhaps the service of steamers to and from South America has been very irregular. We are all waiting for the arrival of the mail. We have friends and relatives in South America and we do not like to be without news from them for three weeks. There is a mail from South America every fortnight, but as there are two mails from New York to England every week, and the communications between New York and the northern part of South America are more frequent than between England and South America, we sometimes receive via New York letters from Colombia and Venezuela every week. The coasts of these two South American countries are the nearest both to New York and London on the whole of the South American Continent.

It is necessary to make constant use of our memory to learn a language. The things that we know well in a language are those that we know by heart. The rules (*reglas*) are very important, but they do not help (*ayudan*) so well, when we want to speak or to write, as the words, the phrases and the idioms (*modismos*) that we can repeat

without hesitation (*vacilación*), because we know their meaning and their form: to learn a language, then, is to learn by heart as many words, phrases, and idioms as our memory can retain (*contener*).

XVIII

ADVERBS

182.—It is not possible in an elementary grammar to give a full list of Spanish adverbs. They are numerous. Some are obsolescent; the following are in common use:

183.—Adverbs of place:

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| abajo, below. | debajo, underneath, below. |
| adelante, ahead, forward. | delante, before. |
| ahí, there. | detrás, behind. |
| allá, there, over there. | donde, where. |
| allá, lejos, yonder. | enfrente, opposite. |
| allí, there. | fuera, out, outside. |
| aquí, here. | junto, near. |
| arriba, above. | lejos, far. |
| cerca, near. | |

a. *Donde* combined with the preposition *a* forms a single word and is used with verbs meaning motion.

Iba adonde el honor me mandaba. I was going where honour bade me go.

b. *Aquí, ahí, allí* (or *allá*) are demonstrative adverbs, the meaning of which corresponds exactly with the idea of location conveyed by the demonstrative adjectives *este, ese, aquel*. *aquí* means *en este lugar*; *ahí*, *en ese lugar*, and *allí* or *allá* are put for *en aquel lugar*: *Te escribí de aquí la semana pasada a Valencia, para decirte que Antonio, viniendo de ahí, tuvo un accidente, de resultas del cual lo llevaron a Játiva. De allí te habrá dado noticias de su salud.*

c. **Donde** is a relative adverb often used in combination with **aquí, ahí, allí** :

Allí florecen las artes Arts flourish there where
donde el buen gusto de the good taste of the
los ciudadanos las re- citizens rewards them.
compensa.

d. **Así** and **como, tal** and **cual**, combine in the same way.

Tal es el hijo cual ha The son is just what his
sido su padre. father was.

Así toca el piano como She plays the piano as well
guisa el cocido. as she seasons the stew.

e. The relative adverbs sometimes include their antecedents, like the relative pronouns. **Donde las dan las toman** (**Allí las dan donde las toman**); they get what they deserve (Spanish proverb).

f. The relative adverbs **donde, cuando, como** when used in clauses of interrogation are accentuated: **¿Dónde vives?** (where do you live?); **¿Cómo lo sabe usted?** (how do you know it?); **me preguntó cuándo cerraba el parlamento sus sesiones** (he asked me when Parliament would be prorogued).

184.—Adverbs of time.

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ahora, now. | luego, soon after. |
| anteayer, before yesterday. | mañana, to-morrow. |
| antes, before. | mientras, meanwhile. |
| así que, as soon as, when. | nunca, never. |
| aun (aún), yet, still. | pronto, soon. |
| ayer, yesterday. | siempre, always. |
| después, after, afterwards. | tarde, late. |
| hoy, to-day. | temprano, early. |
| jamás, never. | todavía, still, yet. |

185.—Adverbs of manner :

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| apenas, scarcely, hardly. | conforme, according to. |
| así, so. | cual, as, like. |
| bien, well. | despacio, slowly. |
| cabalmente, just. | excepto, except. |
| como, as, like. | mal, badly. |

más bien, rather.
 mientras, while.
 quedo, softly, gently.

salvo, except.
 tal, such as.

186.—A number of adjectives take, in their singular masculine form, the place of the adverb: **alto**, aloud, in a loud voice (¡**alto!** in exclamatory clauses means *halt!*); **recio**, strongly, vigorously; **claro**, clearly; **duro**, in a hard way, violently.

a. Adverbs of manner are usually formed by adding to the feminine singular form of adjectives the termination **-mente**: **caro**, dear, **caramente**, dearly; **rudo**, rough, **rudamente**, roughly; **suave**, soft, **suavemente**, softly. When two or more adverbs in **-mente** follow one another and qualify the same word, all but the last one drop the ending **-mente**:

Habló clara, precisa, elegantemente.

He spoke clearly, precisely, elegantly.

b. The suppression of the ending also takes place if a conjunction intervenes:

Se expresa clara, aunque afectadamente.

He expresses himself clearly, but with affectation.

Obró sincera y leal pero no desapasionadamente.

He acted sincerely and loyally, but not dispassionately.

c. Adjectives in the superlative form are also convertible into adverbs by the addition of **-mente**.

Trató a sus hijos cruelísimamente.

He treated his sons most cruelly.

187.—**Como** is a relative adverb of degree, often combined with **así**, in the same manner as relative pronouns alternate in a sentence.

Así lo hallamos como lo habíamos dejado.

We found it as we had left it.

Así es como usted lo dice.

It is as you put it.

Como me lo contaron te le cuento (Así como me lo contaron).

I tell it to you as it was told to me.

188.—Note the following constructions :

| | |
|--|---|
| Mal organizada como está la sociedad, todavía no se pierde esfuerzo alguno bien dirigido. | Badly as society is organized, yet no well-directed effort is lost. |
| ¿A cómo venden el metro de tela ? | At how much do they sell a metre of cloth ? |
| Encontró Don Quijote con dos como clérigos o estudiantes. | Don Quixote met two people who looked like priests or students. |
| Está como serio conmigo. | He is rather stern to me. |

189.—Adverbs of degree :

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| algo , somewhat. | más , more. |
| apenas , scarcely, hardly. | mucho , much. |
| bastante , enough, quite, pretty. | muy , much, very much. |
| casi , almost. | nada , not at all. |
| cuanto , so much. | poco , little. |
| demasiado , too, too much. | tanto , as much. |

a. **Mucho** and **muy** are one and the same word: the first is used before or after verbs, after the adjectives which it qualifies, and before comparatives.

| | |
|---|--|
| Mucho siento no haber venido antes. | I much regret not having come before. |
| Su bondad es mucho más visible que su sabiduría. | His kindness is much more evident than his wisdom. |
| El niño duerme mucho durante el día. | The boy sleeps a good deal during the day. |
| Es bonita y mucho. | She is exceedingly pretty. |

b. **Muy** occurs before the adjectives, adverbs, and adverbial phrases which it qualifies.

| | |
|--|--|
| Muy acostumbrado estoy ya a la idea de la separación. | I am now quite accustomed to the idea of separation. |
| Muy en breve saldrá el libro. | The book will come out very shortly. |
| Se arrepintió de haber hablado muy a la ligera. | He regretted having talked very frivolously. |

c. **Mucho** is sometimes a neuter noun like **nada**, **poco**, **demasiado**, and **bastante**.

¿Qué traes? — **Mucho** bueno.

Por lo poco se saca lo mucho.

Confiesa que tiene mucho, pero no demasiado, ni siquiera lo bastante.

What have you brought?
— Many good things.

We may judge of the many by the few.

He owns he has a great deal, but not too much, not even enough.

Mucho means in these sentences many things, **poco** few things, and **bastante** enough things: that they are neuter nouns is indicated by the article **lo**.

190.—**Tanto** and **cuanto** drop the last syllable before an adjective or another adverb, except **más** and its comparatives.

La ciudad está ya tan cerca que se ve la iglesia.

Tan deseado como escaso.

Tanto le dije cuanto sabía.

¡Está enferma su hermana! ¡Lo siento tanto!

¡Cuán constante ha sido en su trabajo!

Tanto mejor si se calla.

The town is so near now that the church can be seen.

As longed for as [it is] scarce.

I told him as much as I knew.

So your sister is ill! I am so sorry!

How steady he has been at his work!

So much the better if he keeps silent.

a. **Tanto** and **cuanto** are used correlatively, the former being sometimes involved in the latter.

Tanto ha sufrido cuanto puede soportar un hombre.

He has suffered as much as a man can bear.

or,

Ha sufrido cuanto un hombre puede soportar (tanto cuanto).

He has suffered all a man can bear.

b. With comparatives **tanto . . . cuanto** are rendered in English by 'the more' or 'the less':

Tanto más lo deploro, The more I think of it, the
cuanto más pienso en more I regret it.
ello.

Tanto menos lo esperá- The nearer it drew to us,
bamos cuanto más se the less we expected it.
acercaba.

The order of the two clauses can be altered: **Cuanto más pienso en ello, tanto más lo deploro.**

c. In the following sentence, which is often quoted, the adjective **tanto** is opposed to the adverb **cuanto**:

No tanta astucia cuanto de- Not so much cunning as an
masiada hipocresía. excess of hypocrisy.

d. **Tanto . . . cuanto** used correlatively can also be rendered in English by 'both':

Me decidí a comprar la casa, I decided to buy the house
tanto porque era un buen both to please my wife and
negocio cuanto (or como) to do a good stroke of busi-
por complacer a mi mujer. ness.

191.—**Tal** and **cual** enter into similar constructions both as adjectives and adverbs:

Tal la dejó cual (or como) la He left it such as you see it
ves ahora. now.

a. 'All the more so, because' is translated **Tanto más cuanto.**

Tanto más cuanto yo no lo All the more so, because I do
conozco. not know him.

192.—**Casi**, as an adverb, should only be used to modify adjectives, verbs, or adverbs; at times it appears as though it modified a noun: **era casi noche**, night had almost come on; **casi un kilogramo de trigo**, almost a kilogramme of wheat. But it must be noted here that **noche** has an adverbial meaning and **uno** is a numeral adjective. Yet such expressions as **la casi totalidad de los habitantes**, almost the whole of the population, though they are often used in the daily press, should not be imitated.

193.—Idioms :

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Hace más al caso. | It is more to the point. |
| Por más fuerte que sea. | Strong as he may be. |

194.—Adverbs of doubt :

acaso, perhaps.
quizá, quizás (¿ **quién sabe** ?), perhaps.
tal vez, perhaps.

195.—Adverbs of affirmation :

cierto, certainly, truly.
sí, yes.
verdaderamente, indeed, truly.

196.—Adverbs of negation :

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| No , not. | nunca , never. |
| absolutamente no , No, not at all ; by no means. | tampoco , neither. |
| ni , nor. | nada , not at all, nothing. |

a. As already remarked, several negations may be used in Spanish to emphasize the sense of the sentence (see § 163).

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| No nos dijo nunca nada de eso. | He never told us anything of the kind. |
|---------------------------------------|--|

b. It is a peculiarity of Spanish that certain phrases of an affirmative meaning, which are often employed to emphasize a negation, may be used independently in a negative sense :

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|
| En mi vida lo he visto | I never saw him. |
|-------------------------------|------------------|

c. It may be noted that often in Spanish, as in English, two negations are equivalent to an affirmation :

| | |
|---|---|
| No es inesperado. | It is not unexpected. |
| Se retiró no sin haber comunicado el triste mensaje. | He left, not without having communicated the sad message. |

d. The reason why words like **nada**, **nadie**, and other Spanish words implying negation in modern actual usage, may be

preceded by a negative adverb without altering the sense of the sentence, is because **nada** and **nadie** were not originally negative words. **Nada** is 'cosa nacida' and **nadie** 'hombre nacido'.

e. It must be noted that this use of the double negations in Spanish is conditioned by the rule of putting the **no** before the other words implying a negative sense. We may say: **No he visto a nadie**, I have seen nobody; but the genius of the language refuses to accept constructions like: **ninguno de ellos no me lo dijo**, instead of **ninguno de ellos me lo dijo** (or **no me lo dijo ninguno de ellos**), none of them told me of it.

197.—Adverbs modifying an adjective precede it always: **muy bueno**, **supremamente útil** (most useful), **demasiado poca agua** (too little water), **bien dicho**, **malamente expresado** (poorly expressed).

a. Adverb equivalents modifying an adjective may be placed after it. **Pobre en extremo** (extremely poor); **rico en demasía** (too rich, rich to excess).

b. Adverbs or adverb equivalents modifying a verb generally follow it, but they may also precede the verb:

| | |
|--|---|
| Sabía bien la lección, pero la expuso mediocremente. | He knew the lesson well, but he explained it indifferently. |
| Estarán debidamente preparados para el próximo Enero. | They will be duly prepared next January. |
| Bien sabía yo que usted vendría tarde. | I well knew you would be late. |

c. **No** always precedes the adjective, the verb, the adverb or adverb equivalents it modifies:

| | |
|--|---|
| No quiere decirlo porque no está seguro. | He does not want to say so because he is not sure. |
| No tan bueno como él, pero no por eso desechable. | Not so well as he, but not to be rejected for all that. |
| Despiértlenme las aves con su cantar sabroso, no aprendido. | Let the birds awake me with their delightful untaught song. |

VOCABULARY.

abatir, to put down, to lower.

abundante, *adj.*, abundant.

adusto, *adj.*, gloomy, stern.

alminar, *m.*, minaret.

almoraduj, *m.*, sweet marjoram.

alzar, to raise, to lift.

ameno, *adj.*, pleasant.

arboleda, *f.*, avenue, grove, small wood.

aroma, *m.*, aroma.

azahar, *m.*, orange blossom.

bazar, *m.*, bazaar.

bosque, *m.*, wood.

brusco, *adj.*, rough, rude;

bruscamente, *adv.*, abruptly, brusquely.

campo, *m.*, field, country.

cercar, to surround, to besiege.

cinamomo, *m.*, cinnamon.

civilizado, *adj.*, civilized.

comarca, *f.*, region, country, land.

cosecha, *f.*, crop, harvest.

cuerno, *m.*, horn.

damasco, *m.*, damask.

dentro, *adv.*, within, inside; por dentro, inside.

discurrir, to go about, to discourse.

elevar, to raise, to lift, to heave.

en, *prep.*, in; en medio, amidst, amid.

enhiesto, *adj.*, erect, upright.

espléndido, *adj.*, splendid.

feliz, *adj.*, happy.

fértil, *adj.*, fertile.

fuelle, *f.*, fountain, source, spring.

grandeza, *f.*, greatness.

imaginación, *f.*, imagination.

impresionado, *adj.*, impressed.

infinito, *adj.*, numberless, endless.

innumerable, *adj.*, innumerable.

jardín, *m.*, garden.

lejos, *adv.*, far; a lo lejos, in the distance.

locomotora, *f.*, locomotive, engine.

luna, *f.*, moon; media luna, crescent.

máquina, *f.*, machine; máquina de riego, irrigation pump.

medio, *m.*, middle; en medio, amidst.

melancólico, *adj.*, sad, melancholy.

mezquita, *f.*, mosque.

montón, *m.*, heap.

monumental, *adj.*, monumental.

morador, *m.*, dweller.

muralla, *f.*, wall, rampart.

murmurador, *adj.*, rippling; *m.*, gossip.

muro, *m.*, wall.

Occidente, *m.*, West.

otro, *adj.*, other; en otro tiempo, formerly.

pájaro, *m.*, bird.

pálido, *adj.*, pale.

| | |
|--|--|
| pardo , <i>adj.</i> , brown, grey. | riego , <i>m.</i> , irrigation. |
| parlero , <i>adj.</i> , talkative; pájaro parlero , chirping bird. | ruido , <i>m.</i> , noise. |
| pender , to hang from, to be hanging. | sentirse , to feel; me sentí , I felt. |
| planicie , <i>f.</i> , plain. | silencio , <i>m.</i> , silence. |
| poblar , to populate. | solazarse , to enjoy oneself. |
| poderoso , <i>adj.</i> , mighty. | sólido , <i>adj.</i> , solid. |
| polvo , <i>m.</i> , dust. | sombrío , <i>adj.</i> , sombre, dark. |
| proteger , to protect. | sonriente , <i>adj.</i> , smiling. |
| provincia , <i>f.</i> , province. | suced , to follow. |
| provisto , <i>adj.</i> , furnished, provided. | tapiz , <i>m.</i> , tapestry, hangings. |
| público , <i>adj.</i> , public. | tierno , <i>adj.</i> , tender. |
| puerta , <i>f.</i> , gate, door. | torno , <i>m.</i> , brake, lathe; en torno , around. |
| recuerdo , <i>m.</i> , recollection, memory. | transeúnte , <i>m.</i> , passer-by. |
| reinar , to rule, to reign, to prevail. | trigo , <i>m.</i> , wheat. |
| resplandeciente , <i>adj.</i> , resplendent, glittering. | tristeza , <i>f.</i> , sadness. |
| | verde , <i>adj.</i> , green. |
| | vivo , <i>adj.</i> , alive, lively; vivamente , <i>adv.</i> , intensely. |

EXERCISE.

Córdoba.

La locomotora corría por los campos de la provincia de Córdoba. Cubiertos de tiernos trigos se extendían en planicie de un verde pálido, cortados bruscamente por el muro sombrío y adusto de la sierra. Cuando nos acercamos a la ciudad, me sentí impresionado vivamente por la grandeza de sus recuerdos. Aquel montón de casas que se alzaba pardo y melancólico entre el río y la montaña había sido la gran ciudad del Occidente, la capital del mundo civilizado. Al ruido, a la alegría que en otro tiempo reinaran en ella, habían sucedido años y años, siglos y siglos de silencio y tristeza. Veíala con la imaginación hermosa y feliz en medio de una comarca fértil, sonriente, abundante en toda clase de cosechas, cercada de murallas resplandecientes, provista de puertas monumen-

tales, de infinitas calles, donde las máquinas de riego abatían el polvo. Innumerables transeúntes discurrían por ellas, entrando y saliendo de sus espléndidos bazares a cuyas puertas pendían ricos damascos y tapices. En todas partes se alzaban suntuosos palacios más bellos y suntuosos por dentro que por fuera: en todas partes bosques y jardines públicos, donde sus felices moradores se solazaban con el aroma del azahar, del cinamomo y almoraduj. En torno de ella los amenos verjeles se extendían a lo lejos, poblados de arboledas sombrías, de fuentes murmuradoras, de pájaros parleros. Enhiesta sobre el alminar de la mezquita, la media luna elevaba sus cuernos poderosos protegiendo a la ciudad.

A. PALACIO VALDÉS.

CONVERSATION.

¿Qué es Córdoba? ¿Cuál es la capital de esa provincia española? ¿Qué es una planicie? ¿Qué se cultiva en la provincia de Córdoba? ¿Qué recuerdos impresionaron al viajero, cuando se acercaba a la ciudad? ¿Qué fué en un tiempo la ciudad de Córdoba? En vez del ruido y la alegría de otros tiempos ¿qué ha habido en ella durante siglos y siglos? ¿Cómo la imaginaba el viajero? ¿En qué era abundante la comarca? ¿De qué estaba cercada? ¿Cómo abatían el polvo de las calles? ¿Quiénes entraban a los bazares y salían de ellos? ¿Qué había colgado (hanging) en las puertas de los bazares? ¿Eran felices los habitantes? ¿Dónde se solazaban? ¿Qué aromas había en los jardines? Diga Vd. cómo eran los campos en torno de la ciudad. ¿Dónde se veía la media luna? ¿Qué protegía la ciudad? ¿Cómo se llaman en español los extremos de la media luna?

TRANSLATE.

Inmediatamente después de la llegada del hijo mayor, que vivía en América, los negocios de la casa (firm) empezaron (began) a mejorar. Don Gabriel, así se llamaba el

hijo mayor, trajo de sus viajes extenso conocimiento de los negocios y una vasta (*wide*) experiencia que han sido grandemente útiles para la casa. Toda casa de comercio debería enviar uno de sus socios (*partners*) a visitar los países con los cuales está en relaciones comerciales. El éxito es muy frecuentemente el resultado de los conocimientos obtenidos en viajes como éstos.

Las gentes (*people*) del pueblo donde vive mi amigo lo quieren mucho. Ha vivido allí veinte años y ha sido muy útil a la población. Fundó (*founded*) una escuela donde reciben enseñanza casi gratuita (*free*) más de ciento veinte niños de las clases pobres. Fundó también un hospital para niños y se dice que cuanto mayor es el número (*number*) de niños que van a la escuela tanto menor es el de los que entran al hospital. Ahora está edificando un pequeño teatro (*theatre*) porque dice que lo agradable es tan necesario como lo útil. Él se cree feliz porque vive útil y agradablemente ocupado.

¿Has visitado la Iglesia de San Agustín (*Saint Augustine's Church*)? — Cabalmente vengo de allá. Es un bello edificio sólidamente construido. No es pesado (*heavy*), sin embargo. Ha sido construido recientemente y con el tiempo será muy visitado.

TRANSLATE.

There is a mountain, eight leagues (*leguas*) from Chololla, called Popocatepetl, which means 'smoke mountain', because smoke (*humo*) and fire (*fuego*) emanate from it often and in great quantities. Cortés sent over there ten Spaniards with many natives to serve as (*de*) guides and carry provisions for them. The way up hill (*de subida*) was steep (*áspero*) and full of obstacles (*embarazoso*). They went up until they began to hear the noise; but they did not dare (*atreverse*) to go to the top and see, because the earth shook (*temblaba*) and there was so much ash (*ceniza*) that the road was obstructed, and

so they wanted to return. But two of them, who must have been either the bravest (*más valientes*) or most inquisitive (*curiosos*), determined to see the end and mystery of such a wonderful and frightful fire, so as to be able to report (*dar razón, informar*) to the man who sent them, not wishing to appear as faint-hearted (*medrosos*) or cowards (*ruines*), and so, against the will of the others and in spite of (*a pesar de*) the guides who wished to inspire them with awe (*aterrorizar*), saying that no human foot had ever trodden or human eyes ever seen it, they went up, through the ashes, and reached the top (*la cima*) under a thick cloud (*nube*) of smoke. (López de Gómara, *Conquista de Méjico*.)

Rice (*arroz*) forms the chief (*principal*) subsistence of the people in India (*la India*), China (*la China*), Japan (*el Japón*), and other eastern (*orientales*) countries. Indeed it supports (*sirve de sustento a*) more persons than any other article of food. In Asia it is chiefly cultivated in India, China, and Ceylon (*Ceilan*); in Europe, in Lombardy (*Lombardía*) and Spain; in Africa, in Egypt; in South America, in Brazil and all over the tropical and damp (*húmedas*) regions, and in North America in the Carolinas and Louisiana. Its cultivation (*cultivo*) requires an immense quantity of moisture (*humedad*). It grows best in fields which can be inundated.

General Bau, a German officer in the (*al*) service of Russia who had contributed much to the elevation of the great Catherine (*Catalina*), had orders to march (*marchar*) to Holstein with a body of troops (*tropas, soldados*) of which he had the command (*mando*). He was a soldier of fortune (*soldado aventurero*). No one knew his family or his native place. But he prided himself on (*se enorgullecía*) his very humble origin. He introduced one day a poor miller (*molinero*) and his wife (*esposa*) to his officers and told them that the poor honest miller was his brother, whose condition he tried to improve in the future.

XIX

PREPOSITIONS

198.—The Spanish prepositions are :

A, to, at, in, on, by.

ante, before.

bajo, under, below.

con, with, by.

contra, against.

de, of, from, by, with.

desde, from, since.

en, in, into, on, at.

entre, among, between.

hacia, towards.

hasta, until, to, up to.

para, by, for, to, in order to.

por, for, through, by.

según, according to.

sin, without.

sobre, on, upon, about, concerning.

tras, **atrás**, **detrás**, after, behind, backwards.

199.—The correct use of the prepositions is the surest test of knowledge of a language. There are no precise or general rules in Spanish for the use of the prepositions, and their correspondence with English prepositions is difficult to establish, as the foregoing list shows. Assiduous practice following the best usage is the only way to master this section of Spanish grammar. The difficulty is increased by the fact that good writers often differ as to what is the best usage.

200.—Preposition **a** :

Voy a la escuela.

I am going to school.

Estoy escribiéndole a mi madre.

I am writing to my mother.

A decir verdad yo no lo ví.

To tell the truth I did not see him.

Lo dejo a su arbitrio.

I leave it to you (to decide).

Es a saber.

To wit.

A las diez de la mañana.

At ten in the morning.

El coche está a la puerta.

The coach is at the door.

Crecen a la sombra de otros árboles.

They grow under the shadow of other trees.

¿A cómo se vende el metro de cinta?

What is the price of a metre of ribbon?

A la intemperie.

In the open air, out of doors.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Se defendió a cuchilladas. | He warded off the attacks with his sword. |
| Pintar a la aguada. | To paint in water-colours. |
| Al salir de casa lo vi. | I saw him as I was leaving home. |

201.—The preposition *a* is always used with indirect objects not expressed by pronouns.

| | |
|--|---|
| Juan dió sus hijos todos a la patria. | John gave all his sons to his country. |
| Negaron a Luis la licencia que había pedido. | Louis was refused the leave he had asked for. |
| Puso varios reparos a la conferencia. | He made several objections to the lecture. |

a. The indirect object expressed by a pronoun does not require the preposition unless when accompanied by *mí*, *ti*, *sí*, *él*, *ella*, or their plurals.

| | |
|---|--|
| A mí me lo dicen no a ti. | They say that to me, not to you. |
| Envían un libro a él y un vestido a ella. | They are sending a book to him and a dress to her. |
| Nos señaló el camino a nosotros. | He pointed the way to us. |
| Vd. le dió a él un terrible golpe. | You gave him a terrible blow. |

b. In the first, third, and fourth sentences there are two elements to denote the indirect object: *a mí*, *me*; *nos*, *a nosotros*; and *le*, *a él*. Although one of the two elements is superfluous the construction is often used both in colloquial and literary language to emphasize the meaning of the phrase, to avoid ambiguity, or even for the sake of elegance.

202.—*A* is obligatory before nouns which represent determinate or known persons and are the direct object of the verb (the preposition means in this case, as the grammarians say, *personalidad* and *determinación*). Proper names of persons therefore always require it.

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Quiero imitar a Amadís. | I want to imitate Amadís. |
| No conozco a González. | I do not know González. |

203.—Proper names of inanimate things, such as localities or countries, require the preposition when not preceded by the article :

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Visitó a Berlín en el verano de 1912. | He visited Berlin in the summer of 1912. |
| Pizarro conquistó el Perú. | Pizarro conquered Peru. |
| Atravesó el Magdalena a nado. | He swam across the Magdalena River. |

204.—Alguien, nadie, quien as direct objects require the preposition a :

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Busca a alguien. | He is looking for somebody. |
| ¿A quién llamas ? | Whom are you calling ? |
| No encontré a nadie. | I found nobody. |

205.—Common nouns referring to persons (like **hombre**, **reina**, **niño**) and preceded by the definite article also require the preposition when they allude to specific persons or people already mentioned.

| | |
|---|---|
| Y llamando a los galeotes, . . . les dijo . . . | And calling the galley slaves, he told them . . . |
| Defendí al alcalde. | I defended the Mayor. |

a. When taken in a general sense these common nouns are not preceded by the preposition :

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Busco socios para este negocio. | I am looking for partners in this business. |
|---------------------------------|---|

206.—The names of personified things must have the preposition with the direct object :

| | |
|---|---|
| Quise tanto a una canasta de colar atestada de ropa blanca que la abracé conmigo. | I became so fond of a sifting-basket full of linen that I embraced it. ¹ |
| Las aves saludan al día. | The birds hail the day. |

207.—We have said that in the impersonal use of **haber** in Spanish the nouns that form part of the sentence are

¹ Ormsby's elaborate translation of this passage of Cervantes' runs as follows : ' I loved a washerwoman's basket of clean linen so well, and held it so close in my embrace . . . '

always in the accusative, while in English they are the nominatives of the verb. These nouns never require a preposition in Spanish.

Hay moros en la costa. There are Moors on the coast.

Hubo quien lo asegurara. There was somebody who affirmed it.

Había el Obispo y la congregación de por medio. There were the Bishop and the congregation in the way.

208.—The preposition **a** used with the direct object often serves the purpose of qualifying the sense of the noun to which it refers.

Busco un médico means that one is looking for a doctor of some sort, any doctor; **busco a un médico** means that one is looking for an individual doctor who has been mentioned or is about to be described. For instance: **busco a un médico que estuvo aquí ayer**, I am looking for a doctor who was here yesterday.

209.—The use of the preposition **a** in Spanish with the direct object is a peculiarity of the language. Neither in French nor in Italian is it so employed. In Portuguese the preposition **a** in the accusative is of rare occurrence and in Roumanian another preposition is used for this purpose.¹ The practice is noticeable in Spanish from the beginnings of the language and does not show any marked tendency to disappear. The looseness and variety of Spanish syntax partially explain the use of this particle instead of the Latin accusative. It became necessary in order to distinguish between the subject and the direct object, as their place in the sentence was not always a sure indication.²

¹ **Am vazut pe frate tau** (I have seen your brother).

² Compare the following sentences:

Me recibió como enemigo. He received me as if he were my enemy.

Me recibió como a enemigo. He received me as if I were his enemy.

No doubt the necessity of establishing a difference like this gave rise to the use of the preposition with the direct object.

In the colloquial language of Madrid and in the daily papers the preposition is dropped before the names of places :

Recorrí Madrid en coche. I drove about Madrid.
Conozco París. I know Paris.

This practice, though followed by a few modern writers, should not be imitated ; it is against the genius of the language, and adds nothing to its qualities of clearness and elegance.

210.—There are a number of nouns and adjectives similarly used with the preposition **a** as though they were verbs.

Horror al vacío. Abhorrence of a vacuum.
Amor a la verdad. Love of truth.
Era guiado en todas sus acciones por el temor a la muerte. He was guided in all his doings by the fear of death.

211.—Sentences of the same meaning sometimes require the preposition, and at other times are used without it. Compare the following :

Honrarás padre y madre ; honra a tu padre y a tu madre ; no tiene esposa, tiene a su hijo, que lo venera y lo enaltece (he has no wife, he has his son who reveres and exalts him).

212.—When a sentence contains a verb which takes the preposition **a** with an indirect object, the direct object is not preceded by **a** ; but in such cases it is preferable to adopt the passive form of the verb, specially when both objects are proper names :

Presenté Pedro a Juan I introduced Peter to John.
(Pedro fué presentado a Juan por mí).

213.—Sometimes the preposition is dropped before the direct object when the latter is modified by an adverbial phrase beginning with **a**. Compare :

Conozco a sus amigos. I know your friends.
Conozco mis amigos a obscuras. I can tell even in the dark who is my friend.

214. The preposition **a** and other prepositions are often

used in a pleonastic way with the verb *ser* to emphasize the meaning of the sentence :

| | |
|--|--|
| Es a usted a quien deseo hablar. | It is to you (especially) I want to speak. |
| Eso es a lo que me refiero. | That is the (very) thing I am referring to. |
| De su salud es de lo que se trata. | Your health is the (main) point we are dealing with. |
| Con ese dinero era con el que tenía pensado comprarme un vestido. | That (and no other) was the money with which I meant to buy a dress. |

215.—Note the following idioms :

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Sordo a todos los ruegos. | Deaf to all prayers. |
| Montar a caballo. | To ride on horseback. |
| A mujeriegas. | To ride like a woman (side-saddle). |
| A ojos vistas. | Visibly, manifestly. |
| A dos leguas de la costa. | At two leagues from the coast. |
| A todo vapor. | At full steam. |
| A hurtadillas. | Stealthily. |
| A la francesa. | In the French fashion. ¹ |
| A eso de las diez. | At about ten o'clock, towards ten o'clock. |
| A lo largo. | Along, lengthwise. |
| A la larga. | At length. |
| De largo a largo. | From one end to the other, lengthwise. |
| A la funerala. | With reversed arms. |

216.—Preposition *de*.

De is used in Spanish for the genitive case.

| | |
|---|---|
| Hoy recibe la mujer de mi hermano. | My brother's wife is at home to-day. |
| Ha venido a visitar el solar de sus abuelos. | He has come to visit his ancestors' home. |

¹ The neuter form of the article can also be used in expressions of this kind :

Volar quieres con alas a lo pollo,
Estando en cuatro pies a lo pollino (GÓNGORA).
Habla a lo llano, a lo liso.

217.—This preposition is also used in Spanish to translate English epithet nouns: **la puerta de la casa**, the house-door; **la plaza de mercado**, the market-square; **el reloj de sol**, the sun-dial. It denotes likewise origin, extraction, like 'from' in English: **viene del Japón**, he comes from Japan; **el caucho (goma elástica) se extrae de plantas muy diversas**, india-rubber is extracted from very different plants. **Hablo de memoria**, I am speaking from memory.

a. It is used to denote the material out of which things are made or built: **reloj de oro**, gold watch; **gorra de plumas**, feather bonnet; **armazón de acero**, steel framework.

218.—**De** used after the verb **deber** means probability, likelihood, or presumption. Compare the following expressions:

| | |
|---|---|
| Hoy deben ser las elecciones. | The elections must be held to-day. |
| Hoy deben de ser las elecciones. | Very likely the elections will take place to-day. |

a. It should be noted, however, that in common usage and even amongst good writers **deber** used without a preposition may mean probability or conjecture, but in no case should the preposition be used where there is absolute certainty or necessity.

219.—Note the following idioms:

| | |
|---|--|
| Está con el infeliz de su hermano. | He is with that wretched brother of his. |
| Habla así de puro ignorante. | He talks so out of sheer ignorance. |
| ¡Pobre de mí! | Woe is me! |
| De mí sé decir que no lo acepto. | As for me, I do not take it. |

220.—**De** sometimes takes the place of the comparative **que** (than) when one of the terms is not expressed but implied:

Pide más de lo que se le debe.¹

Le dije más de cuatro cosas.

Fué más noble y generoso de lo que ustedes suponen.

He is asking more than is due to him.

I told him a few things (i. e. home-truths, in an admonitory sense).

He was nobler and more generous than you suppose.

221.—With the superlative the preposition *de* is sometimes used in Spanish when the English construction requires 'in' or 'on'.

La montaña más alta del mundo.

Buenos Aires es la ciudad más populosa del continente Sud americano.

The highest mountain in the world.

Buenos Aires is the most populous city on the South American Continent.

VOCABULARY.

abrumador, *adj.*, oppressing, overwhelming.

abundar, to abound, to be abundant in.

ante, *prep.*, before, in the presence of.

anunciar, to announce, to forebode.

apreciar, to appreciate.

arteria, *f.*, artery, large street.

bulto, *m.*, form, bulk.

cabello, *m.*, hair.

cansarse, to get tired.

cara, *f.*, face.

casino, *m.*, casino.

ceder, to give way, to abate, to cede.

cervecería, *f.*, ale-house, brewery.

comandante, *m.*, commander.

cómodo, *adj.*, comfortable, easy.

concierto, *m.*, concert.

concurrido, *adj.*, attended, crowded.

desfilas, to pass by in single file.

efecto, *m.*, effect; en efecto, in fact.

elegante, *adj.*, elegant.

encender, to light, to kindle.

época, *f.*, epoch; en esta época, in these days.

erizar, to bristle; se le erizaban los pelos, his hair stood on end.

eso, *pron.*, that; y eso que

¹ Lo que pide es más que lo se le debe.

What he is asking for is more than what is due to him.

los tenía mojados, wet as they were.
 estío, *m.*, summer.
 farol, *m.*, lantern.
 fila, *f.* row.
 guarnecer, to provide, to furnish; el banco de piedra con respaldo de hierro que lo guarnece, the stone bench furnished with an iron back.
 hierro, *m.*, iron.
 largo, *adj.*, long; a lo largo, all along.
 libre, *adj.*, free.
 mojar, to wet, to drench.
 muchedumbre, *f.*, crowd, great number of.
 muelle, *m.*, pier, mole, jetty; spring.
 naranja, *f.*, orange; naranjo, *m.*, orange-tree.
 palmera, *f.*, palm-tree.
 pared, *f.*, wall; paredón, thick wall.
 perspectiva, *f.*, prospect, perspective, expectation.
 piedra, *f.*, stone.
 plaza, *f.*, square.

por, *prep.*, for, by; por la noche, at night; por cuenta de, on behalf of.
 primavera, *adj.*, belonging to spring time.
 prolongarse, to prolong, to extend.
 recluir, to seclude, to shut up.
 respaldo, *m.*, back of a chair.
 sentarse, to sit down.
 separar, to separate.
 silla, *f.*, chair.
 sirviente, *m.*, servant; sirvienta, *f.*, maid.
 sudor, *m.*, perspiration, sweat.
 telégrafo, *m.*, telegraph; por telégrafo, by wire.
 temperatura, *f.*, temperature.
 temprano, *adv.*, early.
 toldo, *m.*, tent.
 tomar, to take; tomar el fresco, to go for an airing.
 transitar, to pass by, to go about.

222.—CONJUGATION of Ir, to go.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

voy
 vas
 va
 vamos
 vais
 van.

Past.

fuí
 fuiste

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

vaya
 vayas
 vaya
 vayamos or vamos
 vayáis or vais
 vayan.

Past (1st form).

fuese
 fueses

INDICATIVE

fué
fuimos
fuisteis
fueron.

Future.

iré, etc. (*regular*).

Imperfect.

iba, etc. (*regular*).

Future in the past.

iría, etc. (*regular*).

SUBJUNCTIVE

fuese
fuésemos
fueseis
fuesen.

Past (2nd form).

fuera
fueras
fuera
fuéramos
fuerais
fueran.

Future.

fuere
fueres
fuere
fuéremos
fuereis
fueren.

IMPERATIVE.

ve (go thou)

id (go you).

Past participle.

ido.

Present participle.

yendo.

EXERCISE.

Sevilla.

En efecto, el calor por la noche cedía bastante; pero yo, acostumbrado a la temperatura primaveral de mi país durante el estío, lo sentía ya abrumador; se me erizaban los pelos (my hair stood on end), y eso que los tenía bien mojados por el sudor, ante la perspectiva de las noches que me anunciaban.

En la calle de las Sierpes, arteria principal de Sevilla y centro del comercio elegante, se había colocado un toldo que la cubría toda, y gracias a él podía transitarse cómo.

damente por ella. Los casinos y cervecerías, en que abunda, estaban abiertos todos, y los transeúntes comunicaban con los de adentro libremente. Por la noche, la gente que había estado recluida durante el día en sus casas, salía a tomar el fresco. Después de comer me gustaba permanecer una hora en la *Británica*, viendo desfilar la gente en compañía de Villa. Cuando nos cansábamos allí, los días en que no íbamos a casa de Anguita, o hasta que llegaba la hora de ir, solíamos dar algunas vueltas por la plaza Nueva, que, por serlo, es la única grande y regular que hay en la ciudad. En los jardines del centro, que adornan naranjos y palmeras, se colocaban filas de sillas y allí pasaban algunas horas de la noche muchedumbre de familias.

— En esta época, me decía el comandante, se ven aquí caras que no volverá Vd. a ver en todo el año . . .

Otras veces nos íbamos hacia la orilla del río, donde, las noches de luna, no encienden los faroles. A lo largo del paredón que separa el paseo del muelle, había muchos bultos de mujeres sentadas en el banco de piedra con respaldo de hierro que lo guarnece.—A. PALACIO VALDÉS.

CONVERSATION.

¿Qué es Sevilla? ¿Está al Norte o al Sur de España? ¿Es de Sevilla el escritor que describe la ciudad? ¿Viene del Norte o del Sur? ¿Cómo sabe usted que viene del Norte? ¿Cómo es la temperatura del verano en el país de donde viene el viajero? ¿A qué horas empieza a ceder el calor en Sevilla durante el verano? ¿Qué le parecía esta temperatura al viajero del Norte? ¿Qué le hacía erizar el cabello? ¿Cómo tenía el cabello? ¿Qué clase de noches le anunciaba? ¿Cómo se llama la arteria principal de Sevilla? ¿Cuál es, en Sevilla, el centro del comercio elegante? ¿Con qué cubren esta calle en el verano? ¿Podía transitarse por ella cómodamente? ¿Dónde se recluía la gente durante el día? ¿Qué hacía

por la noche? ¿Por qué podían comunicarse los transeúntes con la gente que estaba dentro de los casinos, cafés y cervecerías? ¿En qué cervecería gustaba permanecer el viajero? ¿Qué veía desde allí y en compañía de quién? ¿A dónde iban cuando se cansaban de estar en la *Británica*? ¿Cuál es la única plaza grande y regular que hay en Sevilla? ¿Cómo están adornados los jardines del centro de la plaza? ¿Dónde pasaban horas de la noche muchas familias? ¿Dónde crecen los naranjos y las palmeras? ¿Hay naranjos en Inglaterra? ¿Se ven en el verano en Sevilla las mismas caras que en el resto del año? ¿Quién hizo esta observación? ¿A dónde iba el viajero otras veces? ¿En qué noches no encienden allí los faroles? ¿Qué es un paredón? ¿Dónde se sentaban las gentes (the people) que iban al paseo del muelle? ¿De qué son los bancos?

TRANSLATE.

A eso de las diez de la noche llegaron los huéspedes al hotel. Eran seis: el padre, la madre, un joven como de 16 años, una niña de 9, y dos sirvientas. Habían pedido cuartos por telégrafo; de otra manera (otherwise) no habrían encontrado acomodo (lodgings). El hotel es pequeño y durante el verano es muy concurrido. La estación dura tres meses y en algunos años se prolonga hasta mediados (middle) del otoño.

Como los huéspedes no habían comido, fué necesario prepararles una cena (supper) abundante. Se sentaron a la mesa el padre, la madre y el joven. La niña se quedó en el cuarto atendida por las sirvientas.

Después de la cena, el Sr. D. Manuel Higuera (así se llamaba el nuevo huésped), D^a. Candelaria, su esposa, y el joven Ricardo pasaron al salón de conciertos (concert-room) donde había música y canto. El salón estaba casi lleno: parece que los huéspedes gustan mucho de la música, y algunos de ellos, como la Srita. Emilia

Villegas, de Valladolid, suelen tomar parte en los conciertos. La Srita. Villegas canta con firmeza y buena expresión y no sin sentimiento : la acompaña su hermano don Andrés que es un pianista de nombre en su ciudad natal.

A las doce de la noche, acabado el concierto, D. Manuel y su esposa se retiraron. Estaban fatigados del largo viaje y deseaban levantarse temprano, porque hay en la ciudad muchas cosas dignas de conocer (worth knowing).

TRANSLATE.

San Martín, 217.

Buenos Aires, June 27th, 1917.

Messrs. Lockwood, Sheen & Co.,
45, rua Coronel Moreira Cesar,
Rio de Janeiro.

DEAR SIRS :

Our¹ Mr. Charles Phillips, who is travelling in South America on behalf of the firm, will hand you this letter. We beg to introduce him to you, and should be much obliged to you, should you extend (*hacer extensivas*) to him the attention and courtesy that you have always shown (*manifestado*) to our representatives when in your city.

Mr. Phillips is more than a representative of ours ; he is a partner of our firm and we are much pleased to express our confidence in the good results that his visit to Brazil will have on the enlargement of our business in your city. As he will have to visit the interior of the Republic and you have no doubt connexions (*relaciones*) with some of the firms he is going to see, we should appreciate

¹ The pronoun 'our' in this case is often translated by 'nuestro' : 'nuestro D. Mauricio, nuestro D. Carlos.' More idiomatic would be : 'nuestro socio D. Mauricio, nuestro representante, nuestro agente, nuestro socio viajero D. Carlos.' 'Your city' (lower down) is translated in cases like this by *ésa* : 'a nuestros representantes en *ésa*.

(*apreciar*) as a great favour a letter of introduction from you to some of your acquaintances in the towns he intends to visit.

Thanking you in advance, we are

Yours faithfully,

JOSÉ BLANCO Y CÍA.

XX

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*)

223.—THE preposition **con**. **Con** is often used to indicate instrumentality, the means or the way to do a thing.

Lo hizo con sus propias manos. He did it with his own hands.

Trabajamos con ahinco en esa obra. We worked with eagerness at that task.

Le hirió con la espada. He wounded him with the sword.

Se hizo presente con malos modos. He made his presence felt in disagreeable ways.

224.—**Con** also denotes association, addition, or simultaneousness :

Saldré a dar un paseo con ella y con Dionisio. I shall go out for a walk with her and Denis.

Toma café con leche. He takes coffee with milk.

Llegó con la aurora. He arrived at dawn.

225.—Sometimes **con** loses its prepositional character and becomes a conjunction, especially when followed by an infinitive or **todo** :

Nunca nos cansamos de los libros que tratan de esto, con ser muchos (aunque son muchos). We never get tired of books dealing with this subject, numerous though they are.

Es muy rico; con todo, yo no lo envidio. He is very rich; yet I do not envy him.

226.—Preposition **contra**. **Contra** means 'against':

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Contra un mar de penas. | Against a sea of troubles. |
| Estaba apoyado contra el muro. | He was leaning against the wall. |
| Contra viento y marea. | Against wind and tide. (Against heavy odds.) |

a. **Contra** is much used in composition: **Contraataque**, counter-attack; **contraseña**, counter-sign; **contramarcha**, counter-march; **contrapeso**, counterpoise; **contraorden**, countermand.

227.—Preposition **desde**.

Desde means *from* when applied to space, and *since* when applied to time:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Desde Madrid hasta la costa. | From Madrid to the coast. |
| Desde que lo vi la última vez. | Since the last time I saw him. |

228.—Preposition **en**.

'**En**' denotes:

Time:

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Estuvo aquí en el verano. | He was here in the summer. |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|

Place:

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Lo veremos en Sevilla. | We shall see him at Seville. |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|

Manner:

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Lo dijo en serio. | He said so in earnest. |
|--------------------------|------------------------|

a. Constructed with the present participle, **en** means that the action of the verb immediately precedes another action:

| | |
|--|---|
| En llegando a casa le avisaré por teléfono. | Immediately after my arrival at home I shall let you know over the telephone. |
|--|---|

229. Preposition **hasta**. **Hasta** means *till, until, to, up to*, with reference both to time and space.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Hasta el cabo del mundo. | To the world's end. |
| Hasta mañana. | Till to-morrow. |
| No lo sabremos hasta el lunes. | We shall not hear of it until Monday. |

230.—Preposition **para**.

Para means *end, destination, motion*.

| | |
|--|--|
| Trabaja para comer. | He works for his food. |
| Se prepara para los exámenes. | He is preparing for the examinations. |
| El tren parte a las ocho para Sevilla. | The train leaves at eight for Seville. |
| Metal excelente para soldadura. | Excellent metal for solder. |
| No lo hace mal para su edad. | He does not do it badly for his age. |
| Gasté mucho tiempo para conocer sus intenciones. | It took me a long time to know (to find out) his intentions. |
| Bueno para comer. | Good to eat. |

a. Note the following idioms :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Para eso, era mejor no haber venido. | For all that, it would have been better not to come. |
| Para mi santiguada ! | My word ! |
| Para eso que él no lo sabía ! | Even so, he did not know it. |

b. Many compound words are formed with **para** : **pararrayos**, lightning conductor ; **parasol**, sunshade ; **paraguas**, umbrella ; **parapoco**, good for nothing, timid person.

231.—Preposition **por**.

This preposition takes in Spanish the place of *by* in passive constructions. **El mundo fué creado por Dios**, the world was created by God. **Fueron destinados al ejército por su padre**, they were intended for the army by their father.

a. It denotes also length of time, place, manner of doing things, cause or motive.

| | |
|---|--|
| Me ausento por un año. | I am going to be away for a year. |
| Pasa por Toledo el tren a las siete y cuarto. | The train passes Toledo at a quarter past seven. |
| Lo hace por fastidiarme. | He does it to annoy me. |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Calla por astucia, no por ignorancia. | He is silent out of cunning, not from ignorance. |
| Anda por su hacienda. | He is now at his farm. |

232.—Note the following idioms in which this preposition is used.

| | |
|---|---|
| Por lo que dice veo que yerra. | I see he is wrong, from what he says. |
| Todavía está por saberse quién fué el ladrón. | We have yet to learn who the thief was. |
| Por grande que sea su saber es más extensa su ignorancia. | No matter how great his learning, his ignorance is greater. |
| Por ahora prefiero quedarme aquí. | For the time being I prefer to remain here. |
| Por de contado él no vendrá. | As a matter of course he will not come. |
| Por lo pronto mandemos el telegrama. | In the meanwhile let us send the telegram. |
| Por lo que a mí hace. | As far as I am concerned (as regards myself). |
| Por si me conoce, demore la presentación. | Delay the introduction, lest he knows me. |
| Le avisé por si acaso no lo sabía. | I informed him, in case he did not know it. |

233.—In the formation of Spanish compound words this preposition takes its Latin form, *pro*: **proponer**, to propose; **pronombre**, pronoun; **promoción**, promotion.

234.—Preposition según.

It means *according to*:

| | |
|---|---|
| Decidió según su leal saber y entender. | He decided according to his true knowledge and opinion. |
|---|---|

a. It is the only preposition that can be used in Spanish by itself or at the end of a sentence, though colloquially only.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Todo eso es según. | All that is according to (depends on) circumstances. |
|--------------------|--|

¿Vendrás mañana? — Se- Will you come to-morrow?
gún. —It depends.

235.—Idioms :

Según se ve. On the face of it.
Según y conforme . . . Just as (that is as it may be).

236.—The prepositional object forms (*mí, ti*) should not be used with *según*. *Según mí, según ti*, are grammatically correct, but they are not used either in colloquial or literary style. They are replaced by expressions like: *según mi opinión, según tu parecer, según yo lo creo, según tú lo imaginas. Según yo, según tú*, which is sometimes heard, is ungrammatical and inadmissible.¹ Something similar takes place with *entre* (between, amidst). The prepositional forms of the pronouns may be used with *entre* in a reflexive sense: *Entre mí decía*, I said to myself; but not when it means reciprocity: *entre ti y mí* (between you and me), which is now and then found in ancient writers, is now out of use.²

237.—*Según que* means *as, in the measure in which*.

Según que nos elevamos As we rise above the surface
sobre la superficie de la of the earth the air becomes
tierra se adelgaza más y more and more rarified.
más el aire.

238.—Preposition *sobre* :

Sobre means *on, above, upon*, and sometimes *besides*.

Hay tres libros sobre la There are three books on
mesa. the table.
Pone su opinión sobre He ranks his opinion above
todas las demás. all others.

¹ *Según yo* taken by itself is an ungrammatical expression, but not when *yo* is the subject of a following verb: *según yo lo creo, su hermano está para llegar*, according to my belief your brother is coming. With the third person, and the plurals of the first and second, the subject form can be used: *según él no habrá elecciones este año*, according to him there will be no elections this year.

² With the integral forms of the 3rd person, and of the 1st and 2nd plural, the construction is admissible: *Entre ellos y su padre*, between them and their father; *entre nosotros y Don Diego*, between us and Don Diego. Instead of *entre ti y mí* we must say: *entre nosotros dos*, between us two.

| | |
|---|---|
| No tenía pruebas sobre las cuales pudiera formar opinión. | He had no evidence to go upon. |
| Zamora está sobre el Duero. ¹ | Zamora is on the Douro. |
| Da dinero sobre prendas. | He lends money on security. |
| Los ejércitos iban sobre Roma. | The armies were moving on Rome. |
| Sobre lo rústico tiene algo de taimado. | Besides being provincial, there is something sly about him. |
| Tomó sobre sí los deberes de su empleo. | He took upon himself the duties of his position. |

a. Many words are formed with **sobre** placed before nouns, adjectives, and verbs. * **Sobrescrito**, address on an envelope; **sobrehueso**, splint; **sobrehumano**, superhuman; **sobreseer**, to stay (in a legal action); **sobreponer**, to superpose. In a certain number of compounds it preserves its Latin form (*super*, *supra*): **supernumerario**, **superfino**, **suprasensible**.

239.—Preposition *tras*.

The etymological meaning of this preposition is *after* or *behind*, but it sometimes is used in the sense of *besides*. It is very often followed by *de*.

| | |
|---|--|
| Está tras de la puerta. | It is behind the door. |
| Tras de la cruz el diablo. | The devil behind the cross. |
| Echar la soga tras el caldero. | To let the rope go after the kettle (to let the accessory go after the essential is lost). |
| Tras de ser culpado es el que más levanta el grito. | He is guilty and yet he is the one who cries most. |

240.—In Spanish the preposition governs the verb in the infinitive form, not in the present participle :

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Cansado de esperar. | Tired of waiting. |
| Comenzó por decir . . . | He began by saying . . . |

¹ Yet we say : **Francfort del Main**, **del Óder**, not **Francfort sobre el Main**, **sobre el Óder**, **Frankfort-on-the-Main**, **on-the-Oder**.

| | |
|--|--|
| Adelantó en el cuarto, no sin haber echado el cerrojo. | He advanced into the room not without having locked the door. |
| Se le alaba por haber sido el primero en llegar a las trincheras. | He is praised for having been the first to reach the trenches. |

241.—The preposition should not as a rule be separated in Spanish from the object modified by it, and when two prepositions govern the same object the best usage requires the repetition of the object or the employment of the corresponding pronoun : **del público y para el público**, of the public and for the public ; **con razón o sin ella**, with or without reason.

a. The English practice of separating the preposition from its object when two prepositions govern the same noun is not permissible in Spanish, although good writers have tried to introduce it, e. g. : **Providencias exigidas por, y acomodadas al estado actual de la nación**, measures required by and falling in with the actual conditions of the country. The best way to put this in Spanish would be : **Providencias exigidas por el estado actual de la nación y acomodadas a él.**

242.—Two prepositions are frequently found combined in Spanish :

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| Lo hará por de contado. | He will do it of course. |
| Vestido para entre casa. | Dress for indoors. |
| Lo sacó de entre el montón. | He took it from the heap. |
| Tras de la iglesia. | Behind the church. |
| Desde por la mañana hasta por la noche. | From morning till night. |

243.—**Mediante, durante, excepto, incluso** (or **inclusive**), **embargante, exclusive**, and other words originally used as adjectives, have now a prepositional character :

| | |
|--|---|
| Espero hacerlo mediante su valiosa ayuda. | I hope to do it, provided you give me your valuable help. |
|--|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Mediante Dios (or Dios mediante) llegaremos mañana. | With God's help we shall arrive to-morrow. |
| Durante los días que estuvo aquí no dió señales de locura. | During the days he was here he gave no sign of being mad. |
| Todos excepto Juan pueden dar testimonio del hecho. | All except John can bear witness to the fact. |
| Todas las cartas incluso la de mi padre se leyeron en la audiencia. | All the letters including my father's were read in court (at the hearings). |
| No obstante la tenacidad del empeño fracasó su empresa. | Notwithstanding the tenacity of the effort, his undertaking failed. |

244. CONJUGATION OF *Venir, to come.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

vengo
vienes
viene
venimos
venís
vienen.

Past.

vine
viniste
vino
vinimos
vinisteis
vinieron.

Imperfect.

venía
venías, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

vendré
vendrás
vendrá

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

venga
vengas
venga
vengamos
vengáis
vengan

Past (1st form).

viniese
vinieses
viniese
viniésemos
vinieseis
viniesen.

Past (2nd form).

viniera
vinieras
viniera
viniéramos
vinierais
vinieran

Future.

viniere
vinieres
viniere

INDICATIVE.

vendremos
vendréis
vendrán.

Future in the past.

vendría
vendrías
vendría
vendríamos
vendrías
vendrían.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

viniéremos
viniereis
vinieren.

IMPERATIVE.

ven
venid.

Past participle.
venido.

Present participle.
viniendo.

VOCABULARY.

abierto de par en par, wide open.

acordarse, to remember, to recall.

ancho, *adj.*, wide, broad.

aparecer, to appear.

araña, *f.*, spider.

canto, *m.*, song.

caramba! *interj.*, gracious! goodness!

ciego, *adj.*, blind.

coger, to take, seize; coger de la mano, to take by the hand.

corral, *m.*, courtyard, poultry yard.

cucaracha, *f.*, cockroach.

detenerse, to stop.

discurrir, to walk about, to stroll.

embaldosar, to pave.

encontrar, to find; ¿cómo se encuentra usted? how are you?

espíritu, *m.*, spirit, mind.

fiesta, *f.*, feast, festival.

hecha: estará hecha un

corral, it must be like a courtyard.

hormiguero, *m.*, ant-heap; hormiguero de gente, swarm, crowd.

ir, to go; ¿cómo le va? how are you?

loseta, *f.*, small paving-tile.

parar, to stop, to stay; ¿está usted parando en su casa? are you staying at your own house?

poema, *m.*, song, poem.

preguntar, to ask, to put a question.

puesto que, *conj.*, since, as.

reconocer, to recognize, to acknowledge, to realize.

rumoroso, *adj.*, noisy.

sereno, *adj.*, serene.

sillón, *m.*, easy-chair.

tal, *adj., adv.*, such; ¿qué tal? how?

tampoco, *adv.*, neither, not . . . either.

umbral, *m.*, threshold.

zaguán, *m.*, vestibule.

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Hace tiempo que . . . | It is long since . . . |
| Tenga la bondad de decirme. | Please tell me. |
| Con mucho gusto. | With great pleasure. |
| Perdón, perdone usted. Dispense. | I am sorry, forgive me. Pardon me, excuse me. |
| De hoy en ocho días. | A week from to-day. |
| De mañana en ocho días. | A week to-morrow. |
| ¿Cómo habíamos de sospechar? | How could we conjecture? (expect?) |

EXERCISE.

Don Joaquín se detiene un momento en el umbral ; le acompaña un criado.

— ¿Cómo está usted, D. Joaquín? le dice D^a. Juana.

— ¿Qué tal le va a usted, D. Joaquín? le dice D. Antonio. — Sabíamos que había llegado usted esta mañana ; pero ¡ cómo habíamos de sospechar que viniese usted por aquí esta tarde !

— ¿Y ustedes? ¿Y ustedes? ¿Cómo se encuentran? ¡Caramba! La verdad es que hace tiempo que no nos veíamos. Y ahora, tampoco nos vemos . . . Digo, yo soy el que no puedo ver a ustedes.

Doña Juana ha acercado un sillón.

— Siéntese usted aquí, D. Joaquín.

Don Antonio coge de la mano a Don Joaquín y lo lleva hasta el sillón. D. Joaquín se sienta con cuidado, lentamente. La puerta está abierta de par en par ; aparece el ancho zaguán limpio, embaldosado con losetas blancas y negras ; por la calle discurre un hormiguero rumoroso de gente.

— ¿Está usted parando en su casa, D. Joaquín? pregunta D^a. Juana.

— Estoy en casa de mi hermana, dice Don Joaquín. Mi casa estará hecha un corral ; todos los muebles estarán llenos de cucarachas, de arañas y de polvo. Hace veinte años que no se abre . . . desde que yo me fuí. Virginia me

escribe en las cartas que la limpia dos o tres veces al año ; pero yo no lo creo . . . Además, no quiero entrar en ella ; yo no puedo ver nada y me daría tristeza el tocar, para reconocerlos, aquellos muebles que vieron mi juventud . . .

— De modo, dice D. Antonio, que usted se ha acordado éste año del pueblo y ha querido venir a ver la fiesta.

— Sí, contesta D. Joaquín, sí, he querido venir este año. Me he dicho : ‘ Puesto que ya quizás no pueda tener otra ocasión, aprovecharemos ésta, que tal vez será la última ’. Y he venido a ver, es decir, a sentir el pueblo, a saludar a los buenos amigos, como ustedes. AZORÍN.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Quién se ha detenido un momento ? ¿ Dónde se ha detenido ? ¿ Quién acompaña a D. Joaquín ? ¿ Quién habló primero a D. Joaquín ? ¿ Quién lo saludó (greeted) en seguida ? ¿ Qué sabían en casa de D. Antonio con respecto a D. Joaquín ? ¿ Sospechaban que llegaría esa tarde ? ¿ Cómo saludó D. Joaquín ? ¿ Por qué dice D. Joaquín : ‘ Hace tiempo que no nos veíamos y ahora tampoco nos vemos, digo, soy yo el que no puede ver a ustedes ’ ? ¿ Quién le acerca un sillón ? ¿ Qué le dice al acercar el sillón ? ¿ Quién lo toma de la mano ? ¿ Adónde lo lleva ? ¿ Cómo se sienta D. Joaquín ? ¿ Qué se ve desde la puerta ? ¿ Cómo está la puerta ? ¿ Puede usted describir el zaguán ? ¿ Qué hay en la calle ? ¿ Está parando en su casa D. Joaquín ? ¿ Quién quiso saber esto ? ¿ Dónde está viviendo D. Joaquín ? ¿ Qué cree él de su propia casa ? ¿ De qué sospecha que estarán llenos los muebles ? ¿ Cuánto tiempo hace que la casa no se abre ? ¿ Quién se ocupa en limpiar la casa ? ¿ Cuántas veces al año la limpia ? ¿ Lo cree así D. Joaquín ? ¿ Por qué no quiere D. Joaquín entrar en la casa ? ¿ De qué le daría tristeza ? ¿ A qué viene D. Joaquín al pueblo ? ¿ Piensa volver otras veces ? ¿ Ha venido a ver o a sentir el pueblo ? ¿ Por qué dice ‘ a sentir ’ ?

TRANSLATE.

The history of Spanish literature chronicles what great Spaniards and Spanish Americans have felt and thought and written in good prose and beautiful poetry in their native tongue. The story is a long one, and its beginnings are rather uncertain. It opens in Spain with the Play of the Magian Kings (*Auto de los Reyes Magos*), probably composed in the twelfth century, and it is still unfinished in all lands where Spanish is the current language. Into this narrative must be condensed the record, extending over nearly eight hundred years, of the imaginative life of a great people. Spanish literature has had epochs of singular splendour and periods of weakness and decay. It flourished with unsurpassed vigour and exuberance from the second half of the sixteenth century to the middle of the seventeenth. It can scarcely be maintained that the present time should be reckoned amongst the most intense and auspicious moments of its activity. Every Spaniard or Spanish American has good reason to be proud of the work done by his forefathers in prose and verse. Every one who can write a good book or a good song may say to himself: 'I belong to a noble company which has been teaching and delighting the world for more than seven centuries.' And that is a fact in which those who write and those who read Spanish literature ought to take no ignoble pride. This literature is written in Spanish, a tongue evolved by the old inhabitants of the central Spanish provinces out of the perishing Latin which the Roman conquerors imposed upon them. It was first called *romance*. Subsequently it took the name of Castilian from the Spanish province of Castile whose kings kept the other provinces together during long wars fought for the national independence. When this tongue spread over all the Spanish dominions it began to be called Spanish.

TRANSLATE.

Vendré con mi familia esta noche a saludar al Presidente de la República, a quien conozco desde mucho antes de que lo eligieran. Me presentaré ante él como un viejo amigo que luchó (fought) contra sus enemigos con el mismo empeño (determination) que él. Mis hijas y mi mujer lo conocen también y lo estiman como yo. Él ha sido siempre atento y fiel para con sus amigos. Los que no esperamos de él favores personales sino solamente lealtad (loyalty) a sus principios podemos insistir (insist) en que nos reciba. Estoy seguro de que me recibirá y estará muy contento de verme. No tengo dudas sobre la sinceridad de sus sentimientos. Según me dicen sus amigos no ha cambiado de ideas ni de sentimientos. Volverá a la vida privada (private) sin perder uno solo de sus numerosos amigos, y podrá mirar hacia atrás con espíritu sereno (serene mind).

XXI

CONJUNCTIONS

245.—THE original and most current conjunctions in Spanish are the following :

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|
| y, and | ni, nor | que, that |
| o, or | mas, but | pues, since, then |
| pero, but | sino, but, except | si, if. |

246.—Before words beginning with **i** or **hi**, **y** changes to **e**: **padre e hijo**, father and son ; **Lucía e Isabel** ; but the change does not occur when the initial **i** or **hi** is followed by another vowel : **cobre y hierro**, copper and iron ; **se lanza y hiende los aires**, he starts up and cleaves the air ; **recetó belladona y hiosciamina**, he prescribed belladonna and hyoscyamine. The Spanish Academy lays

it down that in questions beginning with **y** followed by a word the initial of which is **i** or **hi** the change should not take place, so that in compliance with this rule we should say ¿**Y** Inés? (And Agnes?) ¿**Y** Ignacio? (And Ignatius?).

247.—**O** before a word beginning with **o** or **ho** becomes **u**: azul claro **u** obscuro, light or dark blue; dispone **u** ordena que se pague el impuesto, he arranges for or orders the tax to be paid.

a. Either . . . or . . . is rendered in Spanish by **o . . . o . . .**: **O** yo no he visto gente virtuosa en mi vida **o** la de aquel lugar lo es, either I have not seen virtuous people in my life or the inhabitants of that village are virtuous.

248.—**Ni** means *nor* and is used in combination with **no**: no lo ví **ni** lo oí, I did not see or hear him.

Ni . . . ni . . . is the equivalent of *neither . . . nor . . .*

| | |
|--|---|
| Ni vuestros pies lo podrán sufrir ni nosotros consentir. | Neither can your feet bear it, nor can we allow it. |
|--|---|

a. Ni can be used in combination with other words of a negative meaning:

| | |
|--|---|
| Pasó tres días sin comer ni beber. | He neither ate nor drank for three days. |
| Nunca lo confesó, ni en el cadalso. | He never admitted it, not even on the scaffold. |
| Trabaja sin orden ni método. | He works without order or method. |
| ¿Quién lo creyera ni pudiera creerlo? | Who would or could believe it? |

b. Ni may be used by itself in the sense of **y no**: Me recibió al fin, **ni** habría podido evitarlo; he received me at last, nor could he help it.

249.—**Pero**, **sino**, and **mas** mean *but*. **Sino** is used when the first clause is negative and the sense of the second excludes that of the former:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Lo sabía, pero lo he olvidado. | I knew it, but I have forgotten it. |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

| | |
|---|--|
| No sólo no se cánsaban de oírle, sino que les daba mucho gusto. | Not only were they not weary of listening to him, but were greatly interested. |
| No es pobre sino rico. | He is not poor but rich. |

a. Compare the following sentences :

| | |
|---|--|
| No tiene sino dos hijos. | He has only two sons. |
| Iba a caer . . . mas Cardenío, cogiéndola entre sus brazos, le dijo . . . | She was on the point of falling . . . but Cardenío, clasping her in his arms, said . . . |

250.—**Sino**, meaning *but, only, or not more than*, is a single word ; when it means *if not* it is written as two words :

| | |
|--|--|
| No ha estado en Londres sino dos semanãs. | He has been in London only two weeks. |
| Si no ha estado en Londres sino dos semanãs, conocerá poco de la ciudad. | If he has been in London but two weeks, he must know little of the city. |

251.—*Whether . . . or . . .* is translated into Spanish by *si . . . o . . .*

| | |
|---|--|
| Deseo saber si es turco o cristiano o lo uno y lo otro. | I want to know whether he is a Turk or a Christian, or both. |
|---|--|

252.—**Que** as a conjunction is translated into English by 'that'.

| | |
|--|--|
| Lotario no era tan ignorante que . . . no hubiese dado en la cuenta. | Lothario was not so dull but that . . . he understood. |
| Sábetete que la fortaleza está ya rendida. | Know that the fortress has surrendered. |

253.—The conjunction **que** followed by a verb in the subjunctive is often translated into English by the infinitive :

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Le dije que viniera. | I told him to come. |
| No creo que sea honrado. | I do not believe him to be honest. |
| Es preciso que procures verlo. | It behoves you to try and see him. |

a. In constructions of this kind where the verb of the main clause requires the use of the indicative in the subordinate clause, the conjunction is often dropped in English, but very rarely in Spanish :

| | |
|---|--|
| Creo que vendrá mañana. | I think he will come to-morrow. |
| Sabemos que ha llegado la hora. | We know the hour has arrived. |
| Camila le respondió que le había parecido que Lotario la miraba. | Camila replied that it had seemed to her that Lotario looked at her. |

b. After verbs meaning *wish, demand, request*, **que** is sometimes omitted, but the practice is not general, and must be adopted cautiously :

| | |
|---|---|
| Otro día rogó Anselmo a Lotario (que) dijese alguna cosa. | Some other day Anselmo asked Lothario to say something. |
| Suplico a usted (que) se digne dar curso a esta solicitud. | I beg you to be pleased to expedite this application. |
| Espero (que) me respondas sin tardanza. | I hope you will answer me without delay. |

254.—Many conjunctions are formed with **que** combined with adverbs, prepositions, and other conjunctions: **Aunque** (although), **porque** (because), **conque** (so . . .), **pues que** (since), **ya que** (since), **puesto que** (since), **supuesto que** (granting that), **así que** (so that).

| | |
|--|--|
| Aunque es mayor el trabajo del soldado, es mucho menor el premio. (CERVANTES.) | So that, though the soldier has more to endure, his reward is much less. (ORMSBY'S transl.) |
| No salga, porque está lloviendo. | Do not go out, because it is raining. |
| Conque te vas. | So, you are going. |
| Pues que no tiene remedio el mal, aceptémoslo valerosamente. | Since there is no remedy for the evil, let us face it courageously. |
| Ya que usted lo confiesa, pasemos a otra cosa. | Since you admit it, let us pass to some other subject. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Puesto que temes ser mal recibido ¿ a qué ir ? | Since you fear that you will not be well received, why go ? |
| Supuesto que la joya es de tanto mérito, ¿ por qué quieres deshacerte de ella ? | Granting that the jewel is of such merit, why do you want to get rid of it ? |

255.—Before the middle of the eighteenth century **puesto que** and **supuesto que** were used in the sense of ‘*aunque*’ (although), a practice now completely abandoned.

256.—A clause containing **como**, as a conjunction, is rendered in English by the present participle, a construction also adopted in Spanish :

| | |
|---|--|
| Como no supiera (or no sabiendo) el camino, resolvió esperar la llegada de otros caminantes. | Not knowing the way, he decided to wait for the arrival of other travellers. |
|---|--|

257.—Sometimes **como** is used instead of **que** to avoid the repetition of this ubiquitous word :

| | |
|--|---|
| Me dijo como no podía pagarme en el acto. | He told me that he could not pay me directly. |
| Ordenó el señor de la casa como se llamase un médico. | The master of the house ordered that a doctor should be called. |

258.—The expressions **no obstante**, **no embargante**, **sin embargo**, meaning notwithstanding, nevertheless, however, are to be considered as conjunctions :

| | |
|---|---|
| No obstante sus ruegos, la desecharon. | Notwithstanding her entreaties she was refused. |
| Lo sabía y sin embargo se calló. | He knew it, and yet he remained silent. |

a. These expressions are classified by some grammarians (Bello — Cuervo) with the prepositions.

259.—CONJUGATION of **Poner**, *to put, to lay* (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

pongo
pones
pone
ponemos
ponéis
ponen.

Past.

puse
pusiste
puso
pusimos
pusisteis
pusieron.

Imperfect.

ponía, etc. (*regular*)

Future.

pondré
pondrás
pondrá
pondremos
pondréis
pondrán.

Future in the past.

pondría
pondrías
pondría
pondríamos
pondrías
pondrían.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ponga
pongas
ponga
pongamos
pongáis
pongan.

Past (1st form).

pusiese
pusieses
pusiese
pusiésemos
pusieseis
pusiesen.

Past (2nd form).

pusiera
pusieras
pusiera
pusiéramos
pusierais
pusieran.

Future.

pusiere
pusieres
pusiere
pusiéremos
pusiereis
pusieren.

IMPERATIVE.

pon
poned.

Past participle.

puesto.

Present participle.

poniendo.

VOCABULARY.

- a causa de, because of, owing to.
 a propósito, convenient; by the way.
 aceptado, *adj.*, accepted.
 boga, *f.* fashion; en boga, in vogue.
 catalán, *m.*, *adj.*, Catalan, Catalanian.
 cerrar, to close; cerrar la entrada, to bar the entrance.
 colonizar, to colonize.
 comprender, to comprise, to include, to understand.
 contacto, *m.*, contact.
 contraer, to contract; contrayendo, contracting, reducing, shrinking.
 desarrollo, *m.*, development.
 designar, to name, to designate.
 dialecto, *m.*, dialect.
 esencial, *adj.*, essential.
 especialmente, *adv.*, specially.
 filología comparada, comparative philology.
 galo-romano, *adj.*, Gallo-Roman.
 gallego-portugués, *adj.*, Galician-Portuguese.
 geográfico, *adj.*, geographic.
 influjo, *m.*, influence, influx.
 íntimo, *adj.*, intimate, close.
 lingüístico, *adj.*, linguistic.
 lleno, *adj.*, full; de lleno, fully, entirely.
 manifiesto, *adj.*, manifest, obvious.
 marcado, *adj.*, marked.
 modificar, to modify.
 origen, *m.*, origin, source.
 oro, *m.*, gold.
 partir, to divide.
 peninsular, *adj.*, peninsular.
 punto de vista, point of view.
 rama, *f.*, branch.
 remontar, to remount; remontar el curso, to go up the stream, to trace back the course.
 romance, *adj.*, Romance, Romanic.
 sentido, *m.*, sense, meaning.
 significado, *m.*, meaning.
 tendencia, *f.*, tendency.
 tronco, *m.*, trunk, stock.
 variedad, *f.*, variety.
 vulgar, *adj.*, vulgar.

Compare the following expressions :

A ver qué sabe usted.

Let us see what you know.

Vamos a ver a Juan.

We are going to see John.

¿Quién viene? — Vamos a ver.

Who is coming?—Let us see.

EXERCISE.

Orígenes de la lengua castellana.

Castellano es el nombre más a propósito para designar el cuerpo lingüístico en que están comprendidas la parte central de España y las vastas regiones americanas y asiáticas colonizadas desde el siglo xvi por los españoles. Podría llamársele también tronco español, contrayendo el significado esencialmente geográfico de esta palabra y usándolo en un sentido meramente político. Pero la primera designación es preferible, especialmente a causa de haber estado en boga durante siglos, y porque aun los habitantes de las comarcas que quedan fuera de las dos Castillas lo aceptan de lleno y son los primeros en llamar su idioma lengua castellana.

Es generalmente aceptado que el castellano es una de las ramas del latín vulgar de España, la segunda de las cuales es el gallego-portugués: las dos están ahora separadas por diferencias marcadísimas; pero no es difícil remontar su curso hasta el origen que es el romance español. Una misma lengua original, modificada diversamente en el curso de los siglos, se partió en dos variedades, el castellano y el portugués, al paso que el catalán, la tercera lengua peninsular, está en más íntimo y más visible contacto con el galo-romano que con el romance español.

En la formación y desarrollo de estos tres grupos distintos los sucesos políticos tuvieron no mediano influjo.

Los dialectos que se hablan en otras comarcas de España no tienen importancia sino del punto de vista de la filología comparada. En América es manifiesta la tendencia a conservar la uniformidad del idioma sin cerrarles la entrada a las voces nuevas, a los modos más ricos y precisos de expresión.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cuál es el nombre más a propósito para designar la lengua principal que se habla en el centro de España?

¿ En qué otras partes se habla esa misma lengua ? ¿ Con qué otra designación se la conoce ? ¿Cuál es preferible y por qué ? ¿ Qué otras naciones a más de la española aceptan este nombre ? ¿ De dónde tomó su origen el idioma castellano ? ¿ Qué otra lengua de la península tuvo el mismo origen ? ¿ Hay separación entre ellas ? ¿ Es fácil remontar su curso ? ¿Cuál fué la lengua que se dividió en las dos variedades castellana y portuguesa ? ¿ Con qué lengua tiene contacto el catalán ?

¿ Qué otro elemento tuvo influjo en el desarrollo de estos tres grupos de idiomas ?

¿ Tienen importancia los dialectos que se hablan en otras comarcas de España ? ¿ Cómo se llama la ciencia que trata de las relaciones de unas lenguas con otras, según su origen ? ¿ Se conserva puro el castellano en América ? ¿ Qué tendencia se nota allí ? ¿ Les cierran los hispano-americanos la entrada a las voces nuevas ?

TRANSLATE.

Esta es una edad de oro y hierro : estos dos metales deciden, con la ciencia, de la suerte de los hombres y de los pueblos. El oro y el hierro, o, mejor dicho, el acero (steel) han ligado a las diversas naciones de la tierra unas con otras. De acero son los rieles (rails), los buques, las locomotoras que llevan de un país a otro los diversos productos de la agricultura y de la industria. El oro es la base de la moneda (money) con que se pagan (are paid) estos productos ; pero no es siempre la moneda misma. No sería posible hacer con moneda de oro todas las transacciones que se efectúan en el mundo en un solo día. Por eso existen la moneda de papel o papel-moneda (paper-money), el cheque, la letra de cambio (bill of exchange) que tienen valor según el crédito de las naciones o de los individuos.

El oro y los rieles, que unen comercialmente a unas naciones con otras, sirven también para estrechar (tighten)

las relaciones políticas y para difundir (spread) las ideas. Aunque parezca que la sociedad de transportes y el agente comercial sólo atienden a su propio provecho, una y otro contribuyen eficazmente a suavizar (make mild, soften) las costumbres y a mejorar (improve) el estado (condition) moral de los pueblos.

TRANSLATE.

A curious point to decide in the study of a language is the number of words used by the average man (*hombre promedial*) and by the great writers. The most contradictory statements on this point are to be found in very trustworthy authors (*autores dignos de crédito*). One says that a farm-labourer (*labriego*) uses only three hundred words, a figure (*cifra*) that seems to be rather low (*más bien baja, tal vez baja*), because the utensils of his house and the tools and implements of his daily labour with their numerous parts and pieces evidently amount to more than three hundred words.

We are told that one two-year-old girl used 489 and another 1121 words, while a lady who has recorded (*ha hecho apuntaciones sobre*) the vocabulary (*léxico*) of her son says that in his seventeenth month he used 232 words, and when six years old 2688 words at least, for it is probable that the mother and her assistants, who noted down (*apuntaban*) every word they heard the child use, even so did not get hold of (*no cogieron, no se apoderaron de*) its whole vocabulary. A Swedish (*sueco*) professor who has investigated the vocabulary of Swedish peasants, and who emphasizes (*insiste en*) its richness in technical terms, arrives at the result that 26,000 is probably too small a figure, and a Danish authority endorses (*endosa, se adhiere a*) this view.

Shakespeare's vocabulary is often stated to be the richest ever employed by any single man (*por un hombre solo*). It has been calculated to comprise 21,000 words,

or according to other writers 24,000 or 15,000. Milton's vocabulary is said to comprise 7000 or 8000 words, figures that are also given to represent the number of words used by Cervantes, the Spanish writer who was most copious not only in words but also in variety of phrases and idioms.

XXII

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN, VERB, AND ADJECTIVE

260.—THE adjective must agree with the noun in gender and number. We have seen that some adjectives are invariable in Spanish as far as gender is concerned : to these the present rule does not apply with reference to gender. There are also a few indeterminate and relative adjectives which are invariable both as to gender and number : we have mentioned **que** and **cada** in the preceding lessons.

a. Agreeing in gender and number :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>No aprovechó el tiempo bueno para ese negocio.</p> | <p>He did not take advantage of the right moment for that business.</p> |
| <p>Dejó pasar la buena época para esa empresa.</p> | <p>He let the favourable time for that enterprise pass.</p> |
| <p>Pasaron los buenos días de estos comerciantes.</p> | <p>The good days (times) of these merchants are over.</p> |
| <p>Recuerda con tristeza las plácidas horas de nuestras excursiones al campo.</p> | <p>He recalls with sadness the placid hours of our country excursions.</p> |

b. Invariable adjectives as to gender :

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>El verde prado, la verde hierba, lo verde de la llanura.</p> | <p>The green turf, the green grass, the greenness of the plain.</p> |
| <p>Las verdes campiñas de Andalucía, los verdes valles.</p> | <p>The green fields of Andalusia, the green valleys.</p> |

c. Invariable adjectives as to gender and number :

| | |
|--|---|
| La casa que visitamos ayer. | The house we visited yesterday. |
| El terreno que compraste. | The land you bought. |
| Los hombres que llegaron de Francia. | The men who arrived from France. |
| Cada libro tiene su mérito. | Every book has its merit. |
| Para cada diez hombres un cabo. | For each ten men a corporal. |
| Más sal que frutas. | More salt than fruit. |
| Más hombres que ratas. | More men than rats. |
| Juan y demás gente. | John and the rest of the people. |
| Para usted y para los demás. | For you and the rest of you. |
| Álamos, nogales y demás árboles que en las huertas se crían. | Poplars, walnut-trees and the other trees which grow in the cultivated lands. |

d. An adjective that qualifies two or more nouns in the singular number and of different or of the same gender must be put in the masculine plural if it comes after them :

| | |
|--|--|
| El padre y la madre afligidos por la miseria buscaron refugio en casa de un pariente rico. | Afflicted by misery, father and mother looked for shelter at a wealthy relative's house. |
|--|--|

e. When the adjective precedes the nouns it may agree with the first :

| | |
|--|--|
| Su extremada hermosura y talento le granjearon muchos admiradores. | Her extraordinary beauty and cleverness won her many admirers. |
| El gran tino y diligencia del ministro salvaron la República. ¹ | The great tact and diligence of the Minister saved the Republic. |

¹ In such a case as this some writers use the plural form of the adjective, but the practice seems against the genius of the language :

| | |
|---|---|
| Procura sus mayores comodidad y agrado. | He looks for his better comfort and pleasure. |
|---|---|

f. In order to show that the adjective makes reference to only one of the nouns the article or the possessive or demonstrative adjective must be repeated before the second :

| | |
|--|---|
| El gran tino y la diligencia . . . | The great tact and the diligence . . . |
| Su extremada hermosura y su talento . . . | Her extraordinary beauty and her cleverness . . . |

g. Adjectives like **mismo, dicho, referido, mencionado** when preceding several nouns in the singular number must be put in the plural :

| | |
|--|--|
| Los mismos Antonio Pérez y Luis Rozo comparecieron en esta fecha. | The same Antonio Pérez and Luis Rozo appeared on this date. |
| Según el testimonio de los mencionados albañil y carpintero . . . | According to the testimony of the above-mentioned bricklayer and carpenter . . . |

h. Note the difference of meaning in the following constructions :

| | |
|--|--|
| El ejército de Francia y Rusia (one army consisting of troops of the two countries). | The army of France and Russia. |
| El ejército de Francia y el de Rusia (two armies, a French and a Russian one). | The army of France and the army of Russia. |
| Los ejércitos de Francia y Rusia (one French and one Russian army or several armies of both countries). | The armies of France and Russia. |

i. Titles like **Majestad** (Majesty), **Alteza** (Highness), **Señoría** (Lordship), which, strictly speaking, are of the feminine gender, agree with the masculine when they refer to men :

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| Su Alteza está enfermo. | His Highness is ill. |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|

261.—A verb should agree in number and person with its subject :

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Tú eres sereno en el peligro, pero deberías ser más cauto.</p> <p>Nosotros estábamos tranquilos; ellas se manifestaban muy inquietas.</p> | <p>You are calm before danger, but you ought to be more cautious.</p> <p>We were quiet; they displayed much uneasiness.</p> |
|--|---|

262.—In some cases collective nouns form an exception to this rule.

a. Singular collective nouns like **gente**, **multitud** (crowd), **pueblo** (people), meaning an indeterminate aggregate of persons or things, may be followed by the verb and also the adjective in the plural :

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Amotinóse el pueblo, pero a la primera descarga huyeron despavoridos.</p> | <p>The people assembled mutinously, but at the first volley they fled in terror.</p> |
|---|--|

b. Two conditions are needed to justify this exception : the collective noun must be of an indeterminate kind, and it must not be contained in the clause in which the plural verb is to be used. Thus in the preceding example **amotinóse** is singular because **pueblo** belongs to the first clause. We can say **huyeron** in the second clause because the subject is tacit.

c. With collective nouns like **regimiento**, **piara** (herd of swine), **academia**, **rebaño** (herd), **conclave**, **congreso**, **recua** (drove of pack mules), the plural form of the verb is not sanctioned by good usage, because these bodies cannot be considered as of an indeterminate kind.

263.—Two or more nominatives in the singular number require the verb in the plural number :

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Inglaterra y Francia estaban por la paz.</p> <p>El hambre, la sed, la inclemencia del tiempo y la duración de las hostilidades habían quebrantado la resistencia del enemigo.</p> | <p>England and France were in favour of peace.</p> <p>Hunger, thirst, the severity of the weather and the continuance of hostilities, had broken the resistance of the enemy.</p> |
|--|---|

a. Yet when the nouns do not refer to living beings the verb may agree with the nearest subject : **Un suspiro, una palabra lo haría** (or *harían*).

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>La hora, el tiempo, la soledad, la voz y la destreza del que cantaba causó admiración.</p> | <p>The hour, the season, the solitude, the voice and the skill of the singer all conspired to impress the auditors with wonder.</p> |
|--|---|

b. In connexion with the foregoing rule, when a verb refers to two or more pronouns of different persons the second person takes precedence of the third, and the first supersedes all other persons.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Tú y tu amigo no iréis al campo este verano.</p> | <p>You and your friend will not go to the country this summer.</p> |
|--|--|

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Vosotros, ellas y yo estuvimos expuestos a un gran peligro.</p> | <p>You, they, and I were exposed to a great danger.</p> |
|---|---|

c. When the members of a double subject are connected with each other by the conjunction *o* the agreement with the verb follows (contrary to the English usage) the same rules :

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>El padre o la hija salieron.</p> | <p>The father or the daughter went out.</p> |
|--|---|

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <p>El o yo estamos en un error.</p> | <p>He is or I am in the wrong.</p> |
|--|------------------------------------|

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Tú, ellas o yo debemos estar presentes a la ceremonia.</p> | <p>You, they or I must be present at the ceremony.</p> |
|--|--|

d. *Usted, ustedes*, which are pronouns of the second person, require the verb in the third person. This anomaly is easily explained by the origin of the word *usted*, which is a contraction of *Vuestra merced* (Your Mercy, Your Lordship), *Vuesa Merced*, expressions involving the use of the third person : *la Merced del Sr. ; la Señoría de Vosotros.*¹

264.—The conjunction *ni* follows special rules. When it comes before every one of the different subjects the verb agrees with the one nearest to it or takes the plural :

¹ Compare *Lei* and *Ella* in Italian, *Sie* in German.

Ni la oposición ni la amenaza le disuadieron de su empeño.

Neither opposition nor threat dissuaded him from his purpose.

a. When **ni** is put after the first subject the verb may agree with it or be put in the plural. In this case **no**, and not **ni**, is used with the first subject:

No lo disuadió de su empeño la oposición ni la amenaza.

Opposition did not dissuade him from his purpose, nor threat either.

265.—Two nominatives connected by the comparatives **como, así . . . como, tanto . . . como**, or by the preposition **con**, require the plural of the verb to which they refer :

Así el rico como el pobre deben contribuir a pagar los gastos de la Nación.

Both the rich and the poor must contribute to pay the expenses of the Nation.

Tanto la madre como la hija fueron arrojadas a las llamas.

Both mother and daughter were thrown into the flames.

La Muerte con todo su escuadrón volante volvieron a su carreta y prosiguieron su viaje. (CERVANTES.)

And Death with his flying squadron having returned to their cart, each pursued their way. (MOTTEUX'S transl.)

a. But when the verb comes after the first nominative and before the others the singular form is required:

La Muerte volvió a su carreta con todo su escuadrón volante y continuó su viaje.

And Death, etc.

266.—Compare the following expressions :

Tú con todos tus hijos vendréis a comer con nosotros.

Vendrás con todos tus hijos a comer con nosotros.

Con todos tus hijos vendrás a comer con nosotros.

You with all your children will come to dine with us.

267.—When **todo** used as a noun for purposes of recapitulation is the last member of a multiple subject, the verb must be put in the singular :

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>La franqueza, el valor, la apariencia personal, todo en él era atractivo.</p> | <p>His frankness, his courage, his personal appearance, everything in him was attractive.</p> |
|---|---|

268.—When the verb occurs between two nominatives the number is determined by that to which the verb directly refers :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>La causa de Dios nos lleva y la de nuestro rey a conquistar regiones no conocidas.</p> <p>Yo no lo sé, ni mis vecinos tampoco.</p> | <p>The cause of our God leads us, as does the cause of our king, to conquer un- known regions.</p> <p>I do not know it, nor do my neighbours either.</p> |
|---|--|

a. Exceptionally and as a consequence of this rule the verb may be put in the singular when placed at the end of various nominatives, if the last of these is in the singular :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>La evidencia de la razón y la justicia de la causa sirvió (or sirvieron) de estímulo.</p> | <p>The certainty afforded by reason and the justice of the cause served as an en- couragement.</p> |
|---|--|

269.—Two or more neuters take a singular verb :

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Lo verde de las campiñas y lo blanco de las caba- ñas asoma ya en la le- janía.</p> <p>Pues sabe que lo malo y que lo bueno está sujeto a súbita mudanza. (SA- MANIEGO, <i>Fábulas</i>, Oxford, 1917, p. 68.)</p> <p>Esto y lo que se temía de la tropa precipitó la re- solución del gobierno.</p> | <p>The verdure of the fields and the whiteness of the huts appear now in the distance.</p> <p>Because he knows that evil and good are both subject to sudden changes.</p> <p>This and what was feared from the troops hastened the action of the govern- ment.</p> |
|---|--|

a. Two or more than two infinitives also require, as neuters, the verb in the singular :

Madrugar, hacer ejercicio y comer moderadamente es provechosísimo para la salud. To get up early, to take a walk and to eat moderately is most beneficial to our health.

b. Two or more noun clauses governed by **que**, if they are the subjects of a single verb, also require the singular, because in this case each clause is the equivalent of a neuter subject :

Que usted fuera el dueño de la casa y que quisiera venderla me sorprendió. That you were the owner of the house and that you wanted to sell it surprised me.

c. When the two neuters (whether adjectives, infinitives or clauses) imply reciprocity the plural is required :

Aprender y divertirse no son incompatibles. To learn and to amuse oneself are not incompatible.
Lo bello y lo útil no se contradicen. There is no opposition between beauty and usefulness.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|---|
| acertar , to succeed, to hit the mark. | fabulista , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , fabulist. |
| apenas , <i>adv.</i> , scarcely. | flauta , <i>f.</i> , flute. |
| asnal , <i>adj.</i> , belonging to the donkey, asinine. | flautista , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , flute-player. |
| asno , <i>m.</i> , donkey, ass. | ocurrir , to happen, to occur, to come to one's mind. |
| balde , <i>m.</i> , bucket. | oler , to smell; huele , it smells. |
| borrico , <i>m.</i> , donkey, ass. | prado , <i>m.</i> , field. |
| burro , <i>m.</i> , ass. | regla , <i>f.</i> , rule. |
| casualidad , <i>f.</i> , chance; por casualidad , by chance, occasionally. | resoplido , <i>m.</i> , snort. |
| colar , to go into, to penetrate, to run into. | tocar , to play (to play an instrument). |
| fábula , <i>f.</i> , fable. | zagal , <i>m.</i> , shepherd (pastor is of more frequent use). |

270.—*Idiomatic expressions.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Por bueno que sea. | However good it may be. |
| Por más que digan. | Whatever they may say. |
| Río arriba, río abajo. | Up stream, down stream. |
| Mañana por la mañana. | To-morrow morning. |
| Por poco se cae. | He was on the point of falling, he almost fell. |
| Iba camino de Burgos. | He was on the way to Burgos. |
| Para mí tengo que son las diez. | As for me, I think it is ten o'clock. |
| Ahora caigo en la cuenta. | Now I see. |
| Eso se cae de su peso, eso se viene rodado. | It is evident, it follows, it is obvious. |
| De veras. | In truth, truly. |
| En balde. | In vain. |
| De balde. | Gratis, free of cost. |

271. CONJUGATION OF *Caer*, to fall (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

caigo
caes, etc. (*regular*)

Present.

caiga
caigas
caiga
caigamos
caigáis
caigan.

Past.

caí (*regular*)
caíste (*regular*)
cayó (*regular*)¹
caímos (*regular*)
caísteis (*regular*)
cayeron (*regular*)¹

Past (1st form).

cayese, etc. (*regular*)¹

Imperfect.

caía, etc. (*regular*)

Past (2nd form).

cayera, etc. (*regular*)¹

Future.

caeré, etc. (*regular*)

Future.

cayere, etc. (*regular*)¹.

Future in the past.

caería, etc. (*regular*).

¹ Y takes the place of the unstressed initial i of the inflexional ending in verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugation when the stem ends in a vowel: caer (cayó, cayese, cayendo), oír (oyó, oyere), huir (huyó, huyese). Verbs in -eír do not follow this rule: they are irregular.

IMPERATIVE.

cae (*regular*)
caed (*regular*)

Past participle.
caído (*regular*)

Present participle.
cayendo (*regular*).

EXERCISE.

El burro flautista.

Esta fabulilla,
salga bien o mal,
me ha ocurrido ahora
por casualidad.

Cerca de unos prados
que hay en mi lugar,
pasaba un borrico
por casualidad.

Una flauta en ellos
halló, que un zagal
se dejó olvidada
por casualidad.

Acercóse a olerla
el dicho animal,
y dió un resoplido
por casualidad.

En la flauta el aire
se hubo de colar,
y sonó la flauta
por casualidad.

¡Oh! dijo el borrico,
¡qué bien sé tocar!
¡y dirán que es mala
la música asnal!

Sin reglas del arte,
borriquitos hay
que una vez aciertan
por casualidad.

(TOMÁS DE IRIARTE, *Fábulas*, Oxford, 1918, p. 10.)

CONVERSATION.

¿Cuál es el título de esta fábula? ¿Quién es su autor?
 ¿Cómo dice el autor que le ocurrió esta fábula? ¿Cuál
 es el personaje único de la fábula? ¿Qué otras palabras
 hay en la fábula para designar el burro? ¿Qué diferencia
 hay entre borrico y borriquito? ¿Por dónde pasaba el
 asno de esta fábula? ¿En qué pueblo quedaban los
 prados? ¿Cómo acertó a pasar el borrico por estos
 prados? ¿Qué halló el borrico en ellos? ¿Quién había
 olvidado la flauta? ¿Dónde la había dejado? ¿Cómo
 había dejado olvidada la flauta el pastor? ¿Fué la inten-
 ción del pastor dejar allí la flauta? ¿Qué hizo el burro
 cuando vió la flauta? ¿Es natural que los burros se
 acerquen a oler las cosas que ven? ¿Solamente los
 borricos hacen esto? ¿De qué sentido (sense) se valen
 los animales en general para distinguir las cosas? ¿Cómo
 hizo el borrico sonar la flauta? ¿Quiso hacerla sonar?
 ¿Cómo sonó la flauta? ¿Qué dijo el borrico al oír sonar
 la flauta? ¿Era música verdadera el sonido de la flauta?
 ¿Cuál es la moraleja (moral) de la fábula? ¿Es posible
 acertar sin saber las reglas del arte? ¿Cómo se acierta
 a veces sin saber las reglas?

TRANSLATE.

Simón el Bobito (Simple Simon).

Simón el Bobito llamó al pastelero¹:
 'A ver los pasteles²! los quiero probar³!'
 'Sí, repuso⁴ el otro, pero antes yo quiero
 ver ese cuartillo⁵ con que has de pagar.'
 Buscó en los bolsillos⁶ el buen Simoncito
 y dijo: 'De veras, no tengo ni unito.'

A Simón Bobito le gusta el pescado⁷
 y quiere volverse⁸ también pescador,
 y pasa las horas sentado, sentado
 pescando en el balde de mamá Leonor.

Empezando apenas a cuajarse⁹ el hielo¹⁰
 Simón el bobito se fué a patinar,¹¹
 cuando de repente¹² se le rompe¹³ el suelo
 y grita: 'Me ahogo¹⁴! vénganme a sacar!'

Vió un montón¹⁵ de tierra que estorbaba el paso¹⁶,
 y unos preguntaban: '¿Qué haremos aquí?'
 'Bobos, dijo el niño, resolviendo¹⁷ el caso;
 que abran un grande hoyo¹⁸ y la echen¹⁹ allí.'

Lo enviaron por agua, y él fué volandito²⁰
 llevando el cedazo²¹ para echarla en él.
 Así que²² la traiga el buen Simoncito
 seguirá la historia pintoresca y fiel²³.

R. POMBO.

¹ pieman. ² pie. ³ to taste. ⁴ **reponer**, to reply, is conjugated like **poner**. ⁵ fourth part of one real. This coin exists no longer. ⁶ pocket. ⁷ fish. ⁸ to become. ⁹ coagulate; used here in the sense of hardening: 'As the frost was only beginning to harden.' ¹⁰ **hielo** means also ice. ¹¹ skate. ¹² suddenly, all of a sudden. ¹³ break. ¹⁴ to drown. ¹⁵ heap. ¹⁶ **estorbar el paso**, to obstruct the way, to hinder. ¹⁷ to decide, to resolve. ¹⁸ hole. ¹⁹ to throw. ²⁰ in a hurry. ²¹ sieve. ²² when, as soon as. ²³ faithful, true.

TRANSLATE.

Joseph Joubert was born (and this date should be remarked) in 1754, at Montignac, a little town in Périgord. His father was a doctor with small means¹ and a large family; and Joseph, the eldest, had his own way to make in the world. He was for eight years, as pupil first, and afterwards as an assistant master², in the public school of Toulouse, then managed by the Jesuits. Compelled³ by the weakness⁴ of his health to give up⁵, at twenty-two, the profession of teaching, he passed two important years of his life in hard study, at home at Montignac; and went in 1778 to try⁶ his fortune in the literary world of Paris, then perhaps the most tempting⁷ field which has ever yet presented itself to a young man of letters⁸. He knew

Diderot, D'Alembert, Marmontel, Laharpe; he became intimate with one of the celebrities of the next literary generation, then, like himself, a young man—Chateaubriand's friend, the future Grand Master⁹ of the University, Fontanes. But, even then, it began to be observed that M. Joubert 'cared¹⁰ far more about (*de*) perfecting himself than about making himself a reputation'. . . .

When Napoleon, in 1809, reorganized the public instruction of France, founded¹¹ the University, and made M. de Fontanes its Grand Master, Fontanes had to submit¹² to the Emperor a list¹³ of persons to form the council¹⁴ of the new University. Third on his list,¹⁵ after two distinguished names, Fontanes placed the unknown¹⁶ name of Joubert. . . . Napoleon trusted¹⁷ his Grand Master, and Joubert became a councillor of the University.

M. ARNOLD.

- ¹ small means, **escasos medios.** ² assistant master, **maestro auxiliar.** ³ **obligado.** ⁴ **debilidad.** ⁵ **abandonar, dejar.**
⁶ **ensayar.** ⁷ **tentador.** ⁸ man of letters, **literato.** ⁹ **Gran Maestro.** ¹⁰ **se cuidaba.** ¹¹ **fundó.** ¹² **presentar.** ¹³ **lista.**
¹⁴ **consejo.** ¹⁵ third on his list, **en tercer lugar en su lista.**
¹⁶ **desconocido.** ¹⁷ **confiaba en.**

EXERCISE.

In the following sentences the present tense should be changed into the past:—

Me dicen que el amigo Juan tiene una casa de campo, en la orilla del río, donde pasa el verano con su esposa y sus hijos que gustan mucho del aire libre y necesitan descansar al salir del colegio.

No quiere mi padre que yo vaya a Rusia sin él: espera poder acompañarme el año próximo.

El general sabe el camino, él nos acompaña hasta aquí; pero como está muy ocupado en la organización de un nuevo ejército vuelve a la ciudad por el primer tren, que sale a las diez y cuarto.

Aquí está el criado. Trae los caballos para el viaje;

prepara el fiambre ; paga la cuenta del hotel y nos señala el camino. Es un hombre excelente, está al servicio de mi hermano a quien respeta y quiere como a su mismo padre.

No conozco a D. Diego. Creo que tampoco él me conoce a mí. Es más viejo de lo que dicen. Sus hijas son bien educadas y graciosas.

XXIII

VERBALS (*Derivados verbales*)¹

272.—*The infinitive.* The infinitive is in the Spanish language the word used to designate the verb. It ends in -ar, -er, or -ir : saltar, creer, decir.

273.—The infinitive keeps its verbal character inasmuch as it can take a subject or an object as well as the other forms of the verb, but it does not express tense, number, or person. **Alabarlo yo no sería posible**, to praise him would not be possible for me. In this Spanish sentence **yo** is the subject and **lo** the object of the infinitive **alabar**, which, in its turn, is the subject of 'no sería posible'. It can also be combined with predicative adjectives or nouns. **Ser bueno o no serlo ; pero no aparentarlo no siéndolo** ; to be good or not to be good, but not to try to appear so when one is not good.

274.—The object and the predicative pronoun now

¹ This term is used by English grammarians to designate collectively the infinitive, the gerund, and the participles : 'Verbals are words which are considered to be "parts" of verbs, and which in their nature partake of the character of verb and noun, or of verb and adjective. The Past Participles, as we have seen, are Verbals, and combine the characters of Verb and Adjective. . . . Other verbals are the Infinitive, and Supine, and the Gerund, which are Noun Verbals.' (Henry Cecil Wyld, *Elementary Lessons in English Grammar*, Oxford, 1915, p. 127.)

always follow the infinitive: **Vine a ver a usted**, I came to see you; **¿es ella la dueña de la casa?**: **creo que debe de serlo**, is she the landlady? I believe she probably is; **me parece verlo**, I think I see it; **puede usted dejarlas salir**, you may let them go out.

a. When the object is a pronoun without preposition it forms a single word with the infinitive (see § 60).

275.—The infinitive is often used with the definite or indefinite article:

| | |
|---|---|
| El saber su llegada la puso contenta. | To hear of his arrival made her happy. |
| En un abrir y cerrar de ojos ya no estaba ella en la sala. | In the twinkling of an eye she had already disappeared from the drawing-room. |

a. There are cases in which the infinitive used with the articles ceases to be a verbal and follows all the rules applicable to common nouns: it can then take the plural ending:

| | |
|--|---|
| El ser, los seres. | The being, the beings. |
| Corre un decir muy comentado. | A much commented saying is afloat. |
| Los decires del club son contradictorios. | The chatter in the club is contradictory. |
| El cantar de los cantares. | The Song of Solomon. |

276.—In optative or imperative clauses the infinitive may take the place of other forms of the verb:

| | |
|---|---|
| ¡No cerrar la puerta! (no cerréis la puerta). | Do not close the door (mind not to close the door). |
| No matar (no matarás). | Thou shalt not kill. |
| ¡Desechar los malos pensamientos! | Reject bad thoughts. |
| A quien no sea de ánimo esforzado no armarlo de soldado (no lo armen). | Do not make a soldier of him who has not a courageous soul. |

(SAMANIEGO, *Fábulas*, Oxford, 1918, p. 20.)

277.—After a preposition the infinitive is used in Spanish, not the gerund as in English :

| | |
|--|---|
| Ella se cansó de decirle que era tarde. | She grew tired of telling him that it was late. |
| Con hacerlo me convencerá (see § 240). | By doing it he will convince me. |

278.—In combination with the preposition *a* independently of other verbs the infinitive sometimes takes the place of an *if*-clause :

| | |
|--|--|
| A tener yo dinero, compraría ese libro. | I should buy that book if I had the money. |
|--|--|

a. Combined with the preposition *a* and the definite article the infinitive denotes coincidence of time :

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Al llegar a casa supe la noticia. | I heard the news on reaching home. |
|--|------------------------------------|

b. When used with *con* independently of another verb the infinitive has the meaning of a gerund or of a clause introduced by *aunque* :

| | |
|--|--|
| Con ser tan sagaz no evitó que le engañasen (Siendo tan sagaz . . . , Aunque es tan sagaz . . .). | With all his cunning he could not help being deceived (see § 225). |
|--|--|

279.—The verbs *oír* and *ver* and a few others of the same kind may take as their object an infinitive with which they seem to form a single part of speech :

| | |
|---|---|
| Vimos arder el bosque. | We saw the wood burn (or, burning). |
| ¿Oíste cantar el aria? — La oí cantar. | Did you hear the air sung? — I did hear it sung. |
| ¿Le oíste cantar el aria? — Lo oí, or le oí (or, Se la oí cantar). | Did you hear him sing the air? — I heard him (or, I heard him sing it). |

In the first sentence *bosque* is the object both of *ver* and *arder*. In the second, *aria* is the object both of *oír* and *cantar*; here we can say *la oí cantar* or *oí cantarla*, in

the manner of **lo oí decir** or **oí decirlo** (I heard it said). When the infinitive is not a verb used transitively it cannot take the object. We cannot, therefore, say: **vi salirlo**, but **lo vi salir**, I saw him go out.

In the sentence **¿Le oíste cantar el aria?** **Le** can be taken to be a direct or indirect object: if the question refers to the **aria** it is indirect; if it refers to the singer it is a direct object. **¿Le oíste cantar el aria?** may, therefore, mean either: Did you hear the air he sang? or, Did you hear him sing the air? If we say: **¿Lo oíste cantar el aria?** the sense can only be the latter, because **lo** is always a direct object when it refers to the third person masculine singular.

280.—A few verbs in Spanish, besides the two we have mentioned in the preceding paragraph, do not require a preposition before the infinitive. The following are those of most frequent use:

- | | |
|--|--|
| acostumbrar , to be accustomed. | pensar , to intend. |
| convenir , to be convenient, to suit. | poder , to be able. |
| creer , to believe, to think. | preferir , to prefer. |
| deber , shall, ought. | pretender , to claim, to pretend. |
| dejar , to let, to allow. | prohibir , to prohibit. |
| desear , to wish, to want. | prometer , to promise. |
| escuchar , to listen to. | querer , to wish, to want. |
| esperar , to hope. | recordar , to remember. |
| imaginarse , to imagine. | saber , to know. |
| impedir , to prevent. | servirse , to please, to be so kind. |
| intentar , to attempt. | soler , to be accustomed, to be wont. |
| lograr , to succeed in. | temer , to fear. |
| necesitar , to need, to want. | |
| parecer , to seem. | |

281.—Many verbs require the preposition **a** before an infinitive. Usage is the sole guide, and they can only be learned by practice. The following are a few of those in most frequent use:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| aprender , to learn. | atreverse , to dare. |
| aspirar , to aspire. | ayudar , to help. |

comenzar, to begin.
 contribuir, to contribute.
 convidar, to invite.
 correr, to run.
 empezar, to begin.
 enseñar, to teach.
 forzar, to force.
 invitar, to invite.
 ir, to go.
 llegar, to arrive, to come,

to succeed.
 pasar, to pass, to proceed.
 renunciar, to renounce.
 sacar, to draw out.
 salir, to go out, come out.
 tornar, to return, to do
 again.
 venir, to come.
 volver, to turn to, to do
 again.

282.—Verbs requiring **con** before an infinitive :

amenazar, to threaten.
 contar, to depend on.
 contentarse, to be satisfied

with.
 divertirse, to amuse oneself.

283.—Verbs requiring **de** before an infinitive :

acabar (in the sense of
 having just finished), to
 end, to finish.
 acusar, to accuse.
 cansarse, to tire, to grow
 weary.
 cesar, to cease.
 cuidarse, to take care, to
 keep from.
 dejar, to leave off, to cease.
 descansar, to rest, to take
 a rest.
 desistir, to desist.

disuadir, to dissuade.
 encargarse, to take upon
 oneself.
 guardarse, to keep from, to
 avoid.
 hablar, to speak, to mention.
 jactarse, to boast.
 olvidar, to forget.
 preciarse, to boast.
 privar, to deprive.
 quejarse, to complain.
 terminar, to finish.
 tratar, to try, to endeavour.

284.—Verbs requiring **en** before an infinitive :

confiar, to trust in.
 consentir, to consent, to
 agree to.
 consistir, to consist.
 consumirse, to be con-
 sumed.
 convenir, to agree to.
 ejercitarse, to employ one-
 self.
 empeñarse, to persist.
 esmerarse, to take pains

in.
 insistir, to insist.
 obstinarse, to persist in.
 ocuparse, to busy one-
 self.
 parar, to come to.
 pensar, to think of.
 quedar, to come to, to agree.
 tardar, to delay, to be late
 in.
 vacilar, to hesitate.

285.—Verbs requiring **por** before an infinitive :

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| acabar , to end by. | rabiar , to be crazy for. |
| pugnar , to strive. | trabajar , to work for, after. |

286.—In combination with certain prepositions the infinitive has in Spanish a passive meaning :

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Le llevan a ahorcar. | They are taking him to be hung. |
| Eso está todavía por saber. | That is still to be known. |
| Esta fruta no es de comer. | This fruit is not to be eaten. |
| No es cosa de alabar. | It is not a thing to be praised. ¹ |

287.—For the meaning of **deber**, followed by an infinitive with or without the preposition **de**, see § 218. The following phrases may further illustrate the correct usage :

| | |
|--|---|
| Debe venir mañana. | He must come to-morrow. |
| Debió de estar muy ocupado, cuando no vino. | He was perhaps very busy, as he did not come. |

288.—**Haber** and **tener**, followed by **que** and an infinitive, imply necessity, obligation, duty ; in English, 'to have to' (see §§ 76, 131):

| | |
|--|--|
| Hay que terminar el negocio antes del sábado. | The business has to be finished before Saturday. |
| El Ministro Rodríguez tiene que dimitir. | Rodríguez, the Minister, has to resign. |
| Hay que tener paciencia.² | One has to be patient. |

a. It is to be noted that **tengo que** combined with the infinitive does not always mean necessity :

| | |
|--|--|
| He venido porque tengo noticias que comunicarles. | I have come because I have news to communicate to you. |
| Pregúntela usted si tiene que decir. | Ask her whether she has anything to say. |
| El pobre no tuvo que decir. | The poor man had nothing to say. |

¹ Compare the Latin : *vultus nimium lubricus aspici* (Hor.) ; *dignus amari*.

² **Haber de** and **tener de** followed by an infinitive have the same meaning as **tener que** :

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Ha de saber usted que tenemos de morir. | You must know that we have to die. |
|--|------------------------------------|

Tener de is less used than **haber de**.

289.—In *haber menester*, to need, to be in need of, *menester* is not an infinitive, as some good writers have thought, and as the illiterate in some Spanish-speaking countries evidently assume it to be (since they try to conjugate it). *Menester* (trade) is the Latin noun *ministerium*¹, and as such it takes the plural ending: *humildes menesteres*, humble trades; *bajos menesteres*, low trades. The following examples show the correct use of *haber menester*:

| | |
|---|--|
| No es eso lo que yo quiero, ni lo que yo he menester. | That is neither what I wish nor what I need. |
| Ella había menester mucho dinero. | She was in need of much money. |

290.—With the verbs *parecer*, *semejar*, an infinitive may be used as predicative noun or adjective:

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Parece alejarse la tempestad. | The storm seems to be subsiding. |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|

291.—In some cases the infinitive takes the place of the subjunctive forms:

(a) With verbs meaning *doubt*, *disbelief*, *negation*, *fear*:

| | |
|--|--|
| Dudo haberme expresado en tales términos. | I doubt having expressed myself in such terms. |
| Dudo que él se haya expresado en tales términos. | I doubt that he expressed himself in such terms. |

Note that when the subject of the subordinate clause is not the same as that of the main clause the use of the infinitive is excluded.

(b) With verbs meaning *purpose*, *intention*:

| | |
|---|---|
| También deseo yo hacer otra 'Pepita Jiménez'. | I wish also to write another 'Pepita Jiménez'. |
| Deseo que usted haga otra 'Pepita Jiménez'. | I wish you to write another 'Pepita Jiménez'. |
| Así pudiera cantar el romance de Calainos; que todo fuera uno para sucedernos bien o mal en nuestro negocio [para que nos sucediera . . .]. | He might just as well be singing the ballad of Calainos, for any good or ill that comes to us in our business. (ORMSBY'S transl.) |

CERVANTES.

¹ French *métier*, Italian *mestiere*, Portuguese *mester*.

292.—To form a single grammatical element (whether object or subject), the infinitive combined with **no** and the definite article must be preceded by the **no**, which follows the article :

El no saberlo yo fué la causa de la demora. My not knowing it was the cause of the delay.

The sequence is of importance because its alteration changes the meaning of the sentence :

No el saberlo yo fué la causa de la demora (el saberlo yo no fué la causa . . .) My knowing it was not the cause of delay.

a. Note that constructions in which the infinitive takes a subject pronoun are rendered in English by means of the present participle preceded by the possessive adjective :

El haberlo visto yo no es la única prueba de su existencia. My having seen it is not the only proof of its existence.

Todo lo que dices, Cipión, entiendo, y el decirlo tú y entenderlo yo me causa nueva admiración y maravilla. I understand all that you say, Cipión, and your saying it and my understanding it causes me fresh wonder and amazement.

CERVANTES.

VOCABULARY.

allá, adv., there ; **allá a su manera,** in his own peculiar way.

añadir, to add.

aquí, adv., here ; **de aquí,** hence.

asegurar, to assure.

beatitud, f., beatitude, holiness.

bienaventuranza, f., blessedness, holiness, rapture.

campanilla, f., small bell ; **de muchas campanillas,** of great standing.

cierto, adj., true ; **adv.,** certainly.

cifrar, to write in cipher ; **cifrar en,** to place.

confesar, to own, to confess.

conforme con, in accordance with.

criterio, *m.*, judgment, standard.

chispa, *f.*, spark.

desconfiado, *adj.*, diffident.

describir, to describe.

discreto, *adj.*, discreet, wise, witty.

duda, *f.*, doubt.

duque, *m.*, duke.

ejemplar, *m.*, copy, specimen; *adj.*, exemplary.

elogio, *m.*, praise.

embajador, *m.*, ambassador.

embromar, to tease, to annoy.

embuste, *m.*, artful tale, lie.

estampar, to print, to stamp.

falso, *adj.*, false, untrue.

forastero, *m.*, stranger, visitor.

guía, *m.* and *f.*, guide, guide-book; **guía de forasteros**, court guide, directory.

inolvidable, *adj.*, unforgettable.

inverosímil, or **inverisímil**, *adj.*, unlikely.

jactarse, to boast.

lance, *m.*, incident, episode.

licencia, *f.*, leave, leave of absence, licence, permit, licentiousness.

luengo, *adj.*, long (obsolete: used only in proverbs).

lugareño, *m.*, villager.

malicioso, *adj.*, cunning.

mandar, to send, to command.

mayordomo, *m.*, butler, majordomo.

mentira, *f.*, lie, untruth.

monte, *m.*, mountain.

nacimiento, *m.*, birth; **lugar de nacimiento**, birth place.

ofender, to offend.

papel, *m.*, paper, part; **hacer papel**, to play a part.

participar, to announce, to participate, to partake.

pasmo, *m.*, wonder.

prodigio, *m.*, prodigy.

punta, *f.*, point, sharp end of a thing, top.

rayar en, to be near, to border on.

referir, to relate.

refrán, *m.*, proverb, saying.

registro, *m.*, register, mark, book-mark.

suponer, to suppose, to presume.

suposición, *f.*, supposition; **de gran suposición**, of great importance.

tono, *m.*, tone, tune; **darse**

tono, to give one's self airs.

vía, *f.*, way.

293.—CONJUGATION of **Caber**, to be contained in (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

quepo

cabes

cabe

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

quepa

quepas

quepa

cabemos
cabéis
caben.

Past.

cupe
cupiste
cupo
cupimos
cupisteis
cupieron.

Imperfect.

cabía, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

cabré
cabrás
cabrá
cabremos
cabréis
cabrán.

Future in the past.

cabría
cabrías
cabría
cabríamos
cabríaís
cabrían.

294.—Idiomatic phrases :

Esto no cabe en lo posible.

No cabe en sí de gozo.

No cabe duda.

No cabe argüír.

No cabe en sí.

Aquí no quepo.

No me cabe en la cabeza.

Esto no reza conmigo.

Así reza el cuento.

quepamos
quepáis
quepan.

Past (1st and 2nd forms).

cupiese or cupiera
cupieses or cupieras
cupiese or cupiera
cupiésemos or cupiéramos
cupieseis or cupierais
cupiesen or cupieran.

Future.

cupiere
cupieres
cupiere
cupiéremos
cupiereis
cupieren.

IMPERATIVE.

cabe (not used).
cabed.

Past participle.

cabido.

Present participle.

cabiendo.

This is beyond all possibility.

He is beside himself with joy.

There is no room for doubt.

There is no arguing.

{ He is full of conceit.

{ He cannot contain himself.

There is no room for me here.

It does not enter into my head
(I do not understand it).

That does not apply to me.

So the story goes.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Está conforme con la propuesta. | He is agreeable to the proposal. |
| Tomar el portante. | To go away. |

EXERCISE.

¿A quién no le agrada, cuando vuelve al lugar de su nacimiento, darse cierto tono, sin ofender a nadie, manifestando cuán importante papel ha hecho en el mundo ?

Gente hay que no espera para esto a ir a su lugar. Nacido en uno muy pequeño de Andalucía tuve yo cierto amigo que, como llegase a ser personaje de gran suposición y de muchas campanillas, cifraba su mayor deleite en mandar a su pueblo todos los años un ejemplar de la *Guía de forasteros*, con un registro en las varias páginas en que estaba estampado su nombre. Un año fué la *Guía* con ocho registros, y el pasmo de los lugareños, participado por carta a mi amigo, le dió un contento que casi rayaba en beatitud o bienaventuranza.

No es menor el gusto que se tiene en contar lances y sucesos y en describir prodigios. De aquí sin duda el refrán: *de luengas vías, luengas mentiras*. Baste, pues, decir, en elogio de D. Fadrique, que el refrán no rezó con él nunca, porque era la verdad en persona. Lo que no aseguramos es que fuese siempre creído en cuanto refirió. Los lugareños son maliciosos y desconfiados; suelen tener un criterio allá a su manera, y a menudo las cosas más ciertas les parecen falsas o inverosímiles, y las mentiras, por el contrario, muy conformes con la verdad. Recuerdo que un mayordomo andaluz de cierto inolvidable y discreto Duque, que estuvo de embajador en Nápoles, fué a su pueblo con licencia. Cuando volvió le embromábamos suponiendo que habría contado muchos embustes. Él nos confesó que sí, y aun añadió, jactándose de ello, que todo se lo habían creído, menos una cosa.

— ¿Qué cosa era esa?, le preguntamos.

— Que cerca de Nápoles, respondió, hay un monte que echa chispas por la punta.

CONVERSATION.

¿Cómo se da tono el viajero cuando vuelve al lugar de su nacimiento? ¿Esperan siempre estas gentes volver a su lugar para darse tono? ¿En qué cifraba su mayor deleite un personaje de gran suposición nacido en un pequeño lugar de Andalucía? ¿Qué ponía en el ejemplar de la *Guía de forasteros* que mandaba a su pueblo? ¿En qué partes de la *Guía* ponía registros? Cuando su nombre salió ocho veces en la guía ¿quiénes fueron sorprendidos y quién recibió gran contento? ¿Hasta qué punto llegó el contento del personaje cuyo nombre había sido estampado ocho veces en la *Guía de forasteros*?

¿Qué quiere decir el refrán: *luengas vías, luengas mentiras*? ¿Tiene el hombre gusto en contar lances y describir prodigios? ¿Qué refrán o proverbio sale de aquí? ¿Se usa todavía en español la palabra *luengo* en vez de *largo*? ¿Contaba D. Fadrique historias que no fuesen ciertas? ¿Creían las gentes todo lo que él refería? ¿Cómo es, generalmente, el carácter de los lugareños? ¿Cómo suelen parecerles las cosas más ciertas? ¿Creían los lugareños todo lo que contaba el mayordomo del Duque? ¿Cuál era la cosa que encontraban inverosímil?

TRANSLATE.

Una zorra¹ divisó² varias aves de corral³ que estaban en el gallinero⁴, y quiso acercarse a ellas con palabras engañosas⁵. ‘Tengo’, les dijo, ‘excelentes noticias⁶ que comunicarles. Los animales han acordado la paz⁷ universal. Bajen a celebrar⁸ conmigo esta feliz determinación⁹’. Un gallo viejo, muy seguro de sí¹⁰, miró¹¹ a su rededor¹² cautelosamente¹³, sin responder una palabra. Notando la zorra la inquietud¹⁴ del gallo, le preguntó la causa¹⁵. ‘No es nada’, explicó el gallo; ‘estaba viendo

que vienen hacia acá dos perros¹⁶. La zorra se preparó a tomar el portante. '¡Qué!', gritó el gallo, '¿no han acordado los animales la paz universal?' 'Sí,' replicó la zorra, 'pero es muy fácil que esos perros no lo sepan todavía.'

¹ fox. ² noted, observed. ³ **aves de corral**, fowls (birds of the court-yard). ⁴ roost. ⁵ artful, misleading. ⁶ news. ⁷ peace.
⁸ celebrate. ⁹ decision, decree. ¹⁰ **seguro de sí**, on his guard.
¹¹ looked. ¹² around. ¹³ cautiously. ¹⁴ uneasiness. ¹⁵ cause.
¹⁶ dogs.

TRANSLATE.

Peter the Great and the Monk.

Peter the Great ordered many foreign books to be translated¹ into the Russian² language, and among others Puffendorf's 'Introduction to the knowledge of the States of Europe'. A monk³ to whom the translation of this book was entrusted⁴ presented it sometime afterwards to the Emperor. The monarch examined the translation; at a certain chapter⁵, however, he suddenly⁶ changed countenance⁷, turned indignantly⁸ to the monk and said: 'Fool⁹, what did I order thee to do? Is this a translation?' He then referred¹⁰ to the original and showed¹¹ the poor monk a paragraph in which the author had spoken with great asperity¹² of the Russians, but which had not been translated. 'Go', resumed¹³ the monarch¹⁴, 'and instantly¹⁵ carry out¹⁶ what I have bidden¹⁷ thee [to do]. It is not to flatter¹⁸ my subjects¹⁹ that I have ordered this book to be translated, but to instruct²⁰ and reform²¹ them.'

¹ ordered many . . . books to be translated, **dispuso que se tradujeran muchos libros.** ² ruso, rusa. ³ monje. ⁴ to whom the translation was entrusted, **a quien se le confió la traducción.**
⁵ capítulo. ⁶ de repente. ⁷ semblante, aspecto. ⁸ indignado, indignadamente. ⁹ necio. ¹⁰ recurrió. ¹¹ mostró a.
¹² aspereza. ¹³ continuó. ¹⁴ monarca. ¹⁵ sin demora.
¹⁶ ejecuta. ¹⁷ mandado. ¹⁸ lisonjear. ¹⁹ súbditos.
²⁰ instruir. ²¹ reformar.

XXIV

PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND

295.—THE active participle as it existed in Latin (*vocans*), and as it is still used in some Romance and Teutonic languages, has disappeared from Spanish. Words in *-ante*, *-ente* of verbal derivation, which are still called active participles by some grammarians, are mere adjectives, having lost all the characteristics of the verb:

| | |
|---|---|
| Actitud insultante, gobernador saliente, año entrante. | Insulting attitude, outgoing governor, incoming year. |
| Es persona interesante. | He is an interesting person. |
| Labor persistente. | Persistent work. |

a. Note that in some cases the ending of the verbal adjective in Spanish corresponds to that of its English equivalent: **insistente** (insistent), **estudiante** (student), **ignorante** (ignorant).

b. They do not now admit of a subject or object as verbs and real verbals do. They do not refer to any special time and they change only to express plurality as do adjectives generally.¹

296.—The gerund (*gerundio*), ending for the verbs of the first conjugation in *-ando* (**habl-ando**), and for those of the second and third in *-iendo* (**tem-iendo**, **sub-iendo**), is generally rendered by the English verbals ending in *-ing*:

| | |
|--|--|
| Y hablando así conmovía las multitudes. | And talking in this fashion, he used to move the crowds. |
|--|--|

¹ **Aves producientes cantos, fuente manante metros**, expressions to be found in authors who wrote before the beginning of the sixteenth century, are now entirely out of use. **Lugarteniente, poderhabiente, fehaciente**, words in which the second element had a separate value as an active participle, are nowadays mere nouns.

a. In sentences like this, the Spanish gerund takes the place of an adverb, and is often rendered in English by means of a preposition followed by the gerund or by an adverb equivalent :

| | |
|--|---|
| Terminó diciendo que se había equivocado. | He ended by saying that he had made a mistake. |
| Enseñando aprendemos. | By teaching we learn (we learn while we teach). |

297.—The gerund may take a subject and an object :

| | |
|--|---|
| Llegando mi amigo a la plaza descubrió la verdad del suceso (mi amigo is the subject of <i>llegando</i>). | On reaching the square my friend discovered the truth of the matter. |
| Teniendo Juan tanto dinero ocioso resolvió comprar valores del estado (Juan subject, dinero object). | John having so much unproductive cash made up his mind to buy State securities. |

298.—The subject of the gerund is as a rule the subject of the principal sentence :

| | |
|--|---|
| Siguiendo tu consejo, traté de evitar el peligro. | Following your advice, I tried to avoid the danger. |
|--|---|

With verbs of action the gerund may refer to the object :

| | |
|--|---|
| La ví segando las mieses (yo la ví a ella segando las mieses). | I saw her mowing the ripe wheat. |
| Le pillaron cambiando de vestido (Ellos lo pillaron a él cambiando de vestido). | He was caught while changing his dress. |

299.—If the verb does not signify action or motion the present participle cannot be used with reference to the object :

| | |
|---|--|
| Puse hoy en el correo un paquete que contiene diez libros (not <i>conteniendo</i> as is sometimes said). | I posted to-day a parcel containing ten books. |
|---|--|

300.—In some cases the gerund is used as a mere invariable adjective :

| | |
|--|---|
| El agua hirviendo disuelve mejor el ácido bórico. | Boiling water dissolves boric acid more easily. |
| Un bosque ardiendo es un bello aunque triste espectáculo. ¹ | A burning forest is a beautiful though sad sight. |

301.—The gerund may take as an object the enclitic pronoun, which in this case forms a single word with it :

| | |
|---|--|
| Dejándonos en la calle penetró a sus aposentos. | Leaving us in the street he went into his rooms. |
| No logró convencerlos leyéndoles la carta. | He did not succeed in convincing them by reading the letter to them. |

302.—As regards time the gerund expresses either immediate priority to or coexistence with the action or state of mind implied by the principal verb of the sentence :

| | |
|---|---|
| Viéndose perdidos, resolvieron capitular (priority). | Seeing that they were lost, they decided to capitulate. |
| Dando las once salí (coexistence). | I went out on the stroke of eleven. |
| Dejando a un lado sus propios negocios empezó a ocuparse en organizar los ajenos (priority : he first gave up his own affairs, and then attended to those of other people). | Leaving aside his own affairs he began to busy himself with setting in order those of other people. |

303.—The gerund is often combined with the preposition *en* with the meaning of *as soon as* :

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| En llegando trataré de verle. | I shall try to see him as soon as I arrive. |
|-------------------------------|---|

¹ A few gerunds in Spanish are used as nouns, having lost all the characteristics of the verb : **multiplicando** (factor), **sumando** (item of an addition), **considerando** (recital, in legal documents), **educando** (pupil, student), **examinando** (examinee).

304.—It is to be noted that the English gerund when used as the subject of a sentence and having an object of its own is rendered in Spanish by the infinitive :

| | |
|---|---|
| Comer frutas verdes es nocivo para los niños. | Eating unripe fruit is bad for children. |
| Tirar de un pesado carruaje cuesta arriba es duro para un caballo. | Pulling a heavy carriage uphill is hard on a horse. |

305.—The present participle is frequently used in Spanish for the formation of the continuous tenses with *estar*: *estoy escribiendo*, I am writing; *estuve aguardando toda la noche*, I was waiting all night; *no me dijo que estuviese pensando en mudarse*, he did not tell me that he was thinking of moving.

a. Yet the correspondence is not absolute in the use of these tenses in the two languages, because the continuous form has very often to be used in English to render the Spanish imperfect :

| | |
|---|--|
| Iba a pescar todas las mañanas cuando vivía en el campo. | I used to go a-fishing every morning when I was living in the country. |
| Llovía a cántaros cuando terminó la conferencia. | It was pouring in torrents when the lecture finished. |
| Iba camino de Madrid cuando le encontré por primera vez. | I was going to Madrid when I met him for the first time. |

b. The continuous construction is also used with *ir*, *venir*, *andar*, *continuar*, *quedar*, *seguir*, and a few other verbs the meaning of which implies motion :

| | |
|--|--|
| Iba predicando la nueva ley por todas partes. | He went preaching the new law in every direction. |
| Vino cabalgando un famoso corcel. | He came riding a famous courser. |
| Quedamos aguardando sus gratas órdenes. | We remain in expectation of your kind orders. |
| Si siguiera estudiando, podría hacer una brillante carrera. | If he would go on studying he might be able to develop a brilliant career. |

Continuaba él ocupándose en poner orden en el barrio. He was going on putting things in order in the quarter.

306.—The gerund is used as the ablative in Latin in absolute clauses of an explanatory meaning :

No sabiendo el camino, resolvió pasar la noche en la primer posada. Not knowing the way, he made up his mind to pass the night at the first inn.

Faltándoles absolutamente los víveres se rindieron a discreción. Being absolutely without provisions they surrendered unconditionally.

a. Note that in constructions of this kind, and in all those in which the gerund fulfils an adverbial function, the phrase is clearer and more elegant in Spanish when the gerund is put at the beginning :

Tendiendo por el suelo unas pieles de ovejas, aderezaron los cabreros su rústica cena.¹ Spreading some sheep-skins on the ground, the goatherds served their rural supper.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|--|
| agitarse, to bestir oneself. | exánime, <i>adj.</i> , without strength, exhausted. |
| amo, <i>m.</i> ; master. | falda, <i>f.</i> , lap, skirt; perro de faldas, perro faldero, falderillo, lap dog, pet dog. |
| ansiar, to desire. | fatigar, to tire. |
| bárbaro, <i>adj.</i> , barbarous. | fatigarse, to get tired. |
| callar, to be silent. | freno, <i>m.</i> , bridle, brake. |
| canónigo, <i>m.</i> , canon. | hambre, <i>f.</i> , hunger. |
| criar, to breed, to rear. | íntimo, <i>adj.</i> , deep, intimate. |
| cuadrúpedo, <i>m.</i> , quadruped. | inútil, useless. |
| cuidar, to take care of. | mal, <i>m.</i> , evil, disease; mal de rabia, rabies, hydrophobia. |
| débil, <i>adj.</i> , weak. | mandria, <i>m.</i> , worthless person, poltroon. |
| demás, <i>adj.</i> , others. | |
| desvelarse, to keep awake, to be wakeful. | |
| dormir, to sleep. | |
| enfermo, <i>adj.</i> , ill, sick. | |
| esperanza, <i>f.</i> , hope. | |
| estúpido, <i>adj.</i> , stupid, foolish. | |

¹ The construction : **Los cabreros, tendiendo por el suelo**, etc., is equally grammatical, but not so clear and easy.

mendigo, m., beggar, mendicant.
método, m., method, way.
morir, to die; morir de hambre, to starve, to die of hunger.
ocio, m., leisure, idleness.
plan, m., plane, level surface.
posada, f., inn.
postrar, to prostrate; postrado, adj., exhausted.
príncipe, m., prince.
quebrantar, to weaken; quebrantarse, to weaken oneself.
quitar, to take away, to remove.
rabia, f., rage, wrath, rabies.

replicar, to reply.
reposo, m., repose, rest.
revolcarse, to roll, to wallow.
riqueza, f., wealth.
salud, f., health.
semejante, adj., such, similar, resembling.
sibarítico, adj., sybaritic, effeminate.
tabla, f., board.
trabajar, to work.
vago, adj., idle, vacant, vague.
venta, f., inn, sale.
zángano, m., drone.
zarandajas, f. pl., trifles, odds-and-ends.

EXERCISE.

La yegua y la faldera.

Viajando doña Próspera
 con su yegua y su perra de faldas,
 llegaron cansadísimas
 por la noche a la venta o posada.
 Quítanle a la cuadrúpeda
 silla, freno y demás zarandajas,
 y revuélcase cómoda
 en un plan a nivel como tabla.

— ‘¡Qué bárbara, qué estúpida!’
 la perrita le dijo al mirarla,
 ‘con semejante método
 se fatiga uno más, se quebranta.

Yo misma estoy exánime,
 aunque vine en las faldas de mi ama;
 mas dormiré a lo príncipe
 y mañana estaré descansada.’

— ‘Calla, la otra replícale.

Lo que postra es el ocio y las faldas :
 los zánganos son débiles ;
 sólo aquel que trabaja, descansa.
 Viniste cual canónigo,
 y por eso te sientes postrada :
 yo a ti y a Doña Próspera
 traje encima y por eso estoy guapa.
 El trabajo es paz íntima,
 salud, fuerza, riqueza, esperanza ;
 perros vagos o inútiles
 mueren de hambre o les da mal de rabia.
 Si ansias reposo, agítate,
 y desvélate y cuida la casa :
 la vida sibarítica
 cría enfermos, mendigos y mandrias.'

R. POMBO.

CONVERSATION.

¿ Con quién viajaba Doña Próspera ? ¿ A qué hora llegaron a la posada ? ¿ Cómo llegaron ? ¿ Qué le quitaron a la cuadrúpeda ? ¿ Qué hizo la yegua cuando le hubieron quitado la silla y el freno ? ¿ Dónde se revolcó ? ¿ Qué dijo la perra faldera al ver revolcar a la yegua ? ¿ Creía la perra que un caballo descansa revolcándose ? ¿ Cómo se sentía la perra ? ¿ Dónde había reposado ella durante el viaje ? ¿ Cómo pensaba dormir ? ¿ Estaría descansada al día siguiente ? ¿ Qué le replicó la yegua ? ¿ Por qué son débiles los zánganos ? ¿ Se puede descansar sin haber trabajado antes ? ¿ Quién trajo encima a Doña Próspera y a la perra faldera ? Y, sin embargo, ¿ quién estaba más cansada, la perra o la yegua ? ¿ Cómo decía sentirse la yegua ? ¿ De qué mueren los perros vagos o inútiles ? ¿ Qué consejo le dió la yegua a la perra ? ¿ Cómo acaban los que llevan vida sibarítica ?

TRANSLATE.

Meanwhile in France things moved (*iban*) fast. By breaking down (*suprimiendo*) the division between its separate orders the States-General (*Estados Generales*) became a National Assembly, and abolished (*abolieron*) the privileges of the provincial parliaments, of the nobles, and the Church (*Iglesia*). In October the mob (*las turbas*) of Paris marched on Versailles and forced both King and Assembly to return with them to the capital, and a Constitution hastily put together (*hecha de prisa*) was accepted by Lewis the Sixteenth in the stead of his old despotic power.

The words 'used in Spanish to translate the English nouns *horse* and *mare* are derived from Latin, but while the first was formed from low Latin (*caballus*) the second, or the feminine, can trace its origin back to *equus*, the word for 'horse' in classical Latin.

'Men who write Grammars do not suppose now that they can set up (*erigir*) a model of speech, however much they may wish to do so. Hardly (*apenas*) any one (*habrá quien*), as a matter of fact (*en efecto*), alters (subjunctive in Spanish, *altere*) his way of speaking because a Grammar tells him that this way is wrong (*improprio, incorrecto*) and the other way is right (*correcto*). This would indeed be putting the cart (*carreta*) before the horse. A Grammar does not attempt (*se propone*) to teach people how they ought (*deben*) to speak, but, on the contrary, unless (*a menos*) it is a very bad or a very old work, it merely states (*muestra, expone*) how, as a matter of fact, certain people do speak at the time at which it is written.'

(HENRY CECIL WYLD.)

TRANSLATE.

— Dime, ¿qué vamos a hacer esta noche?

— Por lo que hace a mí (so far as I am concerned)

pienso quedarme en casa. He trasnochado (sit up all night, to go to bed very late) cinco veces esta semana y he menester una noche siquiera de verdadero reposo.

— ¿Tienes alguna cosa especial que hacer?

— No precisamente; es que estoy cansado (the fact is, I am tired).

— Pero a lo menos (at least), podré gozar de tu compañía (I shall be allowed to enjoy . . .).

— Supongo que no me quieres soltar (to let go, let loose).

— No de buena gana (willingly), a lo menos.

— ¿Qué te propones? (What do you suggest?).

— Nada especial todavía. Por eso te preguntaba.

— Al fin te haces entender (Now you are talking sense).

— Suponte que fuéramos al casino.

— ¿A tomar vino o cerveza o algo peor? No, gracias.

— Hay concierto allí esta noche.

— ¿Música militar, cenas en mesitas aisladas? Gracias, muchísimas gracias.

— Entonces, vamos al teatro.

— Eso depende. ¿Qué dan (play) esta noche?

— Algo de Ibsen.

— No es mi autor favorito. ¿Cuál de sus dramas?

— Me parece que han anunciado *Los Aparecidos* (Ghosts).

— ¡Esa lamentable y dolorosa creación!

— ¿De suerte que la conoces? ¿Ya la has visto representar?

— No, la he leído.

— Sí, veo que tienes aquí todas las obras de Ibsen; parece que no te disgustan (you do not dislike them), como lo dices.

— Las leo para poder decir si me agradan o me cargan (bore). Otros las alaban (praise) sin conocerlas.

— Y ¿qué dices de *Los Aparecidos*?

— Lo que has oído, que es un drama triste, lamentable,

que no me gusta; aunque me parece la obra de un poderoso genio.

— De modo que no vas a verla.

— Si puedo evitarlo ([Not] if I can help it).

— Pues, por desgracia (unfortunately) no tengo otra cosa que proponer.

— Gracias a mi buena suerte me he escapado esta noche de que me saques a rodar por esas calles (to drag me about).

— No te expresas en forma muy obsequiosa (complimentary) que digamos (to be sure).

EXERCISE ON THE RIGHT USE OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND.

Habiendo terminado ya la primera parte de su historia de los Otomíes, creyó que podía descansar viajando por el centro de Méjico donde ellos habían resistido a Cortés y donde están viviendo aún en contacto pacífico con otras razas.—Enseñando aprendemos: en rigor, lo que aprendemos enseñando es lo que mejor sabemos.—Hojeando (turning the leaves) un libro antiguo descubrió mi amigo inesperadamente una fecha que había menester para terminar una conferencia que estaba preparando.—En llegando a casa les escribiré a mis abogados (solicitors) que se entiendan (to come to an understanding) con los herederos (heirs) de Don Jerónimo.—Vi a la hija del Señor González pintando la tela que ha sido tan aplaudida en la presente exposición (exhibition) de pinturas.—Este niño estará dando que hacer al público de aquí a diez años (In ten years from now this boy will cause people to be interested in him).

XXV

THE PAST PARTICIPLE AND PASSIVE VOICE

307.—THE past participle of the regular verbs ends in **-ado** or **-ido** : **hablado, aprendido, recibido.**

a. The past participle, as we have already noted, is used in Spanish in the compound tenses (see §§ 66*b*, 70*b*, 72), formed with **haber** : **ha hablado, hemos venido, cuando hubo salido, como hubiéramos sabido.** As a part of these verbal forms the past participle is in Spanish invariable : **Lo había conocido** (masc.) ; **no hemos estudiado la lección** (fem.) ; **han pasado las vacaciones** (fem. pl.), the holiday is over ; **para mañana habremos recibido los libros** (masc. pl.), by to-morrow we shall have received the books.

b. As already stated (see §§ 66*d*, 76), the compound tenses may also be formed with **tener** in a limited number of cases, and with this verb the past participle is not invariable :

| | |
|---|--|
| Tengo advertido que partiré mañana. | I have given notice that I shall go out to-morrow. |
| Tendré encuadernados mis libros el mes entrante. | I shall have my books bound next month. |
| Tienen por ahora suspendida la ejecución de la obra. | They have for the present suspended the carrying out of the work |

c. Verbs used intransitively cannot form their compound tenses with **tener**.

308.—The past participle combined with the tenses of the verb **ser** enters into the formation of the passive voice

in Spanish ; as such it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers :

| | |
|---|---|
| El fuerte será destruido por el enemigo (masc. sing.). | The fort will be destroyed by the enemy. |
| Fué condenada por el jurado a un año de presidio (fem. sing.). | She was sentenced by the jury to a year of penal servitude. |
| Son conocidos sus antecedentes (masc. pl.). | His past is known. |
| Serán llamadas las señoras primero que los hombres (fem. pl.). | The ladies will be called before the men. |

a.—The passive voice may also be expressed in Spanish by means of the verb **estar** in a limited number of cases :

| | |
|--|--|
| Está terminado el juicio. | The law suit is finished. |
| Mañana estará descifrado el enigma. | The enigma will be unravelled to-morrow. |
| ¿Está abierta la carta? | Is the letter open ? |

But here the past participle may be considered as a mere adjective.

b. Similar sentences may be framed with **quedar**, to remain, to stay, and with **llevar**, to take to, to carry :

| | |
|---|--|
| Queda establecida la verdad de su declaración. | The truth of his statement is established. |
| Lleva recorridas veinte millas. | He has traversed twenty miles. |

309.—The pronominal form **se** of the third person is much used in Spanish to form the passive voice :

| | |
|--|--|
| Allí se pelea por la espada, aquí por el caballo. | There they fight (it is fought) for the sword, here for the horse. |
| Se dice. | It is said. |
| Se nos dice. | We are told. |
| Se averiguó que el error procedía de una palabra mal escrita. | It was found out that the mistake originated in an ill-written word. |
| Se le dió una hora de tér- | An hour's time was given |

| | |
|---|--|
| mino para contestar. | him to answer. |
| Se le concedió una audien- cia. | An audience was granted to him (he was granted an audience). |
| Se le (or la) dió una man- zana. | She was given an apple. |

a. Passive constructions of this kind may take in Spanish as in English the active form by means of the third person plural of the respective verb :

| | |
|--|---|
| Dicen (se dice). | They say (it is said). |
| Nos dicen (se nos dice). | They tell us (we are told). |
| Averiguaron el error (se averiguó el error). | They found the mistake (the mistake was found). |
| Le dieron (or la dieron) una manzana (se le dió una manzana). | They gave her an apple (an apple was given her). |

310.—Although the ordinary passive form **la casa fué vendida** (the house was sold) is perfectly grammatical and quite acceptable in Spanish, care should be taken not to use it too frequently, and instead one may have resource to the pronominal **se** : **se vendió la casa** ; **se realizaron nuestras esperanzas**, our hopes were fulfilled ; **se nos espera ansiosamente**, we are anxiously expected. **Nuestras esperanzas fueron realizadas, somos esperados ansiosamente** are expressions that cannot be condemned from a grammatical point of view, but they should not be used very frequently, because they give an appearance of affectation or strangeness to the style.

a. But there are cases in which the passive English construction cannot and must not be literally translated into Spanish. I am told, **se me dice** (never **yo soy dicho**). The reason is obvious. In the ordinary passive inversion the direct object becomes both in English and Spanish the subject of the verb, but the indirect object remains the same. Now in passive constructions like 'I am told a story' the subject corresponds to the indirect object of the active sentence : 'they tell me a story'. **Le (or la) dieron una**

manzana is the ordinary active construction in Spanish. Turning it into the passive form we can say : *le fué dada una manzana*, but not : *ella fué dada una manzana* (as in English : 'she was given an apple').¹

b. Phrases, then, in which the pronoun combined with *se* takes the form of an indirect object cannot be replaced by the ordinary passive construction with the past participle :

| | |
|---|---|
| Se me aconseja que abandone mis derechos en esta competencia. (Soy aconsejado que . . . would be ungrammatical.) | I am advised to relinquish my rights in this competition. |
| Se me dice que espere. | I am told to wait. |

c. If the pronoun combined with *se* is a direct object of the verb, both passive forms are acceptable, but the one with *se* is preferable when no ambiguity results from its use :

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Se me conoce muy bien en esta plaza (or soy muy bien conocido en esta plaza). | I am very well known in this city. |
| ¿Se me oye desde aquí? (or ¿soy oído desde aquí?). | Am I heard from here? |

d. The passive voice formed by means of the pronominal *se* has in Spanish an impersonal appearance, so that the verb may be used in the singular, although in the ordinary passive form the plural might be required :

| | |
|--|---|
| Se veía a los reyes sentados en la tribuna. | The kings were seen sitting in the tribune. |
| Se interrogará a los testigos. (Serán interrogados los testigos.) | The witnesses will be questioned. |

¹ Even in English, according to Dr. Sweet, 'we still hesitate over and try to evade such passive constructions as *she was given a watch, he was granted an audience*, because we still feel that *she* and *he* are in the dative, not the accusative relation.'—*New English Grammar*, Oxford, 1903, § 2313.

e. But when the object does not refer to human beings the plural is required :

Se ven desde aquí las montañas que separan a Europa de Asia. The mountains separating Europe from Asia are seen from here.

Se podan los árboles en menguante. Trees are pruned when the moon is waning.

f. As the preposition *a* in Spanish is used before an object noun to express personality,¹ the singular of the verb is used when the preposition intervenes in sentences of this kind with reference to things or animals :

Allí se trata a las bestias con cariño. Beasts are affectionately treated there.

g. On the other hand the plural may be used with reference to human beings when the preposition is dropped :

Se ven los reyes en el tablado. The kings are seen on the platform.

Se distinguen desde aquí los jinetes (or se distingue desde aquí a los jinetes). The riders are distinguishable from here.

h. But care must be taken when using the plural in this kind of sentence to avoid the ambiguity that may result from the reflexive appearance of the form. **Se ahorcaban los malvados** means 'the wicked hanged themselves', rather than 'the wicked were hanged'. To express this last meaning the singular and the preposition should be employed : **Se ahorcaba a los malvados.**²

¹ See § 202.

² The indeterminate pronoun **uno, una** may, in phrases such as these, take the place of **se**, and the substitution is very often useful to avoid the ambiguity arising from the reflexive appearance given to the sentence by the pronominal *se*.

Se ven los reyes en el tablado might mean 'the kings see themselves on the platform' or 'the kings see each other on the platform'. To avoid confusion, **uno** or **una** may be adopted in an active and direct construction :

Uno ve los reyes en el tablado. One sees the kings on the platform.
Una (fem.) puede distinguir desde aquí los jinetes. One can recognize the riders from here.

In old Spanish texts **hombre** (man) is to be found instead of **uno** in reflexive sentences :

El no maravillarse hombre de nada, basta a darnos vida descansada (El no maravillarse uno de nada . . .). Not to be taken by surprise is enough to lead an easy life.

311.—Certain Spanish verbs may be used with the reflexive forms in sentences devoid of all reflexive meaning. Their use offers some difficulty to the English student :

| | |
|--|---|
| Yo me río, él se ríe, ellos se reían. | I laugh, he laughs, they were laughing. |
| Se ríe D. Juan de todo, pero no niega nada. | D. Juan scoffs at everything, but denies nothing. |
| Me acuerdo, él se acuerda, no me acordé. | I remember, he remembers, I did not remember. |

a. Compare the difference between **acordarse** and **recordar** :

| | |
|---|--|
| Me acordé tarde. | I remembered when it was late. |
| Recuerdo su voz y su gesto. | I recall his voice and gesture. |
| Le dije que me acordara. | I told him to remind me. |
| No se acordaban ya de los pormenores del suceso. | They could not then recall the details of the event. |
| Está tratando de acordarse. | He is trying to recollect. |
| Tenga la bondad de darle recuerdos de mi parte. | Kindly remember me to him. |

b. **Estar**, **quedarse**, **irse**, **marcharse**, **salirse** are also reflexive in form but not in meaning :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| No se está quieto. | He does not keep quiet. |
| Se quedaron a oscuras. | They remained in the dark. |
| Se va (or se marcha) mañana. | He is going away to-morrow. |
| Se salió el preso. | The prisoner escaped. |

c. **Antojarse** in the sense of *to long, to yearn, to desire earnestly*, takes in its conjugation the reflexive form, although in fact it is not a reflexive verb: **me antojo a veces de comer frutas**, I occasionally long to eat fruit; **ellos se antojaron esa noche de ir al teatro**, they were very desirous that night of going to the theatre; **los niños se antojarían de esa golosina si la vieran**, the children would long for that delicacy if they saw it.

d. **Antojar** when meaning *to fancy, to imagine, to believe*, is not used in the first or second person: it can only be employed in the third person singular, like the impersonal verbs :

| | |
|---|---|
| Se me antoja que ésta es una nueva broma de Pedro. | I fancy this is a new joke of Peter's. |
| Se les antojará que estamos buscándolos. | They will imagine that we are looking for them. |
| Si se te antoja venir mañana, avísame. | If a fancy takes you to come to-morrow, please let me know. |

Como se le antoje a D^a. Rosa leer el libro tendré que dárselo. If Doña Rosa takes a fancy to read the book I shall have to give it to her.

e. The verb *ser* is sometimes used with the pronominal *se* to emphasize the meaning of the sentence :

Érase una viejecita sin nada que comer. There was once a little old lady who had nothing at all to eat.

Érase un hombre a una nariz pegado. There was once a man attached to a nose.

f. With these verbs, which, though reflexive in form, are not really so in their meaning, the passive construction with *se* cannot be used in a general sense. It is correct to say :

Se cree que la epidemia cede. It is believed that the epidemic is subsiding.

But it would be ambiguous to write :

Se imagina que nadar es muy fácil. One imagines that swimming is very easy ; or, he imagines that swimming etc.

To avoid ambiguity a subject must be used with these verbs, excluding the passive construction :

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Uno se imagina que nadar es muy fácil. | } | People think that swimming is very easy. |
| La gente se imagina que nadar es muy fácil. | | |
| Nos imaginamos que nadar es muy fácil. | | |

g. When a predicative adjective is combined by means of *se* with verbs expressing existence, a subject noun or pronoun must be used to avoid ambiguity, even when the verbs are not reflexive in form :

En España se vive feliz is incorrect. We must say: En España uno vive feliz or La gente vive feliz en España (People live happily in Spain).

312.—The past participle in its variable form is, like the gerund (see § 306), often found in absolute clauses :

Terminados los preparativos, se dió principio a la obra. Once the preliminaries ended, the work was begun.

Concluída la cena, tomamos el portante. When supper was finished we went out.

313.—The invariable form appears in absolute clauses with the past indicative or the present participle of **haber** :

Llegado que hubo, presentó sus credenciales. He presented his credentials as (soon as) he arrived.

Habiendo conocido sus intenciones resolvimos no volver a asociarnos con él. Having learned his intentions, we made up our minds not to associate any longer with him.

a. Absolute clauses in which the variable form is combined with a preposition :

Después de oídas las partes resumió el juicio en pocas palabras. After having heard the parties he summed up the case in a few words.

Luego de sabida la noticia se dispuso a partir. Just after hearing the news he made ready to leave.

Antes de dadas las ocho ya estaba yo aquí. I was here before the stroke of eight.

b. Instead of the participle the infinitive may be employed in these clauses, saying **después de oír, luego de saber, antes de dar.**

314.—Passive sense implied by the preposition **para** and the variable participle :

No es para ignorada esta ingeniosa doctrina. This ingenious doctrine should not remain unknown.

No son para contadas todas mis tribulaciones. They are not to be told, all my tribulations.

In this case also the infinitive may take the place of the participle : **No es para ignorar, no son para contar.**

315.—There are in Spanish a number of participles the meaning of which instead of being passive, as in ordinary use, is obviously active. **Amado** means the person or thing which is loved ; **hallado** the person or thing which is or has been found ; but **agradecido** means *he who is grateful* ; **callado**, *he who keeps silent* ; **cansado** may mean *tired* (in a passive sense) : **me ha cansado** (he has tired me out), or

tiresome (in an active sense): **es un libro muy cansado** (it is a tiresome book). **Bebido** may be the thing which has been drunk or the person who has drunk to excess; **atropellado**, when used in a passive sense, means *run over*, but in an active sense it is the equivalent of *pushing, hasty*:

| | |
|--|--|
| El huésped está bebido. | The guest is tipsy. |
| Ha bebido mucho. | He has drunk a great deal. |
| No me gustan sus modales, es muy atropellado. | I do not like his manners, he is very pushing. |
| Fué atropellado por un automóvil. | He was run over by an automobile. |
| Mi perro es muy agrade- cido. | My dog is very grateful. |
| Ha agradecido mis fa- vores. | He has thanked me for the favours shown to him. |
| Es hombre callado. | He is a silent (not talkative) man. |
| Ha callado parte de la verdad. | He has not told the whole truth. |

a. Nacido (born), *muerto* (dead), *atrevido* (daring) are participles of the type known as 'deponentes' (deponent), because they are passive in form but active in meaning.

316.—Contrary to the usage followed in the case of the other two verbals (infinitive and gerund) the past participle does not combine with the enclitic forms of the object pronoun to form a single word with them. These forms precede or follow the auxiliary verb :

| | |
|--|---|
| Me han llamado. | They have called me. |
| Hanle ofrecido un empleo. | They have offered an office to him. |
| Séanle muy agradecidos sus favores! | May his favours be much appreciated! |
| Te han incluido en la lista. ¹ | You have been put on the list. |

¹ The use of the enclitic forms with the past participle in absolute clauses is not recommended by good authors, but instances of this

317.—The variable participle combined with *ser*, *estar*, *parecer*, may be considered as a predicative adjective and as such can be referred to only by means of the neuter forms of the pronouns :

| | |
|--|---|
| Parecen cansadas y lo están en realidad. | They seem tired, and so they are indeed. |
| ¿Están preparados los andamios? — Sí lo están. | Is the scaffolding prepared? — Yes, it is. |
| ¿Fué reconocida la deuda? — Lo fué. | Was the debt acknowledged? — It was. ¹ |

318.—*Faltar*, *to be wanting*, *to be in need of*, *to lack*, *to miss*, is used in peculiar constructions, with an appearance of reflexiveness :

| | |
|---|--|
| Me falta un libro en mi biblioteca. | A book is missing from my library. |
| Nos falta tiempo. | We have not enough time (We have no time). |
| Nos faltan tres libras esterlinas para pagar la cuenta del mes. | We are short of £3 to pay the monthly bill. |
| Me falta dinero. | I am in need of money. |
| Le falta su hermano. | He misses his brother (He is missing his brother). |
| Poco faltó para que se cayera. | He nearly fell. |
| ¿Son las diez? — Falta poco. | Is it ten o'clock? — Short of it. |

a. The pronoun used with this verb is always an indirect object, *me*, *nos*, *le*. The noun following the verb

construction are found, though they are not frequent : **Respondió . . . que, impuéstales la penitencia, podrían ser recibidos** : He answered that, once the penance was imposed on them, they might be received.

¹ It is to be observed that the use of the participles both present and past in Spanish has, to some extent, closer affinities with English usage than with the construction followed in the other Romance languages, notwithstanding the fact that the actual English ending of the present participle is not a participial inflexion but a noun-suffix.

looks like a direct object, but is in fact a subject, because the verb must agree with it :

A Juan no le faltan riquezas ni honores.

John does not lack riches or honours.

A ellos les faltó paciencia ese día.

They had no patience that day.

VOCABULARY.

acontecer, to happen.

agasajar, to receive and treat kindly.

Alberto Magno, *Albertus Magnus*, Albert the Great.

Alemania, *f.*, Germany.

aspecto, *m.*, aspect, appearance, view.

atraer, to attract, to draw.

cabaña, *f.*, hut.

cielo, *m.*, heaven.

constelación, *f.*, constellation.

descuido, *m.*, neglect, carelessness.

desear, to wish.

disposición, *f.*, disposition, inclination.

gratitud, *f.*, gratitude, thankfulness.

madera, *f.*, wood.

mágico, *adj.*, magic.

maravilloso, *adj.*, wonderful, marvellous.

peregrinación, *f.*, peregrination, pilgrimage.

pescado, *m.*, caught fish.

pescador, *m.*, fisher.

pez, *m.*, fish in general.

pico, *m.*, small amount, odd;

seis mil y pico de años, six thousand years odd; (of birds) beak, bill.

planeta, *m.*, planet.

ponderar, to extol, to exaggerate.

red, *f.*, net.

responder, to answer, to reply.

rogar, to pray.

signo, *m.*, sign, signal.

virtud, *f.*, virtue, force, quality.

Idiomatic expressions.

escaleras arriba, upstairs.

escaleras abajo, downstairs.

Me doy por vencido, I give up, I surrender.

No puedo más, I can do no more.

No pudo menos de llorar,

she could not help crying.

Dos de las ventanas dan a la calle, two of the windows face the street.

Yo no me meto con usted, I do not want to have anything to do with you.

Dar en el blanco, to hit the mark.

Ese traje le sienta bien, that dress suits her well.

No me importa eso, I do not care for that.

No importa, ya está dicho, never mind, it is said now.

319.—CONJUGATION OF *Traer*, to bring to, to carry to (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

traigo
traes
trae
traemos
traéis
traen.

Past.

traje
trajiste
trajo
trajimos
trajisteis
trajeron.

Imperfect.

traía, etc. (*regular*)

Future.

traeré, etc. (*regular*)

Future in the past.

traería, etc. (*regular*).

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

traiga
traigas
traiga
traigamos
traigáis
traigan.

Past (1st form).

trajese
trajeses
trajese
trajésemos
trajeseis
trajesen.

Past (2nd form).

trajera
trajeras
trajera
trajéramos
trajeráis
trajeran.

Future.

trajere
trajeres
trajere
trajéremos
trajereis
trajeren.

IMPERATIVE.

trae
traed.

Past participle.
traído (*regular*).

Present participle.
trayendo (*regular*).

a. Note the difference between **traer** and **llevar** :

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Traígame un libro. | Bring me a book. |
| Traiga agua para estos niños. | Bring water to these children. |
| Lleve este dinero al Banco. | Take this money to the Bank. |
| Lleve a mi hermano con usted. | Take my brother with you. |
| El viento se llevó las cartas. | The wind carried away the letters. |

b. **Traer** means to bring a thing to a place near the person who is speaking: **llevar** is to take to a place distant from the person who is speaking. **Ir a traer** means to fetch. **Vaya a traer agua para el enfermo**, fetch some water for the patient. **Argumento muy llevado y traído**, a very trite argument; a most commonplace suggestion.

EXERCISE.

Cuentan de Alberto Magno que, yendo en peregrinación de Roma a Alemania, pasó una noche a las orillas del Po, en la cabaña de un pescador. Agasajado allí muy bien, quiso el doctor probar su gratitud al huésped y le hizo y le dió un pez de madera, tan maravilloso que, puesto en la red, atraía a todos los peces vivos. No hay que ponderar la ventura del pescador con su pez mágico. Cierta día, con todo, tuvo un descuido y el pez se le perdió. Entonces se puso en camino, fué a Alemania, buscó a Alberto y le rogó que le hiciese otro pez semejante al primero. Alberto respondió que lo deseaba; mas que para hacer otro pez que tuviese todas las virtudes del antiguo, era menester esperar a que el cielo presentase idéntico aspecto y disposición en constelaciones, signos y planetas, que en la noche en que el primer pez se hizo, lo cual no podía acontecer sino dentro de seis mil y pico de años.

J. VALERA.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién iba en peregrinación de Roma a Alemania?
 ¿Dónde pasó la noche? ¿Qué es una cabaña? ¿Cerca de
 qué río quedaba la cabaña del pescador? ¿Cómo fué

tratado Alberto Magno por el pescador? ¿Por qué quiso el Doctor probar su gratitud? ¿Qué le dió al huésped? ¿De qué estaba hecho el pez? ¿Por qué atraía los otros peces? ¿Cómo llama usted en español el tejido que usan los pescadores para coger pescado? ¿Quedó contento el pescador con el regalo (present)? ¿Cómo perdió el pescador su pez de madera? ¿Qué hizo entonces? ¿Qué le pidió a Alberto? ¿Qué respondió Alberto? Si deseaba hacer otro pez semejante al primitivo ¿por qué no lo hacía? ¿Qué debía haber en el cielo para que fuera posible hacer el pez? ¿Dentro de cuánto tiempo volverían a presentarse las constelaciones en el mismo aspecto que tenían la noche en que el Doctor hizo el primer pez?

TRANSLATE.

La pequeña ciudad está por todas partes circundada¹ de huertas². Muchas sendas³ la cortan⁴ en diversas direcciones. A un lado y otro⁵ de cada senda hay una cerca⁶ de granados⁷, zarza-moras⁸, mimbres⁹ y otras plantas. En muchas sendas hay un arroyo¹⁰ cristalino a cada lado; en otras un solo arroyo. Todas ellas gozan¹¹, en primavera, verano y otoño¹², de abundante sombra¹³, merced a¹⁴ los álamos¹⁵ corpulentos¹⁶ y frondosos¹⁷ nogales¹⁸, y demás árboles de todo género que en las huertas se crían.

La tierra¹⁹ es allí tan generosa²⁰ y feraz²¹, que no puede uno imaginarse el sinnúmero²² de flores²³ y la masa de verdura²⁴ que ciñen²⁵ las márgenes²⁶ de los arroyos, esparciendo²⁷ grato y campestre²⁸ aroma. Campanillas²⁹, mosquetas³⁰, violetas³¹ moradas³² y blancas, lirios³³ y margaritas³⁴ abren allí sus cálices³⁵ y lucen³⁶ su hermosura³⁷.

El sol³⁸ radiante³⁹, que brilla⁴⁰ en el cielo despejado⁴¹ y dora⁴² el aire diáfano⁴³, hace más espléndida la escena⁴⁴. Increíble⁴⁵ multitud de pájaros la anima⁴⁶ y alegra con sus trinos⁴⁷ y gorjeos⁴⁸. En Andalucía, huyendo de la tierra de secano⁴⁹, buscando el agua y la sombra, se

refugian⁵⁰ las aves en estos oasis de regadío⁵¹, donde hay frescura⁵² y tupidas⁵³ enramadas⁵⁴.

Tales eran los sitios⁵⁵ por donde paseaba el Comendador con las dos bonitas muchachas⁵⁶. Apenas salieron⁵⁷ de la población⁵⁸ tomaron la senda que llaman *del medio*. Ellas cogían flores, se deleitaban oyendo cantar los colorines⁵⁹ o reían⁶⁰ sin saber de qué. El Comendador meditaba, sentía gran bienestar⁶¹, gozaba de todo, aunque más tranquilamente⁶² que ellas.

J. VALERA.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 surrounded. | 2 vegetable gardens, irrigated land. | 3 path. |
| 4 cross. | 5 on both sides. | 6 fence. |
| 7 pomgranate tree. | | |
| 8 bramble-berry. | 9 osier. | 10 brook. |
| 11 enjoy. | 12 autumn. | |
| 13 shade. | 14 owing to. | 15 poplar. |
| 16 stout, huge. | 17 leafy. | |
| 18 walnut-tree. | 19 earth. | 20 generous. |
| 21 fruitful, fertile. | | |
| 22 immeasurable amount. | 23 flower. | 24 mass of verdure. |
| 25 to gird. | 26 bank. | 27 spread. |
| 28 rural. | 29 bell-flower. | 30 musk-rose. |
| 31 violet. | 32 purple. | 33 lily. |
| 34 daisy. | 35 calyx. | |
| 36 display. | 37 beauty. | 38 sun. |
| 39 radiant, brilliant. | 40 shine. | |
| 41 clear. | 42 gild, tinge with gold. | 43 diaphanous. |
| 44 scene. | | |
| 45 incredible. | 46 encourages. | 47 trill. |
| 48 chirp. | 49 unirrigated land. | 50 take refuge. |
| 51 irrigation. | 52 coolness. | 53 leafy. |
| 54 groves. | 55 sites. | 56 girl. |
| 57 they had just gone out of. | | |
| 58 village. | 59 linnet. | 60 laugh. |
| 61 comfort, well-being. | 62 in a more quiet manner. | |

TRANSLATE.

— How do you do?¹ Allow me to introduce D. Pedro González Ríos from Saragossa.

— I am much pleased to see you.

— Where can we leave our horses?

— The hotel porter will take care of them. Robert, take these horses to the stables². Tell the stableman³ to give them plenty⁴ of hay⁵, but no oats⁶; they must be tired.

— Yes, sir. At what time shall I have them ready⁷?

— You need not trouble.⁸ We are going back to town in our motor car. Well, gentlemen⁹, now we must go into the lounge¹⁰ and have a good cup¹¹ of coffee. This place is supposed to be very good for the purpose.

— Very many thanks. We were beginning to feel really hungry.

— In that case you would like, perhaps, to have something more substantial. Would you like to add a couple¹² of eggs, ham¹³ and tomatoes¹⁴ to our frugal lunch¹⁵?

— They would not do any harm.

— Do they make butter¹⁶ and cheese¹⁷ in this neighbourhood?

— Yes, there is a co-operative dairy¹⁸. Every farmer¹⁹ milks²⁰ his own cows²¹, but at eight o'clock every morning the co-operative carts pass along and take all the milk²² to the great dairy, where it is duly handled²³ by experts²⁴ and made into²⁵ butter and cheese by means of scientific and very inexpensive²⁶ proceedings²⁷.

— The villagers²⁸ should be grateful to the men who organized²⁹ this great dairy on the trade union system³⁰.

— Yes, they ought to be; but they think that the profits³¹ might be increased by a more careful management³².

- ¹ ¿Cómo está usted? ² caballerizas. ³ mozo de cuadra, caballerizo. ⁴ bastante, harto. ⁵ heno. ⁶ avena. ⁷ listo.
⁸ No te afanes. ⁹ señores, caballeros. ¹⁰ salón de hotel.
¹¹ taza. ¹² par. ¹³ jamón. ¹⁴ tomate. ¹⁵ almuerzo.
¹⁶ mantequilla or manteca de vaca. ¹⁷ queso. ¹⁸ lechería cooperativa.
¹⁹ dueño de cortijo. ²⁰ ordeña. ²¹ vacas.
²² leche. ²³ debidamente tratada. ²⁴ peritos. ²⁵ convertida.
²⁶ barato. ²⁷ procedimiento. ²⁸ aldeanos. ²⁹ organizar.
³⁰ sistema cooperativo. ³¹ ganancias. ³² administración.

EXERCISE ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Son conocidas sus intenciones. Se sabe lo que desea. No han sido vendidos los libros de D. Inocencio todavía. Se ha esperado hasta hoy para dar la orden de embarque. Fué destruida por los enemigos gran parte de la ciudad. La parte más graciosa de la costa se ve desde aquí. No se diga (it must not be said) que nosotras no la respetamos. Sus obras han sido traducidas a todas las lenguas europeas. Se conjetura (conjecture) que la familia sabe ya la noticia;

pero se cree que ellos tienen esperanza de que no sea cierta (true). Se dice que habrá crisis ministerial al abrirse las Cortes (Spanish Parliament). No se oía, donde nosotros estábamos, nada de lo que decía el orador. Se camina (travel) por sierras frías (craggy, rough hills) tres días antes de llegar a la hermita (hermitage). Se da el algodón (cotton grows or is grown) en los valles templados y húmedos de la zona tórrida (torrid zone). Se cultivaba la patata entre los indios al tiempo del descubrimiento.

XXVI

THE PLACE OF THE OBJECT PRONOUNS
IN THE SENTENCE.—THE ARTICLE.—
INTERJECTIONS

320.—THE object pronouns **me, te, le, lo, la, se, nos, os, les, los, las**, when combined with each other and with a verb, follow precise rules as to the order of the sentence.

a. The form **se** must be placed before any other form, whether preceding or following the verb :

| | |
|---|---|
| Se me dice. | I am told. |
| Se te informará a su tiempo. | You will be duly informed. |
| Se les deja en libertad de elegir. | They are free to choose. |
| Se os ve muy de tarde en tarde. | You are quite a stranger. (One sees you only once in a long time.) |
| Se les dará tiempo de madurar el negocio. | Time will be given to them to think the matter over. |
| Dígaselo. | Tell it to him. |
| Tráigaseme lo que he pedido. | Let what I have asked for be brought to me. |
| Olvidarásese mi nombre antes de poco (the form 'Se te olvidará' is preferable). | You will have forgotten my name before long. |

b. **Te** and its plural **os** precede all other forms except **se**:

| | |
|--|---|
| Te lo dirán (or dirántelo). | They will tell it to you. |
| Te me vienes con un palo. | You come against me with a club. |
| Te nos vendes por amigo y no eres creído. | You pose as our friend and you are not believed. |
| Os lo comprarán sin duda. | No doubt they will buy it from you. |

c. **Le, lo, la, les, los, las** take the last place.

| | |
|--|---|
| Me lo enseña el curso na- tural del raciocinio. | The natural course of reason- ing shows it to me. |
| Me le dirás que no he recibido carta suya hace dos semanas. | You will please tell him for me that I have not had any letter from him for two weeks. |
| Enséñame lo. | Show it to me, please. |
| Dígamele (not often used out of the grammars). | Let him be told it on my account. |
| Os lo presto. | I lend it to you. |
| Déjame lo. | Leave it to me. |

THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

321.—The two languages differ somewhat in the use of the definite article, although the general rule stating that ‘the definite article is placed before a noun to show that the idea expressed by the noun has been already stated’ is applicable both to English and Spanish. ‘Thus in the fable of the wolf and the dog the two animals are introduced at first as **un lobo** and **un perro** (a wolf, a dog), and are then spoken of as **el lobo**, **el perro** (the wolf, the dog): **una noche dió un lobo con un perro; el lobo era todo huesos y pellejo, mientras que el perro estaba tan gordo como era posible estarlo**’ (one night a wolf fell in with a dog; the wolf was all skin and bones, while the dog was as fat as he could be).

322.—Yet there are in Spanish a considerable number of exceptions to this rule.

a. Nouns used in the fullest extent of their meaning require the article as a rule :

| | |
|--|--|
| El deber primero, la diversión después. | Duty before pleasure. |
| La verdad prevalecerá al fin. | Truth will at last prevail. |
| El precio de la plata sube cuando baja el del oro. | The price of silver rises when that of gold falls. |
| El temor es mal consejero. | Fear is a bad adviser. |
| Ama la gloria. | He loves glory. |

b. Yet the names of material things when taken in a general sense may be used without the article :

| | |
|---|---|
| Entra agua por la ventana. | Water is coming in through the window. |
| Ruedan piedras y lodo montaña abajo. | Stones and mud are rolling downhill. |
| Allí se encuentra oro, platino y piedras preciosas. | Gold, platinum and precious stones are found there. |

c. To designate the hour, the day of the week, the day of the month, or the number of the year the article is generally used :

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Llega mi amigo a la una. | My friend arrives at one o'clock. |
| Cierran los sábados a las doce. | They close at twelve on Saturdays. |
| Su cumpleaños es el 27 de Agosto. | Her birthday is on August 27. |
| Le conocí el año 1912. | I met him (made his acquaintance) in 1912. |

d. Before nouns expressing titles the article is required :

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| El Emperador Carlos V. | The Emperor Charles the Fifth. |
| La reina de Inglaterra. | The Queen of England. |
| El Alcalde de Valladolid. | The Mayor of Valladolid. |
| Los Condes de Florida-blanca. | The Counts of Florida-blanca. |
| El señor Romero. | Mr. Romero. |

e. No article is put before **Don, Doña, Fray, San** or **Santo**; nor before **Señor** when the person to whom it applies is directly addressed:

| | |
|--|--|
| Señor Uricoechea, ¿sabe usted quién estuvo aquí esta mañana?—No, Don Ricardo, no lo sé. | Do you know, Mr. Uricoechea, who was here this morning?—No, Don Ricardo, I don't know. |
| Estimado señor y amigo: Doña Mercedes Ruiz vive cerca de San Francisco. | My dear Sir: . . . Doña Mercedes Ruiz lives near San Francisco. |
| Fray Bartolomé de las Casas fué llamado el Apóstol de Indias. | Fray Bartolomé de las Casas was called the Apostle of the Indies. |
| Estoy leyendo la vida de San Marcos. | I am reading the life of Saint Mark. |

f. Yet with the names of the old patriarchs the article is still often used before **Santo**: **El Santo Job**; also when **Santo** precedes another title: **El Santo Apóstol, el Santo Rey**.

g. With the names of rivers and mountains the article is generally required: **el Tigris y el Eufrates, el Támesis, el Orinoco, el Chimborazo, la Silla, las Alpujarras, los Andes**.

h. Adjectives in the neuter gender used as nouns must necessarily have the article:

| | |
|--|---|
| Lo bueno de la historia es que pasa en nuestros días. | The best of the story is that it happens in our time. |
| Me gusta lo antiguo, pero no desecho lo moderno. | I like the antique, but I do not reject modernity. |

i. Compare the following expressions:

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Hablo español. | I speak Spanish. |
| Cuando sepas hablar el castellano. | When you know how to talk Castilian. |
| Habla y escribe inglés (or el inglés). | He speaks and writes English. |

k. In the formation of the genitive case one of the articles is dropped in English when the sign of the

genitive is used. The Spanish genitive case always requires the article :

El padre de la niña está de vuelta. The girl's father has returned.

El regimiento del rey pasó esta mañana por aquí. The king's regiment passed here this morning.

323. In the following instances the article is not required :

a. Before proper names :

Roberto González, de Méjico, es dueño de esta hacienda. Roberto González of Mexico owns this property.

Juan XXII fué portugués de nación. John XXII was a native of Portugal.

b. The article placed before proper names of persons, especially in the masculine, gives an unfavourable sense :

Aquí estuvo el Perico esta mañana. That fellow Peter was here this morning.

La Isabel y la Juana comparecieron ayer ante el juez. Elizabeth and Jane appeared yesterday before the judge.

c. The feminine article used with the names of actresses does not necessarily imply disrespect. Between members of a family it may be a term of endearment :

Oí cantar a la Rosa en el Real. I heard Miss Rosa sing at the Royal Theatre.

La Pepita llega hoy. Pepita arrives to-day.

d. The plural article is used with family names as in English : **Los Pérez, los Córdovas, los Osorios y Oñates y Mendinuetas y Gamboas. Las Caicedos** (the Misses Caicedo). With a few famous old Italian family names the article is used in Spanish : **el Tasso, el Ariosto, el Ticiano, el Petrarca.** Not **el Dante**, because Dante is a Christian name.

e. Proper names of countries, towns, or islands do not take the article as a rule :

Este libro trata de América. This book deals with America.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Conozco a Venezuela, vengo de China, permaneceré en Irlanda hasta conocerla mejor.</p> | <p>I know Venezuela, I am on the way from China, I shall stay in Ireland until I know it better.</p> |
|--|--|

f. Proper names preceded or followed by an adjective or adjective equivalent take the article :

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>El sencillo Don Antonio (or El sencillo de Don Antonio) consintió en dar su firma.</p> | <p>Simple Don Antonio consented to sign.</p> |
| <p>La buena María le acompañó hasta que salió del hospital.</p> | <p>Good Mary accompanied him until he left the hospital.</p> |
| <p>La Venezuela de hace cuarenta años pocos saben lo que era.</p> | <p>Few people know what Venezuela was like forty years ago.</p> |
| <p>El Ramírez de que usted me habla debe haber partido.</p> | <p>The Ramírez you mention must have left.</p> |
| <p>La Atenas de Pericles no se parece a la Atenas de hoy.</p> | <p>The Athens of Pericles is not like the Athens of today.</p> |

g. A few names of towns and countries require the article : **La Habana** (Havana), **La Coruña** (Corunna), **el Ferrol**, **el Callao**, **La Plata**, **el Paraguay**, **el Perú**, **el Canadá**, **los Estados Unidos** (United States), **el Ecuador**, **el Brasil**, **el Uruguay**, **el Congo**, **el Japón**, and most of those in which an adjective forms part of the geographical denomination : **la Nueva Guinea**, **la Guayana Inglesa**, **la América Meridional**, **los Países Bajos**, **la República Argentina** or **la Argentina**. Yet we say **Costa Rica**.

h. One may say **Egipto** or **el Egipto**, **China** or **la China**, **Indostán** or **el Indostán**. The article is sometimes interpolated by slovenly writers before nouns like **Francia**, **España**, **Inglaterra**, **Suecia**, etc. : this inelegant practice cannot be justified on the ground of good usage or additional clearness.

i. In the case of vocatives or exclamations the noun takes no article :

| | |
|--|---|
| Condesa, ¿dónde vive usted? | Countess, where do you live? |
| Venerables hermanos, la fiesta ha terminado. | Venerable brothers, the feast is at an end. |
| ¡Mala manera de acabar! | A bad ending! |

k. Nouns in apposition do not take the article unless it forms part of the noun :

| | |
|--|--|
| La serrana, joven de buen mirar. | The highland girl, a young woman of good looks. |
| La suficiencia, defecto capital del sabio a medias, lo había hecho antipático. | Self-assertion, the main fault of the mediocre scholar, has made him displeasing. |
| Napoleón, dueño de la mayor parte de Europa, era más vulnerable que el Primer Cónsul. ¹ | Napoleon, the master of the greater part of Europe, was more vulnerable than the First Consul. |
| Lope de Vega, el Fénix de los ingenios. | Lope de Vega, a Phoenix amongst the men of genius. |

l. Predicative nouns may be used without the article :

| | |
|---|--|
| Es animal peligroso de las selvas americanas. | It is a dangerous animal of the American forests. |
| Eso son tortas y pan pintado. | All that is trifling. |
| Es médico de pocas luces y cirujano de mucha sangre fría. | He is a doctor of scanty knowledge and a surgeon with much presence of mind. |

m. Nouns following a preposition in proverbial or everyday phrases do not, as a rule, take the article :

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| A fuerza de sufrimientos. | By dint of sufferings. |
| A sangre y fuego. | By fire and sword. |

¹ Yet, when the noun in apposition is qualified by an adjective in the superlative degree, the article is required as in English :

| | |
|---|--|
| Shakespeare, el más excelso de los poetas dramáticos. | Shakespeare, the most sublime of dramatic poets. |
| Tú, el mejor de los amigos. | You, the best of friends. |

| | |
|--|--|
| A campo traviesa. | Across the fields. |
| Bajo pena de multa. | Under penalty of a fine. |
| Con razón o sin ella. | Rightly or wrongly. |
| De higos a brevas. | Now and then. |
| De sabios es mudar de opinión. | Wise men change their opinion easily. |
| En tierra de cristianos. | In a Christian land. |
| Entre lobo y can. | Doubtful (between wolf and dog). |
| Entre manos. | In hand, at hand. |
| Para verdades el tiempo. | With time the truth will leak out. |
| Por mar y por tierra. | By sea and land. |
| Por amor de Dios. | For goodness' sake. |
| A ciencia y paciencia de las autoridades llevó a cabo su plan. | He carried out his plan in the face and with the connivance of the autho- rities. |

n. Yet we say *por la razón o la fuerza*, by right or might, *contra la fuerza no hay valor*, courage avails nothing against force.

o. When, depending on a verb, one of these phrases refers to a noun the article is necessarily excluded :

| | |
|--|---|
| Por razón de su enferme- dad lo licenciaron. | He was discharged on ac- count of illness. |
| A causa de la demora se suspendió la represen- tación. | The performance was dis- continued on account of the delay. |

p. According to Cuervo 'it is contrary to the genius of the language to use the article after *a* when this preposition is used to signify instrumentality'.

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Trabajado a cincel. | Chisel work. |
| Duelo a espada. | Duel with the sword. |

q. The employment or the absence of the article may give a different meaning to the phrase :

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Está en cama Luis. | Lewis is ill in bed. |
| Luis está en la cama. | Lewis is in bed. |
| Da la razón de su dicho. | He gives a reason for his sayings. |

Dió razón de su fortuna. He rendered account of his fortune (figuratively: he squandered his fortune).

r. Note the following idiomatic expressions where the article is omitted:

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| Voy a casa. | I am going home. |
| Sale de casa temprano. | He goes out early. |
| Está siempre en casa. | He is always at home. |
| Anda por casa de D^a. Mercedes. | He is at Doña Mercedes'. |
| Va de caza: | He is going hunting. |

INTERJECTIONS.

324.—The following are the most usual interjections in Spanish. They have no meaning outside their interjectional ones:

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| ¡ Oh ! ¡ Ah ! | Oh ! Ah ! |
| ¡ Ay ! | Oh ! alas ! ah ! |
| ¡ Ha ! | Ha ! |
| ¡ Ea ! (encouragement). | Come on ! |
| ¡ Huy ! | Be careful. |
| ¡ Ole ! ¡ Hola ! | Halloo ! |
| ¡ Puf ! (aversion). | Ugh ! Fie ! |
| ¡ Bah ! (contempt, affected surprise). | Pshaw ! |
| ¡ Ca ! ¡ quiá ! | To express doubt or to contradict. |

325.—Some words of independent meaning are used as interjections:

| | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| ¡ Cielos ! | Heavens ! |
| ¡ Dios mío ! | Dear me ! |
| ¡ Ojalá ! | Would to heaven ! |
| ¡ Vaya ! | Well ! really ! |
| ¡ Toma ! | Indeed ! |
| ¡ Anda ! | Go ! go away ! |
| ¡ Dale ! | So ! Again ! |

326.—Adjectives used as interjections require the preposition *de* after them :

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| ¡Pobre de mí! | Ah me! Poor me! |
| ¡Desgraciado de ti! | Unfortunate that you are! |
| ¡Necio de mí! | Fool that I was! |

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| absorto, <i>adj.</i> , abstracted, absorbed in thought. | novelista, <i>m.</i> , novelist. |
| aficionado, <i>adj.</i> , given to; <i>m.</i> , amateur. | parar, to stop; venir a parar, to come to. |
| afirmar, to affirm, to state. | pensativo, <i>adj.</i> , thoughtful. |
| bajo, <i>adv.</i> , in a low voice. | permanecer, to remain. |
| biblioteca, <i>f.</i> , library. | por aquí, around here. |
| conque, <i>conj.</i> , so, then. | publicar, to publish. |
| deshacerse, to disappear. | recordar, to recall, to remember. |
| despacho, <i>m.</i> , office, message. | revolver, to turn up; to search, turning things up; rummage among. |
| dramático, <i>adj.</i> , dramatic. | silencioso, <i>adj.</i> , silent. |
| entregado, <i>adj.</i> , given to, delivered. | sonreír, to smile. |
| escondrijo, <i>m.</i> , corner, hiding-place. | subir, to go up; subirse, to get on, to mount. |
| estante, <i>m.</i> , stand, shelf. | tejuelo, <i>m.</i> , printer's title. |
| extraño, <i>adj.</i> , strange. | temporada, <i>f.</i> , season, time. |
| golpe, <i>m.</i> , blow; dar golpes en el suelo, to strike on the floor. | usar, to use, to make use of. |
| ¡hola! <i>interj.</i> , halloo! | valer, to be worth. |
| | volumen, <i>m.</i> , volume. |

327.—*Idiomatic phrases* :—

Volver means sometimes to do a thing again :

Volver a llenar, to refill.

Volver a copiar, to recopy.

Volver a hacer una cosa, to do a thing again.

Volver a las andadas, to start again with an old habit, especially a bad one.

Andar a vueltas de algo, to be struggling for something.

No hay que darle vueltas, talking is of no use.

Andar a obscuras, to walk in the dark, to be in the dark.

328. CONJUGATION OF **Hacer**, to make (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| <i>Present.</i> | hago, haces, etc.—(regular). |
| <i>Past.</i> | hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron. |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | hacía, etc. (regular). |
| <i>Future.</i> | haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán. |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> | haría, harías, haría, haría- mos, haríais, harían. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>Present.</i> | haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan. |
| <i>Past (1st and 2nd forms).</i> | hiciese or hiciera, hicieses or hicieras, etc. |
| <i>Future.</i> | hiciera, hicieres, etc. |

IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Past participle.</i> | hecho. |
| <i>Present participle.</i> | haciendo (regular). |

329. CONJUGATION OF **Andar**, to go, to walk (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | ando, etc. (regular). |
| <i>Past.</i> | anduve anduviste anduvo anduvimos anduvisteis anduvieron. |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | andaba, etc. (regular). |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | ande, etc. (regular). |
| <i>Past (1st form).</i> | anduviese anduvieses anduviese anduviésemos anduvieseis anduviesen. |
| <i>Past (2nd form).</i> | anduviera anduvieras anduviera |

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.
 andaré, etc. (*regular*).

Future in the past.
 andaría, etc. (*regular*).

anduviéramos
 anduvierais
 anduvieran.

Future.
 anduviere
 anduvieres
 anduviere
 anduviéremos
 anduviereis
 anduvieren

IMPERATIVE.

anda (*regular*)
 andad (*regular*).

Past participle.
 andado (*regular*).

Present participle.
 andando (*regular*).

330.

CONJUGATION OF Oír, to hear.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

oigo, oyes, oye, oímos (*regular*),
 oís (*regular*), oyen

Past.

oí, etc. (*regular*).

Imperfect.

oía, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

oiré, etc. (*regular*).

Future in the past.

oiría, etc. (*regular*).

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

oiga, oigas, oiga, oigamos,
 oigáis, oigan.

Past (1st and 2nd forms).

oyese or oyera, etc. (*regular*).

Future.

oyere, etc. (*regular*).

IMPERATIVE.

Past participle.

oye; oíd (*regular*).

Present participle.

oído (*regular*).

oyendo (*regular*).

331.

CONJUGATION OF Ver, to see.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Veo, ves, etc. (*regular*).

Past.

vi, etc. (*regular*).

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían. |
| <i>Future.</i> | veré, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> | vería, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
| <i>Present.</i> | vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean. |
| <i>Past (1st and 2nd forms).</i> | viese or viera, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Future.</i> | viere, vieres, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| IMPERATIVE. | |
| <i>Past participle.</i> | visto. |
| <i>Present participle.</i> | viendo (<i>regular</i>). |
| a. | CONJUGATION OF Dar, to give. |
| INDICATIVE. | |
| <i>Present.</i> | doy, das, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Past.</i> | di, diste, dió, dimos, disteis, dieron. |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | daba, dabas, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Future.</i> | daré, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> | daría, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
| <i>Present.</i> | Dé, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Past (1st and 2nd forms).</i> | diese or diera, diese or die- ras, diese or diera, diése- mos or diéramos, dieseis or dierais, diesen or dieran. |
| <i>Future.</i> | diere, dieres, etc. |
| IMPERATIVE. | |
| <i>Past participle.</i> | dado (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Present participle.</i> | dando (<i>regular</i>). |

EXERCISE.

—¿Qué quiere decir esto de Azorín?

Rafael ha cogido un libro del estante, ha leído en el tejuelo: La Bruyère, *Les caractères* y luego bajo: Azorín, y se ha vuelto hacia D. Pascual para preguntarle qué significa esta palabra.

— Es, dice D. Pascual, un escritor que hubo aquí hace cincuenta o sesenta años. Yo no le conocí; pero se lo he oído contar a los viejos.

— ¿Era de aquí ese escritor? pregunta Rafael.

— No sé, contesta D. Pascual; creo que sí; este libro debió de ser de él.

— Y ¿cómo lo tiene usted?

— Probablemente él tendría alguna biblioteca que, con el tiempo, se desharía, y este libro vino a parar aquí.

— Y ¿dice usted que se llamaba Azorín?

— No; el nombre era otro; esto era un pseudónimo. Se llamaba . . .

Don Pascual permanece silencioso, absorto, un momento, tratando de sacar de los escondrijos de su cerebro el nombre de este escritor; pero no lo consigue.

— No recuerdo, dice al fin, cansado de pensar; pero este nombre es el que usaba siempre en sus escritos.

Rafael que es un poco aficionado a la literatura se queda pensativo.

— Es extraño, dice. ¿De modo que en este pueblo hemos tenido un escritor?

— Yo creo que tenía antes por aquí uno de los libros que publicó, dice D. Pascual.

— ¡Hombre! exclama Rafael. ¿Conque publicaba libros? Entonces era un escritor de consideración . . .

Don Pascual se sube a una silla y va registrando los volúmenes del estante. Rafael también se sube a otra silla y revuelve libros grandes y chicos. De pronto entra D. Andrés, se para un momento en el centro del despacho, mira a D. Pascual, mira a Rafael, sonrío, da unos golpecitos con el bastón en el suelo y dice:

— ¡Bravo! ¡Bravo! Hoy están ustedes entregados a la literatura . . .

— ¡Hola! D. Andrés, dice Rafael.

— Estábamos buscando un libro de aquel escritor que hubo aquí que se llamaba Azorín, añade D. Pascual.

— ¿Azorín? ¿Azorín? pregunta D. Andrés que no ha oído hablar sino muy vagamente de este personaje. Sí, sí, un escritor que vivió aquí hace muchos años. Sí, señor; sí, sí . . .

Y da dos o tres golpecitos más en el suelo con el bastón.

— ¿Usted recuerda, D. Andrés, qué libros son los que publicó este escritor? pregunta D. Pascual.

— ¿Dice usted libros? replica D. Andrés. Pero ese Azorín, ¿no fué autor dramático?

— No, contesta D. Pascual; yo aseguraría que fué novelista. Años atrás andaba por aquí un libro de él que yo le vi leer algunas veces a mi padre; pero debe de haberse perdido.

— Sí, sí, afirma D. Andrés; yo recuerdo haber visto aquí algunas veces ese libro. Su padre de usted decía que él había conocido a Azorín . . .

— Mi padre era de su misma edad, dice D. Pascual; él me decía que había hablado con él muchas veces en el jardín del Casino Viejo.

— Pero ¿vivía aquí siempre? pregunta Rafael.

— No, contesta D. Pascual; su familia sí vivía aquí; pero él pasaba largas temporadas en Madrid y solía venir al pueblo los veranos.

— Yo tengo idea, observa D. Andrés, de que vivía en la calle de la Fuente, en la casa que hace esquina a la del Espejo.

— No, no, contesta D. Pascual, no, él vivía en la calle de los Huertos, en la casa que es hoy de D. Leandro . . .

— No es eso lo que yo le oí a D. Frutos, que le trató también mucho, replica D. Andrés. D. Frutos decía que él vivió en la calle de la Fuente, donde hoy vive D. Bartolomé, el médico . . . (*To be continued.*)

TRANSLATE.

Azorín is the assumed name (*pseudónimo*) of José Martínez Ruiz, a Spanish writer, born at Yecla, in Murcia, in 1876. He is very extensively known in Spain and Spanish America and amongst literary men of all European countries. He has written novels, critical and historical essays (*ensayos*), and a series (*serie*) of curious books aiming at (*que tienen por objeto*) the description of life in ancient (*la vieja*) and contemporary (*contemporánea*) Spain.

In the short sketch (*bosquejo*) that we have given here he tries to describe in a humorous way the manner in which his popularity will begin to disappear in fifty or sixty years from now. The most respectable personalities of the small town where he was born would not be able (*capaces*) to tell, in half a century, whether Azorín wrote novels, poems, or dramas. They will not be sure whether his name was Azorín or Martínez, and there will be some doubts concerning the existence of two authors who were known to the literary world under the name of Azorín, when, in effect, there was only one.

This, of course, is a very modest view of the writer's real merits (*méritos*). He is a very well-known Spanish author, and although we cannot say that his name will live for centuries, because literary reputations are very uncertain (*inciertos*) values (*valores*), yet we believe we are justified in saying (*podemos en justicia decir*) that his claims (*derechos*) to immortality are supported (*confirmados, apoyados*) by very substantial (*sustancioso, sólido*) work and by the number and the quality of the ideas that he has tried to spread (*divulgar*) in his country.

TRANSLATE.

Un caballero notorio¹ por su avaricia² tenía tres hijos, uno de los cuales era de buen natural³, pero atolondrado⁴. Cuando se veía en dificultades se excusaba⁵ diciendo que

estaba tratando de conocer la vida. Su padre vivía tan fastidiado⁶ con su prodigalidad⁷ que resolvió desheredarle⁸. Sus amigos intercedieron⁹ en su favor, pero sus esfuerzos¹⁰ resultaron¹¹ vanos.¹²

Cuando el viejo caballero sintió aproximarse su fin, llamó a sus hijos y les dijo: 'Dejo a mi hijo Juan toda mi hacienda¹³ y le deseo que sea frugal¹⁴'. Juan, en tono adolorido,¹⁵ como es usual en tales ocasiones, le rogó al cielo que prolongara la vida de su padre y le diera salud para continuar gozando de la manda¹⁶.

El padre dijo en seguida: 'Dejo a mi hijo Diego (James) mi dinero que monta¹⁷ a cuatro mil libras' (pounds sterling). '¡Ah! padre mío,' dijo Diego, naturalmente muy afligido¹⁸, 'quiera el cielo darte vida y salud para que goces tú mismo de la manda.' El padre, dirigiéndose en seguida al manirroto¹⁹, le dijo: 'Por lo que hace a²⁰ ti, Ricardo (Richard), tú nunca llegarás a ser nada. Nunca serás rico. Te dejo un chelín²¹ para que te compres un cabestro²².' 'Ah, padre mío,' dijo Ricardo con voz trístisima, 'quiera el cielo concederte²³ vida y salud para que goces tú mismo de la manda'.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| ¹ notorious, known. | ² avarice. | ³ good-natured. | ⁴ frivolous. |
| ⁵ excuse oneself. | ⁶ annoyed. | ⁷ prodigality. | ⁸ disinherit. |
| ⁹ intercede. | ¹⁰ effort. | ¹¹ result. | ¹² vain. |
| ¹³ estate. | ¹⁴ frugal, economical. | ¹⁵ sorrowful. | ¹⁶ gift. |
| ¹⁷ amounts. | ¹⁸ in great affliction. | ¹⁹ spendthrift (literally, leaky hands). | ²⁰ as regards. |
| ²¹ shilling. | ²² halter. | ²³ grant. | |

XXVII

WORD ORDER

332.—THE position of the different parts of speech in the sentence does not follow strict rules in any language; much less so in Spanish, the syntax of which is remarkable for its looseness. The direct or regular order of the words should be as follows: the article, the noun (nominative),

the adjective, the verb, and the object. The adverbs modifying the adjective are generally placed before it, and those modifying the verb may precede or follow, except **no**, which is always placed before the verb. **El hombre honrado cumple puntualmente las más insignificantes promesas que llegare a hacer**, the honest man fulfils punctually the most insignificant promises he may make. . This is the regular or direct order of the sentences, which, except as regards the position of the adjective with respect to the noun, is the same in English and Spanish.

333.—There are, however, numerous deviations from this regular order.

a. The article always precedes the noun to which it refers. One or more adjectives connected or not by a conjunction or by other parts of speech may intervene between the article and the noun: **el viento**, the wind; **el frío viento**, the cold wind; **el continuo y desapacible viento del Este**, the uninterrupted and unpleasant East wind; **la bien conocida y no menos tierna historia de María**, the well-known and not less touching history of María. Even adjective equivalents may be placed between the article and the noun: '**La su para ellos mal andante caballería,**' but this would now sound affected except in poetry.

b. The article used to be put before possessive adjectives: this practice, which has disappeared from common usage, survives still in the Lord's Prayer: **Santificado sea el tu nombre**, hallowed be Thy name; **venga a nos el tu reino**, Thy kingdom come.

c. The article may be placed after the noun when used with proper names to which an adjective is added to denote a difference between persons or things of the same denomination: **Carlos el Temerario**, Charles the Bold; **Felipe el Hermoso**, Philip the Handsome; **Carlos el Hechizado**, Charles the Bewitched.

d. Demonstrative adjectives are regularly placed before the noun: *estas casas, estos soberbios edificios, aquella insuperable bondad suya* (that unsurpassable kindness of his); but they may be placed after the noun for the sake of emphasis: *el niño éste da mucho que hacer*, this boy here gives much trouble; *se habla todavía de la mujer aquella*, they still talk of that famous woman. Note that the graphic accent is required in this case.

e. Possessive adjectives precede the noun. *Mi destino*, my destiny; *sus grandes deseos*, his vehement wishes. They may follow the noun for the sake of emphasis, and in that case they take the complete form which characterizes the pronoun: *éste es el libro mío*, this is my book; *en ese barrio quedan las casas suyas*, his houses are situated in that quarter.

f. Cardinal numerals always precede the noun: *Dos hijos y cuatro hijas*, two sons and two daughters; *ciento dos muertos y doscientos cincuenta heridos*, one hundred and two dead and two hundred and fifty wounded.

g. Ordinals may either precede or follow the noun; we must necessarily say *el primer hombre* (when referring to Adam), *el primer Ministro*, the Prime Minister, but we can choose between *el primer capítulo* or *el capítulo primero*, *la tercera vez* or *la vez tercera*.

h. *Que, quien, el que, el cual* follow the noun to which they refer: *la casa que vemos de aquí*, the house we see from here; *fuí a ver al Ministro, quien me asegura que el peligro ha desaparecido*, I have been to see the Minister, who assures me that the danger has disappeared.

i. In interrogative clauses the relative (which in such cases bears the graphic accent) may be placed at the beginning of the sentence unless preceded by a preposition:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ¿ Qué dice el diario ? | What does the newspaper say ? |
| ¿ Quién trajo la carta ? | Who brought the letter ? |
| ¿ Para qué me llamas ? | What do you call me for ? |
| ¿ De quién tiene usted la noticia ? | From whom have you the news ? |

k. The adjective, as a rule, follows the noun it qualifies: **Días oscuros fueron esos para una raza amedrentada por supersticiones numerosas**, those were dark days for a race scared by numerous superstitions.

l. The following exceptions should be borne in mind:

Adjectives implying an essential or inseparable quality of the noun to which they refer are generally placed before it: **mansas ovejas, negra noche, azul espacio** (meaning the blue sky), **sus conocidas intenciones**, his undisguised intentions; **los inveterados vicios de la monarquía**, the deep-rooted vices of the monarchy.

m. Adjectives of very general meaning may also precede the noun: **gran país; buena apariencia** (good appearance); **malas maneras** (bad manners); **útiles y nuevos descubrimientos** (useful and new discoveries).

n. With proper nouns the adjective precedes, unless it be used with the article to differentiate between persons of the same name: **el sarcástico Marcial; el pobre Verlaine; el ambicioso Carlos; el turbio Magdalena**, the muddy Magdalena; **el proceloso Cántabro**, the stormy Bay of Biscay; **el rubio Tíber**, the reddish Tiber; **el azul Danubio**, the blue Danube. Though **la bella Francia** is correct, yet we say **la Francia inmortal, la Grecia sofística y pendenciera** (sophistical and quarrelsome Greece).

o. Adjectives modified by adverbs or adverb equivalents should follow the noun: **montañas tan abruptas como solitarias**, mountains as precipitous as they are solitary.

The expression **tan abruptas como solitarias montañas** is, however, found in poetry or in elevated prose.

p. Very often one adjective precedes and another follows the noun in conformity with the foregoing rules. **Tiene lágrimas el fondo de su gran mirada azul**, there are tears in the depths of her large blue eyes.

q. The adverb is placed before the adjective or adverb qualified by it: **muy bueno, demasiado rico** (too rich), **perfectamente bien, no tan mal** (not so badly), **mucho mejor** (much better). It may follow or precede the verb: **Usted sabe muy bien . . .**, or **muy bien sabe usted . . .**, you know very well; **aguarda ansiosamente** (or **ansiosamente aguarda**) **noticias de su hija**, she is anxiously awaiting news of her daughter; **tarde acordaste** (or **acordaste tarde**), it was late when you noticed it.

r. **No** always precedes the verb, the adjective, or the adverb it qualifies: **Y no lloramos más en aquel día**, and we did not weep any longer that day; **no muy triste**, not very sad; **no indigno de figurar al lado de los mejores**, not unworthy to be placed alongside of the best; **no mujer sino ángel**, not a woman but an angel.

334.—*Elements of the sentence.* The regular order of the different parts of the sentence is in Spanish the same as in English. **El ambiente está suave como una muselina**, the surrounding air is soft like muslin. **El jaguar destruye el ganado**, the jaguar destroys the herd.

a. When the object is expressed by a noun, it is customary to place it after the verb:

Escribió novelas y cuentos. He wrote novels and short stories.

Presenció una larga serie de triunfos en la pista. He witnessed a long procession of turf triumphs.

Oigamos a los gramáticos. Let us listen to the grammarians.

Despertaron al carcelero. They awoke the gaoler.

b. When a direct and an indirect object are governed by the same verb, the direct object comes first if both are nouns or if one of them is the prepositional form of a pronoun :

| | |
|---|---|
| Pedir peras al olmo. | To expect pears on elm-trees (to ask for the unattainable). |
| Dió un libro al mejor estudiante. | He gave a book to his best pupil. |
| Entregue esta carta al destinatario. | Deliver this letter, please, to the addressee. |
| Di mi palabra a usted. | I gave you my word. |

335.—Yet in poetry, in elevated prose, or in familiar conversation the order implied by the preceding rules is often altered :

| | |
|---|--|
| Un hombre conozco, vecino de Lérida, que posee el secreto. | I know a man, a resident of Lérida, who has the secret. |
| Temas de dolor espiritual, Quevedo los convierte en temas de escarnio. | Topics of spiritual affliction are turned by Quevedo into matters of jest. |
| Diré a usted la verdad. | I will tell you the truth. |
| La mujer y la tela no la cates a la candela. | Test neither women nor cloth by fire. |

336.—If the direct object is represented by a noun and the indirect one by a pronoun without preposition the latter is placed before the verb or may follow it immediately, combining with the verb to make a single word :

| | |
|---|--|
| Le contó (or Contóle) una historia para tenerlo tranquilo. | He told him a story to keep him quiet. |
|---|--|

a. A peculiarity of Spanish is the redundant use of the indirect form of the pronoun in sentences of this kind :

| | |
|--|---|
| Le di a la señora el pañuelo que había dejado caer (Di a la Sra. el pañuelo is no less permissible and has the same meaning). | I gave the lady the handkerchief she had dropped. |
|--|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Lo que le dije a usted (or lo que dije). | What I told you. |
| Le ofrecieron un empleo a Juan (or Ofrecieron un empleo a Juan). | They offered a post to John. |
| Es preciso que a la sociedad se la (or le) dé una satisfacción. | It is necessary to offer an apology to society. |
| ¿No podemos decir que a los viajeros franceses les debemos la gratitud de que hayan sentido la soberana belleza del Guadarrama? | May we not say that we owe a debt of gratitude to the French travellers inspired by the sublime beauty of the Guadarrama? |

b. With the direct object this construction may only be adopted when the second element is a prepositional pronoun :

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Llamaron a ella primero. | They called her first. |
| Le conocí a usted demasiado tarde. | I knew you too late. |

c. It would be wrong (although it is heard now and then) to say: **La llamaron a Juana primero, Lo conocí a Pedro en casa de usted.**

d. There is yet another redundant use of the indirect form of the pronoun which is called the superfluous dative (*dativo superfluo*) by the grammarians. It serves to emphasize the meaning of the sentence in which it is employed, and hence very often it is not really superfluous :

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Me temo que os engañéis. | I am afraid you are mistaken. |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|

Temo que os engañéis would mean literally the same, but the insertion of **me** emphasizes the fear.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| Se bebió la leche de un tirón. (The indirect object se is added to imply good appetite and enjoyment.) | He drank the milk at a draught. |
|--|---------------------------------|

e. It should be noted that the verb is not reflexive, although the form is quite similar to the verbs of this type

(Nos comimos todo el pan que hallamos, we ate all the bread we found).

f. The superfluous dative is also employed with the reflexive verbs of the genuine type :

Se me murió mi hijo. I have lost my son.

The expression **murió mi hijo** or **se murió mi hijo** does not convey the meaning of actuality that the use of the superfluous dative implies.

Se me durmió el niño en los brazos. The child went to sleep in my arms.

In this instance, as we have remarked before (see § 88), the indirect object is used to imply possession (**los brazos**, my arms).

337.—When both the indirect and direct objects are pronouns, the order of the sentence is governed by the rules given in § 320 :

Me lo dijo (or Díjomelo). He said it to me.

No me lo repita, por favor. Do not repeat it to me, please.

Nos la trajeron medio muerta. They brought her half dead to us.

Te me das por vencido. You surrender to me.

338.—The pronominal forms may be placed before the verb or after it at the beginning of a clause or a sentence (see § 60) :

Suplicóme (or Me suplicó) que lo acompañara. He begged me to accompany him.

a. They cannot be placed after the verb when it is preceded by **no**, nor at the beginning of subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunction **que** or by the relatives in general.

No me dijo que lo supiera. He did not tell me he knew it.

No encontré quien me guiara. I did not find anybody to lead me.

No me importa. I do not care, I do not mind.

No los conocí ni los conozco. I did not, nor do I, know them.

b. They must always follow (except in poetry) the imperative and optative forms (not preceded by a negation or by *que*):

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Tráigame un diario de la mañana. | Bring me a morning paper. |
| Sépanlo todos los interesados. | Let all concerned know it. |
| Mandadlos poner en libertad. | Give orders to set them free. |
| Idos de aquí. | Go away from here. |
| Amaos ¹ los unos a los otros. | Love each other. |
| Que los saquen de aquí. | Let them be taken out of here. |
| No se lo garantice. | Do not go security for it. |

c. The infinitive and present participle, with or without negation, now invariably take the pronominal forms at the end:

| | |
|--|--|
| No sabiéndolo a fondo resolvió no decirlo. | Not knowing it thoroughly he made up his mind not to say it. |
| Ignorarlo es acaso lo mejor. | Not to know it is perhaps best. |

339.—In some cases it appears as though the meaning of the sentence were unaffected by using the pronominal forms either before or after the principal verb or after the infinitive governed by it: *vinieron a encontrarme* (they came to meet me) means exactly the same as *me vinieron a encontrar* or *viniéronme a encontrar*. *Quiero saberlo, lo quiero saber, quiérollo saber* are equivalent expressions. Analogy has made a single grammatical element of the two verbs, and the verb used transitively communicates its character to the verb used intransitively. But this alternative is not permissible when the infinitive is a verb used intransitively: *vilo salir* or *lo vi salir* is correct, but *vi salirlo* is not countenanced by grammar or by usage.²

¹ Note that this imperative form, in all verbs except *ir*, loses the final *d* when *os* is added to it. See § 60 *a*.

² On going more deeply into this peculiarity of Spanish syntax, we may notice that the sentences in which the three different forms can be used indiscriminately are those formed by verbs which govern an infinitive

a. The reflexive verbs admit of this double or triple construction both with the infinitive and the gerund: **Quiero acostarme, me quiero acostar**, I want to go to bed; **Estoy divirtiéndome, me estoy divirtiendo, estoyme divirtiendo**, I am amusing myself.

b. CONJUGATION OF **Poder**, *to be able* (irregular).

INDICATIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | puedo, puedes, puede, podemos (<i>regular</i>), podéis (<i>regular</i>), pueden. |
| <i>Past.</i> | pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron. |
| <i>Imperfect.</i> | podía, etc. (<i>regular</i>). |
| <i>Future.</i> | podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podréis, podrán. |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> | podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, podrían. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | pueda, puedas, pueda, podamos (<i>regular</i>), podáis (<i>regular</i>), puedan. |
| <i>Past (1st form).</i> | pudiese, pudieses, etc. |
| <i>Past (2nd form).</i> | pudiera, pudieras, etc. |
| <i>Future.</i> | puidere, pudieses, etc. |

IMPERATIVE (is lacking).

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Past participle.</i> | podido. |
| <i>Present participle.</i> | pudiendo. |

either without any preposition or by means of the preposition **a**, which implies a transitive meaning, or **de**, which occasionally may have the same character :

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| Venimos a verlo, or Lo venimos a ver. | We are coming to see you. |
| Acabo de saberlo, or Lo acabo de saber. | I have just heard of it. |
| Dejaron de molestarte, or Te dejarón de molestar. | They gave up annoying you. |

With other prepositions the case is not so obvious. We may say **Empezó por decirme**, but less acceptable is **Me empezó por decir**, though it is heard sometimes.

VOCABULARY.

apretar, to press, to urge.
 asegurar, to fix; to affirm.
 ciencia, *f.*, science, know-
 ledge; a *ciencia cierta*,
 with positive certainty.
 confundir, to confuse, to
 confound.
 convicción, *f.*, conviction.
 definitivo, *adj.*, definite; en
 definitiva, in fine, sum-
 ming up.
 desquitarse, to get even
 with, to take revenge.
 dolido, *adj.*, sorry, sorrow-
 ful, chagrined.
 esfuerzo, *m.*, effort.
 firmar, to sign.
 gafas, *f. pl.*, spectacles.
 guardar, to keep; se guar-
 da en el bolsillo, he puts
 in his pocket.
 herrador, *m.*, farrier.
 huerto, *m.*, orchard.

infructuoso, *adj.*, fruitless.
 membrillo, *m.*, quince;
 quince-tree.
 nariz, *f.*, nose.
 obrar, to act.
 opinar, to be of opinion.
 periódico, *m.*, newspaper,
 journal, periodical.
 poesía, *f.*, poetry, a poem.
 ponerse mal con alguno, to
 be at odds with some-
 body.
 profundo, *adj.*, deep.
 prosa, *f.*, prose.
 recitar, to recite.
 reloj, *m.*, clock, watch.
 respetar, to respect.
 sonar, to strike, to sound.
 tornar, to turn; tornar a
 decir, to say again.
 trance, *m.*, emergency, diffi-
 culty.
 verso, *m.*, verse.

EXERCISE (end of the preceding one).

Don Fulgencio entra.

— ¡Caramba! (strange!), exclama D. Fulgencio. Les veo a ustedes discutiendo terriblemente.

— Usted sabe, D. Fulgencio, ¿ dónde vivió Azorín? le pregunta D. Pascual.

— ¡Orden, orden! exclama D. Fulgencio asegurándose las gafas sobre la nariz. Ante todo, ¿ se refieren (refer to) ustedes a un escritor que hubo en este pueblo que se llamaba así?

— Sí, señor, contesta D. Pascual, estábamos aquí diciendo si este Azorín era novelista o autor dramático . . .

— ¡Orden, orden! torna a repetir D. Fulgencio. Conviene no confundir a este escritor que se firmaba así, con otro que hubo años después y que escribió algunas obras

para el teatro. Yo tengo entendido que Azorín estuvo en algunos periódicos de Madrid y que, además, publicó un libro de versos.

— ¿Dice usted de versos? pregunta Rafael, que ha escrito algunas poesías en un semanario de la provincia.

— Sí, señor, de versos, afirma con una profunda convicción D. Fulgencio.

— Entonces, ese libro de versos ¿será el que andamos buscando aquí?

— Perdón, dice sonriendo D. Pascual, yo respeto las opiniones de ustedes; pero creo que el libro que yo he visto años atrás era de prosa.

— No, señor, no, afirma con la misma convicción de antes D. Fulgencio. Ese libro es de versos. Yo le he tenido muchas veces en mis manos.

— Mire usted, D. Fulgencio, que yo me acuerdo muy bien de lo que he visto, se atreve a decir D. Pascual.

— ¡Caramba! exclama D. Fulgencio, dolido de que se pongan en duda sus palabras. ¡Si estaré yo seguro de que eran versos, cuando llegué a aprenderme algunos de memoria!

Si le aprietan un poco, este señor es capaz de hacer un esfuerzo y recitar una poesía de Azorín; pero D. Pascual, que le respeta, no llega a ponerle en este trance. Don Pascual se contenta con volverse hacia D. Andrés y preguntarle:

— Y usted ¿qué opina? ¿Recuerda usted si era de versos o de prosa el libro de Azorín?

— ¡Hombre! exclama D. Andrés que no quiere disgustar a D. Pascual ni ponerse mal con D. Fulgencio, y que en definitiva no ha visto nunca la obra de Azorín. ¡Hombre! Yo tengo un cierto recuerdo de que era prosa; pero al mismo tiempo recuerdo también haber oído recitar algo de Azorín así como versos . . .

Rafael, durante esta breve discusión, ha continuado buscando el libro en los estantes.

— ¿No lo encuentra usted? le pregunta D. Pascual.

— No, contesta Rafael, pero me voy a llevar éste.

Y se guarda un libro en el bolsillo, para desquitarse de sus pesquisas infructuosas.

Un reloj suena las cuatro.

— ¿Adónde vamos esta tarde? dice D. Fulgencio. ¿A la Solana o al huerto del Herrador?

— Iremos al huerto y veremos cómo marchan los membrillos, contesta D. Andrés.

Y todos salen.

AZORÍN.

CONVERSATION.

¿Quién es Azorín? ¿Dónde nació? ¿En qué año nació? ¿Cuál es su verdadero nombre? ¿Qué ha escrito? ¿Es conocido en España? ¿En qué otros países es conocido? Según él ¿es probable que la posteridad lo olvide? ¿Sabían los caballeros que figuran en este diálogo quién era Azorín? ¿Lo sabían a ciencia cierta? ¿Ha escrito dramas el Señor Martínez Ruiz? ¿Ha escrito poemas? ¿Qué libros ha escrito?

¿Adónde fueron los del diálogo terminada la discusión sobre las obras de Azorín? ¿Qué iban a ver al huerto del Herrador? ¿Qué es un membrillo? ¿La conoce usted? ¿A qué fruta se parece?

TRANSLATE.

Cervantes' penury.

For the moment Cervantes was condemned¹ to continue his tedious² routine work³—making up⁴ his books, having his accounts checked⁵ by the Treasury⁶ at Madrid. The personal note is seldom audible⁷ in the official record⁸ of his doings⁹, but there are signs that he was in very low water¹⁰ in the year 1590, when he thought of leaving Spain. On July 14 he empowered¹¹ his wife and his sister Magdalena—both resident in Madrid at this time—to collect¹² all manner of debts owing to him. He needed¹³

all the money he could scrape together¹⁴. The Administration¹⁵, though remiss¹⁶ in paying its servants, was punctilious¹⁷ in examining their accounts; though their salaries were in arrears¹⁸, they were expected to make long journeys, and to pay all incidental expenses, without drawing upon¹⁹ the public funds²⁰ which passed through (*por*) their hands. The thing could not be done. Cervantes was zealous²¹ enough as a commissary²², but he had no head²³ for figures²⁴ and the unmethodical²⁵ man had to deal²⁶ with complex²⁷, confused²⁸ entries²⁹, which might have puzzled³⁰ a trained³¹ accountant³². He was constantly occupied in producing³³ his vouchers³⁴; he had before him the prospect of going to Madrid to have his accounts examined, and when the time for this ordeal³⁵ came (in December 1590) he empowered a substitute³⁶ to act for him. Meanwhile he was in a state of poverty³⁷ extreme. One little fact³⁸ speaks volumes.³⁹ On November 8, 1590, he needed some common cloth⁴⁰ to cover his nakedness⁴¹, and he obtained it at last from Miguel de Caviedes and Company of Seville: but not till his friend Gutiérrez became security⁴² for the price (ten ducats), and not till he and Gutiérrez had signed a bond⁴³ in the presence of four notaries—enough to guarantee⁴⁴ the National Debt. J. FITZMAURICE-KELLY.

- ¹ condenado. ² enfadoso. ³ *routine work*, trabajo rutinario.
⁴ *make up*, completar, acabar. ⁵ revisar. ⁶ Tesorería. ⁷ perceptible.
⁸ crónica, apunte. ⁹ hechos. ¹⁰ *to be in very low water*, estar con el agua hasta el cuello. ¹¹ dar poder. ¹² percibir, cobrar.
¹³ necesitar. ¹⁴ *scrape together*, juntar. ¹⁵ gobierno, administración. ¹⁶ remiso. ¹⁷ exigente, puntillioso. ¹⁸ *in arrears*, sin pagar.
¹⁹ girar a cargo de. ²⁰ fondos, dineros. ²¹ diligente, celoso. ²² comisario, delegado. ²³ no tenia cabeza para. ²⁴ números, cifras.
²⁵ inmetódico. ²⁶ entenderse, arreglárselas. ²⁷ complejo. ²⁸ confuso. ²⁹ partidas, asientos. ³⁰ aturrullar. ³¹ experto. ³² contador.
³³ presentar. ³⁴ comprobantes. ³⁵ prueba, tortura.
³⁶ substituto, suplente. ³⁷ pobreza. ³⁸ hecho. ³⁹ *speaks volumes*, vale por muchos volúmenes. ⁴⁰ tela ordinaria. ⁴¹ desnudez. ⁴² *become security*, salir fiador. ⁴³ obligación. ⁴⁴ garantizar.

TRANSLATE.

Gil Blas va a la Universidad.

Dijome un día mi tío¹: 'Ola, Gil Blas, ya no eres niño : tienes diez y siete años y Dios te ha dado habilidad². Hemos menester³ pensar en ayudarte. Estoy resuelto⁴ a enviarte a la Universidad de Salamanca, donde con tu ingenio⁵ y con tu talento no dejarás de colocarte⁶ en algún buen puesto. Para tu viaje te daré algún dinero, y la mula, que vale de diez a doce doblones⁷, la que podrás vender en Salamanca, y mantenerte⁸ después con el dinero, hasta que logres⁹ algún empleo que te dé de comer honradamente.' No podía mi tío proponerme¹⁰ cosa más a mi gusto¹¹, porque reventaba¹² por ver mundo: sin embargo, supe vencerme¹³ y disimular¹⁴ mi alegría. Cuando llegó la hora de marchar, sólo me mostré afligido¹⁵ del sentimiento de separarme de un tío a quien debía tantas obligaciones¹⁶: enternecióse¹⁷ el buen señor de manera que me dió más dinero del que me daría si hubiera leído o penetrado lo que pasaba en lo íntimo de mi corazón. Antes de montar¹⁸ quise ir a dar un abrazo a¹⁹ mi padre y a mi madre, los cuales no anduvieron escasos en materia de consejos²⁰. Exhortáronme²¹ a que todos los días encomendase a Dios²² a mi tío, a vivir cristianamente²³, a no mezclarme²⁴ nunca en negocios peligrosos y sobre todo a no desear, y mucho menos a tomar lo ajeno²⁵ contra la voluntad de su dueño²⁶. Después de haberme arengado²⁷ largamente, me regalaron²⁸ con su bendición²⁹, la única cosa que podía esperar de ellos. Inmediatamente monté en mi mula y salí de la ciudad.

¹ uncle. ² ability. ³ (see § 289). ⁴ resolved. ⁵ ingenuity, adroitness. ⁶ colocarse en un puesto, to get employment. ⁷ doubloon, old Spanish coin (about 20 pesetas). ⁸ support yourself. ⁹ get, secure. ¹⁰ to propose. ¹¹ más a mi gusto, more to my taste. ¹² to be anxious, to desire vehemently, to burst. ¹³ conquer myself. ¹⁴ conceal. ¹⁵ afflicted. ¹⁶ deber obligaciones a alguno, to be

under obligations to somebody. ¹⁷ to be moved. ¹⁸ go on horse-back. ¹⁹ **dar un abrazo**, embrace. ²⁰ **en materia de consejos**, regarding advice. ²¹ exhort, admonish. ²² **encomendar a Dios**, to pray for. ²³ like a Christian. ²⁴ to meddle, to interfere. ²⁵ somebody else's property. ²⁶ owner. ²⁷ harangue. ²⁸ to make a present. ²⁹ blessing.

Change the order of the words in the following sentences on this model: A la tercera esquina está la entrada, or La entrada está a la tercera esquina, or Está la entrada a la tercera esquina, or Está a la esquina tercera la entrada :—

Te conozco. Una mujer he visto que no la conozco más hermosa. Da al niño esta manzana. Para una familia de cinco personas o seis la casa es buena. El primer capítulo se aprende con facilidad. Se descubre desde aquí gran parte de la provincia. Bien está que tú lo digas. Que él lo niegue resulta probable. Mé lo dijeron. Perdiósele. Me lo dijo a mí. Regalóselo a ella. Lo que te han dicho es cierto. Para salir debes abrir la puerta. A la tercera esquina (corner) está la entrada (entrance). Está bueno el tiempo para salir a dar un paseo. Vinieron a decirnos. Le salieron al encuentro. Dejáronlo hablar tres horas seguidas.

Si a un padre un hijo querido
A la guerra se le va,
Para el camino le da
Un Don y un buen apellido (surname).

El que Ponce se ha llamado
Le añade luego León,
El que Guevara, Ladrón
Y Mendoza el que es Hurtado.

Yo conocí a un tal por cual (a guy, a nobody)
Que a cierto conde servía
Y *Sotillo* se decía.

Creció un poco su caudal (means),
Salió de mísero y roto (wretched and tattered),
Hizo una ausencia de un mes,

Conocíle yo después,
 Y ya se llamaba *Soto*.
 Vino a fortuna mejor,
 Eran sus nombres de gonces (hinges);
 Llegó a ser rico, y entonces
 Se llamó *Sotomayor*.

CALDERÓN DE LA BARCA.

XXVIII

APPENDIX

THE VERB

340.—*The Inflexions.* There are three conjugations in Spanish, as we have seen. The different tenses and persons are formed by adding to the stem certain inflexions which are common to all regular verbs belonging to the same conjugation. The stem of the verb is obtained by taking from the infinitive the ending *-ar, -er, -ir*. Thus *habl·* is the stem of *hablar*, *comprend·* is the stem of *comprender*, and *recib·* is the stem of *recibir*. The stress of the verb, which falls always, as far as the infinitive is concerned, on the last syllable, *hablār, comprendēr, recibīr*, alters its position according to the tenses and persons: *hāblo, hablāmos, hablé, hablābamos, hablāsemos, hablaré, hablaría*.

341.—The future and future in the past of the indicative mood are formed from the infinitive, not from the stem. *Hablar-é, comprender-ás*. The reason of this apparent anomaly is that these two tenses were compound forms resulting from the combination of the infinitive with the present and the imperfect of *haber*. *Hablar-hé, comprender-has*.¹ Taking the infinitive as the stem of the future and future in the past, the inflexional endings for these tenses are the same in the three conjuga-

¹ The two forms were used interchangeably: *descogerá e obrarlo ha* (Juan Ruiz, *Libro del buen amor*, pág. 11, ed. de 'La Lectura'). *Casarme-he con ella, encerraréla, haréla a mis mañas* (Cervantes, *El celoso extremeño*).

tions. The first conjugation differs completely (except in the first person of the present indicative and the future and future in the past) from the other two. The second and third conjugations differ only in the first and second persons plural of the present indicative and in the imperative plural: in all other tenses and persons they are the same.

342.—Endings of the three conjugations:

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

| I. | 2. | 3. |
|-------|-------|-------|
| ·o | ·o | ·o |
| ·as | ·es | ·es |
| ·a | ·e | ·e |
| ·amos | ·emos | ·imos |
| ·áis | ·éis | ·ís |
| ·an | ·en | ·en. |

Past.

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|---------|----------|
| ·é | ·í |
| ·aste | ·iste |
| ·ó | ·ió |
| ·amos | ·imos |
| ·asteis | ·isteis |
| ·aron | ·ieron. |

Imperfect.

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|---------|----------|
| ·aba | ·ía |
| ·abas | ·ías |
| ·aba | ·ía |
| ·ábamos | ·íamos |
| ·abais | ·íais |
| ·aban | ·ían. |

Future.

| I, 2, and 3. |
|--------------|
| ·é |
| ·ás |
| ·á |
| ·emos |
| ·éis |
| ·án. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|-------|----------|
| ·e | ·a |
| ·es | ·as |
| ·e | ·a |
| ·emos | ·amos |
| ·éis | ·áis |
| ·en | ·an. |

Past (1st form).

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|---------|----------|
| ·ase | ·iese |
| ·ases | ·ieses |
| ·ase | ·iese |
| ·ásemos | ·iésemos |
| ·aseis | ·ieseis |
| ·asen | ·iesen. |

Past (2nd form).

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|---------|----------|
| ·ara | ·iera |
| ·aras | ·ieras |
| ·ara | ·iera |
| ·áramos | ·iéramos |
| ·arais | ·ierais |
| ·aran | ·ieran. |

Future.

| I. | 2 and 3. |
|---------|----------|
| ·are | ·iere |
| ·ares | ·ieres |
| ·are | ·iere |
| ·áremos | ·iéremos |
| ·areis | ·iereis |
| ·aren | ·ieren. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Future in the past.

1, 2, and 3.

·fa

·fas

·fa

·famos

·fais

·fan.

1.

—

·a

—

—

·ad

—

2.

—

·e

—

—

·ed

—

3.

—

·e

—

—

·id

—

*Infinitive.**Past Participle.**Present Participle.*

1.

2.

3.

1.

2 and 3.

1.

2 and 3.

·ar

·er

·ir.

·ado

·ido.

·ando

·iendo.

343.—*Orthographic changes.* In order to preserve the sound of the final consonant of the stem, certain orthographic changes are made which are not considered to imply any irregularity in the formation of the tenses.

344.—The final *z* of the stem in verbs of the first conjugation changes to *c* before endings beginning with *e*:

caz-ar, to hunt; *cac-é*, I hunted; *cac-emos*, let us hunt.

345.—The final *c* of the stem in verbs of the second and third conjugation changes to *z* before an inflexion beginning with *a* or *o*:

mec-er, to swing; *mez-o*, I swing; *mez-an*, let them swing.

unc-ir, to yoke; *unz-o*, I yoke; *unz-áis*, yoke ye.

346.—The final *c* of the stem in verbs of the first conjugation changes to *qu* before *e* of the inflexional endings:

revoc-ar, to revoke; *revoqu-é*, I revoked.

347.—The final *qu* of the stem in verbs of the third conjugation becomes *c* before *a* or *o* of the endings:

delinqu-ir, to break the law; *delinc-o*, I break the law.

348.—The final *g* of the stem in verbs of the first conjugation becomes *gu* before the initial *e* of the inflexions:

lleg-ar, to arrive; *llegu-é*, I arrived.

349.—The final *gu* of the stem in verbs of the third conjugation changes to *g* before inflexions beginning with *a* or *o*:

segu-ir, to follow; *sig-o*, I follow; *sig-amos*, let us follow.

350.—The final *g* of the stem in verbs of the second and third conjugation becomes *j* before *a* or *o* of the inflexions :

cog-er, to take ; *coj-o*, I take ; *coj-an*, let them take.

eleg-ir, to elect, to choose ; *elij-o*, I choose ; *elij-a*, let him choose.

351.—The verbs ending in *-guar* require the diaeresis on the *u* when the inflexion begins with an *e* :

aguar, to put water in, to dilute ; *agüé*, I diluted.

352.—Verbs the stem of which ends in *ll* or *ñ* lose the unstressed initial *i* of the inflexion if another vowel-sound follows :

bull-ir, to stir ; *bull-ó* (not *bullió*), he bestirred himself.

gañ-ir, to yelp ; *gañ-ó*, he yelped. But in *bullía* the *i* is preserved because it is stressed.¹

353.—Verbs of the second and third conjugation, the stem of which ends in a vowel, change to *y* the unstressed initial *i* of the inflexion when followed by another vowel :

ca-er, to fall ; *ca-yó* (not *caió*), he fell.

le-er, to read ; *le-yere* (not *le-iere*), he might read.

o-ír, to hear ; *o-yeron*, they heard.

hu-ir, to fly ; *hu-yó*, he fled.

354.—The verbs in *-eír* are irregular, and they drop the initial unstressed *i* of the inflexions, as will be seen later.²

355.—*Irregular verbs.* The irregularity of Spanish verbs is caused either by the introduction of new sounds between the stem and the inflexion, or by alteration of the stem, or by alteration of the inflexion. The irregular verbs are classified in different ways by grammarians. The classification in itself is of no importance so long as all the irregular verbs in general use are clearly set forth.

¹ The Academy includes these amongst the irregular verbs, which does not seem justifiable, because Spanish phonetics reject the combination *ño*, *llie*, etc., when the *i* is unstressed. *Henchir*, to fill, to tighten, the only verb ending in *-chir* in Spanish, loses the unstressed *i*. Yet it keeps it in *hinchió* to avoid confusion with *hinchó* (swelled).

² It is to be noted that most of these changes are general rules applicable to derivation in all its forms : *frac*, *fracques* ; *rapaz*, *rapaces* ; *loco*, *loquito* ; *lago*, *laguito* ; *duque*, *ducal*, etc., as previously explained.

I. *Verbs which take on an additional sound between the stem and the inflexion :*

a. **Lucir** (and compounds of **lucir**), and all verbs ending in **-acer, -ecer, -ocer** (except **hacer; mecer**, to rock; **cocer**, to cook; **yacer**, to lie down; and **placer**, to please, and their compounds), take a **c** between the stem and the inflexion in the first person of the present indicative and in all persons of the present subjunctive: the **c** of the stem changes to **z** to preserve the sound.

Lucir, to shine, to display.

Pres. ind. **Luzco**, I shine, I display.

Pres. subj. **Luzca, luzcas, luzca, luzcamos, luzcáis, luzcan.**

Conocer, to know.

Pres. ind. **Conozco.**

Pres. subj. **Conozca, conozcas, conozca, conozcamos, conozcáis, conozcan.**

Nacer, crecer, agradecer, amanecer (to dawn), **anochecer** (to get dark), are conjugated like **conocer**; **pacer** (to graze) is not used in the first person singular of the present indicative, but in the subjunctive present it follows **conocer**. **Yacer** (to lie) follows **conocer**, but it is also and more often conjugated as **yazgo, yazga, yazgas**, etc., or even **yago, yaga, yagas** (this last form is not often heard).

Asir has **asgo** in the first person singular of the present indicative, and **asga, asgas, asga, asgamos, asgáis, asgan** in the present subjunctive.

b. Verbs ending in **-ducir** have the same irregularity as **lucir**, and form the past of the indicative in **-uje, -ujiste, -ujo, -ujimos, -ujisteis, -ujeron**, and the past and future of the subjunctive in **-ujese, -ujeses** (etc.), **-ujera, -ujeras** (etc.), **-ujere, -ujeres** (etc.).

Traducir, to translate.

INDICATIVE.

Present. **traduzco.**

Past. **traduje**
tradujiste
tradujo
tradujimos
tradujisteis
tradujeron.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | traduzca traduzcas traduzca traduzcamos traduzcáis traduzcan. | <i>Past (2nd form).</i> | tradujera tradujeras tradujera tradujéramos tradujerais tradujeran. |
| <i>Past (1st form).</i> | tradujese tradujeses tradujese tradujésemos tradujeseis tradujesen. | <i>Future.</i> | tradujere tradujereš tradujere tradujéremos tradujereis tradujeren. |

c. Verbs ending in *-uir*, in which the two vowels are separately pronounced. They all (except *inmiscuir*, according to the Spanish Academy) take a *y* between the stem and the ending in the three persons of the singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, in all persons of the present subjunctive, and in the singular of the imperative. Verbs like *seguir*, *delinquir*, etc., in which the *u* is not sounded, do not belong to this class.

Huir, to flee, to run away.

| | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|--|
| INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
| <i>Present.</i> | huyo huyes huye (3 pl.) huyen. | <i>Present.</i> | huya huyas huya huyamos huyáis huyan. |

IMPERATIVE. *huye.*¹

d. *Salir* and *valer* take a *g* between the stem and the ending in the first person of the present indicative and in all persons of the present subjunctive. The imperative singular is formed by the stem alone without inflexion. They change the final vowel of the infinitive to *d* in the formation of the future and future in the past.

¹ In *huyó, huyese, huyendo* etc. the *y* is the *i* of the inflexion modified according to the phonetic changes of the regular verbs; see § 353.

Valer, to be worth.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|-----------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> valgo. | <i>Present.</i> valga |
| <i>Future.</i> valdré, valdrás, etc. | valgas |
| <i>Future in the past.</i> valdría, valdrías, etc. | valga |
| | valgamos |
| | valgáis |
| | valgan. |
| IMPERATIVE. val. | |

II. *Verbs which change their stem :*

a. A considerable number of verbs of the first and second conjugation having e or o in the last syllable of the stem change the e to ie and the o to ue in the three persons singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive and in the singular of the imperative :

1. *Cerrar, to close, to shut.* 2. *Mover, to move.*

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <i>Present.</i> cierro | <i>Present.</i> cierre | muevo | mueva |
| cierras | cierres | mueves | muevas |
| cierra | cierre | mueve | mueva |
| (3 pl.) cierran | cierren | mueven | muevan |
| IMPERATIVE. cierra. | | IMPERATIVE. mueve. | |

Adquirir (derived from *querer*) and *jugar* (which originally was spelt and pronounced *jogar*) are included in this group: *adquiero, adquieres, etc. ; juego, juegas, etc.*

Errar, to make mistakes, to err, belongs to this group, but it changes the e to ye, instead of ie, as there is a tendency in Spanish to give the sound of y to the initial i followed by a vowel: *yodo (iodo), yegua.*

Verbs in -ar which change e into ie :

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>acertar, to hit the mark, to guess right.</i> | <i>aserrar, to saw.</i> |
| <i>acrecentar, to increase.</i> | <i>atravesar, to cross, to bar.</i> |
| <i>adestrar, to train.</i> | <i>calentar, to warm.</i> |
| <i>alentar, to breathe, to encourage.</i> | <i>cegar, to blind.</i> |
| <i>apacentar, to graze, to feed.</i> | <i>cimentar, to lay the foundation, to cement.</i> |
| <i>apretar, to press, to compress, to urge.</i> | <i>comenzar, to begin.</i> |
| <i>arrendar, to let.</i> | <i>confesar, to confess, to own.</i> |
| <i>asentar, to put down, to note down, to set.</i> | <i>denegar, to deny ; denegarse, to refuse.</i> |
| | <i>derrengar, to cripple.</i> |
| | <i>desterrar, to exile.</i> |

dezmar, to decimate.
 empedrar, to pave with stones.
 empezar, to begin.
 encerrar, to imprison, to shut in, to contain.
 encomendar, to entrust, to recommend.
 encubertar, to put under cover.
 endentar, to gear, to engage.
 enmendar, to mend, to make good; enmendarse, to grow better, to reform.
 ensangrentar, to stain with blood.
 enterrar, to bury.
 escarmentar, to be taught by experience, to make one repent.
 estregar, to rub.¹
 fregar, to rub.
 gobernar, to rule, to govern.
 helar, to freeze.
 herrar, to shoe.
 invernar, to spend the winter.

Verbs in -er changing the e of the stem into ie :

ascender, to ascend.
 atender, to attend.
 cerner, to sift.
 contender, to fight.
 defender, to defend.
 encender, to light.
 entender, to understand.
 extender, to extend, to stretch out.

Verbs in -ar changing the o of the stem into ue :

acordar, to agree, to remind.
 acostarse, to go to bed.
 almorzar, to lunch.
 amoblar, to furnish (also amueblar).
 amolar, to grind.
 apostar, to bet.
 aprobar, to approve.
 asolar, to lay waste.
 avergonzar, to make one ashamed.

manifestar, to manifest, to show.
 mentar, to mention.
 merendar, to sup.
 negar, to deny.
 nevar, to snow.
 pensar, to think.
 plegar, to fold, to pleat.
 quebrar, to break.
 recomendar, to recommend.
 regar, to water, to irrigate.
 remendar, to mend, to patch.
 reventar, to burst.
 segar, to mow.
 sembrar, to sow.
 sentar, to seat, to fit; sentarse, to sit down.
 sosegar, to keep quiet, to tranquillize.
 temblar, to tremble.
 tentar, to touch, to tempt.
 trasegar, to move around, to shuffle, to pour over.
 tropezar, to stumble.

heder, to stink.
 hender, to cleave, to split.
 perder, to lose.
 tender, to tend, to aim at, to lay.
 trascender, to transcend, to pass beyond, to smell.
 verter, to shed, to spill.

colar, to filter.
 colgar, to hang.
 concordar, to be in accord.
 consolar, to comfort.
 contar, to count.
 costar, to cost.
 degollar, to cut the throat, to slaughter.
 demostrar, to prove.
 descollar, to tower over, to be prominent.

¹ It is also used as a regular verb : **estrego, estregas, etc.**

desolar, to devastate, to desolate.
 desollar, to skin, to flay.
 desovar, to spawn.
 emporrar, to soil.
 encontrar, to find, to meet.
 encovar, to put into a cave.
 engrosar, to become stout.
 esforzarse, to try to.
 forzar, to force, to compel.
 holgar, to be idle, to be useless;
 holgarse, to be pleased.
 hollar, to tread.
 improbar, to disapprove.
 mostrar, to show.
 poblar, to populate.
 probar, to prove.
 recordar, to remind, to remember.
 recostarse, to lean against, to recline.

renovar, to renew.
 reprobar, to reprobate, to condemn, to reprove.
 resollar, to breathe, to take breath.
 revolcarse, to wallow, to roll.
 rodar, to roll, to run on wheels, to turn around.
 rogar, to pray, to beg.
 soldar, to solder.
 soltar, to let loose, to loosen.
 sonar, to sound.
 soñar, to dream.
 tostar, to roast, to toast.
 trocar, to barter, to exchange.
 tronar, to thunder.
 volar, to fly.
 volcar, to turn upside down, to overturn.

Verbs in *-er* which change the *o* of the stem into *ue*:

absolver, to absolve.
 cocer, to cook.
 doler, to feel pain, to ache.
 envolver, to wrap.
 llover, to rain.
 moler, to grind.
 morder, to bite.
 mover, to move.
 oler, to smell.¹

resolver, to decide, to solve, to resolve.
 revolver, to revolve, to stir.
 soler, to be wont, to be apt, to be accustomed.
 torcer, to twist, to distort, to turn.
 volver, to return, to turn over, to come back.²

NOTE.—As a rule all compound verbs follow the irregularity of the simple form. *Devolver* is conjugated like *volver*, *desalentar* like *alentar*, *conmover* like *mover*.

b. A few verbs of the third conjugation having *e* in the last syllable of the stem change it into *i* in the three persons singular and third plural of the present indicative, in the third person singular and plural of the past, in all the tenses of the subjunctive mood, as well as in the imperative singular and the present participle.

¹ This verb takes an initial *h* in the irregular persons: *huelo*, *huelos*, *huele*. In the regular forms the *h* is not needed: *olía*, *oliste*, *oliendo*.

² The past participle of *volver* is *vuelto*.

Corregir, to correct.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i> corrijo corriges corrige (3 pl.) corrigen. | <i>Past (1st form).</i> corrigiese corrigieses, etc. |
| <i>Past.</i> (3 sg.) corrigió (3 pl.) corrigieron. | <i>Past (2nd form).</i> corrigiera corrigieras, etc. |
| SUBJUNCTIVE. | <i>Future.</i> |
| <i>Present.</i> corrija corrijas corrija corrijamos corrijáis corrijan. | corrigiere corrigieres, etc. |
| | IMPERATIVE. |
| | corrige. |
| | <i>Pres. Participle.</i> corrigiendo. |

NOTE.—All verbs in *-eír* (like *reír*, *freír*, *desleír*) belong to this group, and they have a peculiarity with regard to all the irregular forms in which the inflexion begins with unstressed *i*. This is dropped in order to avoid the repetition of the vowel: *rió* (not *riió*); *deslió* (not *desliió*), he diluted; *friese*, he might fry; *desliera*, he would dilute.

Verbs belonging to this group are :

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>ceñir</i> , to gird. | <i>impedir</i> , to obstruct, to prevent. |
| <i>colegir</i> , to gather, to infer. | <i>investir</i> , to clothe, to surround. |
| <i>comedirse</i> , to be civil, to control oneself. | <i>medir</i> , to measure. |
| <i>competir</i> , to compete. | <i>pedir</i> , to ask for, to beg, to order. |
| <i>concebir</i> , to conceive. | <i>perseguir</i> , to persecute. |
| <i>conseguir</i> , to obtain, to get, to succeed. | <i>proseguir</i> , to follow, to continue. |
| <i>derretir</i> , to melt. | <i>regir</i> , to govern, to rule. |
| <i>desleír</i> , to dissolve, to dilute. | <i>reír</i> , to laugh. |
| <i>elegir</i> , to choose, to elect, to select. | <i>rendir</i> , to render, to submit, to surrender. |
| <i>embestir</i> , to rush against, to assail. | <i>reñir</i> , to quarrel, to scold, to fight. |
| <i>engreírse</i> , to become conceited. | <i>repetir</i> , to repeat. |
| <i>expedir</i> , to dispatch, to expedite. | <i>seguir</i> , to follow. |
| <i>freír</i> , to fry. | <i>servir</i> , to serve. |
| <i>gemir</i> , to groan, to moan. | <i>sonreír</i> , to smile. |
| <i>henchir</i> , to fill up, to swell. | <i>teñir</i> , to dye. |
| | <i>vestir</i> , to clothe, to dress. |

c. A few verbs of the third conjugation, which have *e* in the last syllable of the stem, change this *e* into *ie* in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive and in the imperative singular; they change this *e* into *i* in the first and second persons plural of the present subjunctive, in the third person singular and plural of the past indicative, in all the persons of the pasts and future of the subjunctive, and in the present participle.

Divertir, to amuse.

INDICATIVE.

Present. divierto
diviertes
divierte
(3 pl.) divierten.

Past. (3 sg.) divirtió
(3 pl.) divirtieron.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. divierta
diviertas
divierta
divirtamos
divirtáis
diviertan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Past (1st form).
divirtiese
divirtieses, etc.

Past (2nd form).
divirtiera
divirtieras, etc.

Future.

divirtiere
divirtieres, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

divierte.

Present Participle.

divirtiéndolo.

Principal verbs belonging to this group :

adherir, to adhere.
advertir, to advise.
arrepentirse, to repent.
asentir, to assent.
concernir, to concern.
conferir, to confer.
consentir, to consent.
convertir, to convert.
desmentir, to give the lie.
diferir, to differ.
digerir, to digest.
discernir, to discern, to distinguish.
disentir, to differ, to disagree.
erguir, to raise up, to erect.¹
herir, to wound, to strike.
hervir, to boil.

inferir, to infer, to come to the conclusion.
ingerir, to insert, to graft; ingerirse, to interfere.
invertir, to invert, to reverse, to invest.
mentir, to lie.
pervertir, to pervert, to seduce, to mislead.
preferir, to prefer.
referir, to refer.
requerir, to request.
subvertir, to subvert.
sugerir, to suggest.
transferir, to convey, to transfer.
zaherir, to upbraid, to tease.

¹ The initial *ie* becomes *ye*, as in the case of *errar*; so we say *vergo*, *vergues*, etc.

Dormir, to sleep, and **morir**, to die, change *o* into *ue* in all the forms in which the verbs of this group take *ie* instead of *e*, and *o* into *u* in all the forms in which these verbs take an *i* instead of the *e* of the stem :

Duermo, durmió, durmiese, durmiendo.

Muere, murieron, muriésemos, muriendo.

NOTE.—Some of the verbs of this group and of the foregoing group form verbal nouns or adjectives in *-iente*, following the irregularity of the gerund: **riente** (laughing) from **reír**; **siguiente** (following) from **seguir**; **sirviente** (servant) from **servir**; **hiriente** (striking) from **herir**; **durmiente** (sleeper) from **dormir**; **hirviente** (boiling) from **hervir**. Yet we say **diferente** from **diferir**; **preferente** from **preferir**; **concerniente** from **concernir**.

III. Besides the verbs classified in the preceding groups there are certain irregular verbs that do not admit of any special classification. They are called anomalous by the grammarians. These verbs are :

andar, to go, to walk, § 329.
caber, to be contained in, § 293.
caer, to fall, § 271.
dar, to give, § 331 *a*.
decir, to say, to tell, § 108.
estar, to be, § 94.
haber, to have, § 66 *a*.
hacer, to make, § 328.
ir, to go, § 222.
oír, to hear, § 330.

poder, to be able, § 339 *b*.
poner, to put, § 259.
querer, to wish, § 125.
saber, to know, § 133.
ser, to be, § 66 *a*.
tener, to have, § 103.
traer, to bring, § 319.
venir, to come, § 244.
ver, to see, § 331.¹

NOTE.—The compounds of **decir** are conjugated like the simple verb, except in the future and future in the past, which are regular: **bendeciré** (I shall bless), **maldecirían** (they would curse), **nos desdeciremos** (we shall recant), **él contradeciría** (he would contradict). The past participle of **bendecir**, **maldecir**, is both regular (**bendecido**, **maldecido**) and irregular (**bendito**, **maldito**), not following **dicho** in either case. **Bendecido** and **maldecido** are used with **haber**: **el obispo ha**

¹ **Putrir**, which is the form accepted by the Academy instead of **podrir**, to rot, is now a regular verb. But the Academy accepts the two forms for the infinitive and also for the past participle: **putrido** and **podrido**. **Abrir**, **cubrir**, **escribir**, **imprimir** are irregular only in the past participle: **abierto**, **cubierto**, **escrito**, **impreso**.

bendecido a su grey, the Bishop has given his blessing to his flock. **Bendito** and **maldito** are to-day mere adjectives: **agua bendita**, **aquella generación maldita**. **Contradecir** can be conjugated like **decir** in the future and future in the past (**contradiré**, **contradiría**), but the regular forms **contradeciré**, **contradeciría**, are of frequent use, and have the official sanction of the Spanish Academy. **Desdecir** and **prededir** are always regular in the future and future in the past. All the compounds (unlike the simple verb) are regular in the imperative. **Predice** (not **predí**); **contradícele** (contradict him); **bendice a tu siervo** (bless thy servant). **Satisfacer**, to satisfy, is conjugated like **hacer**, but it keeps the *f* of the stem: **satisfago**, **satisfice**, **satisfacía**, **satisfaré**, **satisfaría**, **satisficiese**, **satisficiera**, **satisficiere**, **satisfecho**. In the imperative one can say **satisfaz** or **satisface**, the regular form being preferable. **Rarefacer**, to rarefy, follows **satisfacer**. Other compounds like **deshacer**, **contrahacer**, **rehacer**, are conjugated like **hacer**. Compounds of other verbs, like **componer**, **convenir**, **desoír**, **desandar**, **recaer**, etc., follow the simple form.

356.—There is a correspondence between the different tenses of the verb, so that the irregularity of certain tenses involves a similar irregularity in cognate forms. The irregularity of the present indicative involves the irregularity of the present subjunctive, and possibly of the imperative. The irregularity of the past indicative involves the same kind of irregularity in the pasts and future of the subjunctive and in the present participle; the irregularity of the future indicative extends to the future in the past. **Dar** is the only verb which, being irregular in the first person singular of the present indicative, is not irregular in the subjunctive present (see § 331 *a*).

357.—When a verb is regular in the first person of the present indicative it can be asserted that it is regular in all its moods, tenses, and persons. There is only one exception, **andar**, which is irregular in the past indicative and in the pasts and future of the subjunctive.

358.—*Defective verbs*. The defective verbs in Spanish are those that cannot be used in certain tenses or persons. **Abolir** (to abolish), **aguerrir** (to become trained for war), **arrecirse** (to grow numb), **aterirse** (to grow stiff with cold), **desmarrirse** (to grow sad), **despavorir** (to become frightened), **embaír** (to deceive),

empedernirse (to grow hard as stone), **garantir** (to guarantee), **manir** (to rot), and a few others less common, are only employed in those forms in which the inflexion is an **i** or begins with an **i**: **abolí** (I abolished), **nosotros abolimos** (we abolish), **aboliese** (that he would abolish); but it would be wrong to say **abolo**, **aboles**, **abolan**.

a. **Balbućir** (to stammer) is not used in the first person singular of the present indicative nor in the present subjunctive. In these cases **balbucear**, which is regular, is used instead.

b. **Concernir** (to concern) is used only in the third person singular and plural of each tense, and must be accompanied by the pronominal form: **me concierne** (it concerns me), **esas cosas no os conciernen a vosotros** (those things do not concern you).

c. **Placer** (to please, to be pleased) is still used in its old forms: **plugo** (past indicative), **pluguiese**, **pluguiera**, **pluguiera** (pasts and future of the subjunctive), **plague** (present subjunctive); also in a pronominal form and only in the third person: **como no le pluguiese venir, fuimos a verle**, as it was not his pleasure to come, we went to see him. **Placía**, **place**, regular forms, and **plazca**, are quite usual in the pronominal form: **me place saber que está bien**, it pleases me to know that he is well; **te plazca o no te plazca, has de venir**, you have to come, whether it pleases you or not.

d. **Raer**, to erase, to scrape, is not used in the first person of the present indicative nor in the present subjunctive: it is conjugated like **caer**.

e. **Roer**, to gnaw, has no first person of the present indicative. In the present subjunctive **roa** or **roya**, **roas** or **royas**, etc., can be used: **corroer** only admits of **corroa**, **corroas**, **corroa**, **corroamos**, **corroáis**, **corroan**, for the subjunctive. It is used in all its persons and tenses except the first person singular of the present indicative.

f. **Soler**, to be in the habit of, is still used in the present and imperfect of the indicative, and in the past participle.

The past definite is dying away, and the other forms are little used.

359. IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES.

The following verbs have an irregular past participle :

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| abrir | to open | abierto | opened |
| cubrir | to cover | cubierto | covered |
| decir | to say | dicho | said |
| escribir | to write | escrito | written |
| hacer | to make | hecho | made |
| imprimir | to print | impreso | printed |
| morir | to die | muerto | dead |
| poner | to put | puesto | put |
| resolver | to solve | suelto | solved |
| ver | to see | visto | seen |
| volver | to return | vuelto | returned. |

360.—A few verbs have two past participles, a regular and an irregular one :

| | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|----------|
| freír, to fry | freído | frito |
| matar, to kill | matado | muerto |
| prender, to arrest, to take root | prendido | preso |
| proveer, to provide | proveído | provisto |
| romper, to break | rompido | roto. |

a. **Frito** and **freído** can be used indifferently with **haber** : **han freído** (or **frito**) **los huevos**, they have fried the eggs ; with **ser**, **estar**, and **tener** only **frito** is permissible : **la torta está frita**, the cake is fried ; **me tiene usted frito**, you bore me. As an adjective only the form **frito** can be used : **aquí venden huevos fritos**, fried eggs are sold here.

b. **Matado**, past participle of **matar**, is used in a reflexive sense : **Juan se ha matado**, John has killed himself ; or it is used to mean slaughtered : **habían matado mucho ganado a causa de la sequía**, they had slaughtered a great deal of cattle as a result of the drought ; or with reference to the sores caused to horses, mules, or cattle by saddle or harness : **tu silla ha matado a mi caballo**, your saddle has bruised my horse's back. In all other cases **muerto** is preferable : **han muerto a ese infeliz**, they have killed that wretched man.

c. **Prender**, in the sense of to arrest, generally forms **preso** : **está preso**, **han sido presos** ; but the form **prendido** is preferable with **haber** : **han prendido al supuesto reo**, they have arrested the supposed criminal. In other senses **prendido** is the only form accepted : **ha prendido el incendio**, the fire has caught ; **no ha prendido la planta**, the plant has not taken root.

d. Provisto, from *proveer*, means furnished, supplied with. *Proveído* is applied to decisions of the courts or of the administration: **Luis ha provisto bien su despensa**, Louis has supplied his pantry with plenty of provisions; **su casa está bien provista**, his house is well furnished; **el gobierno ha proveído el empleo**, the Government has filled the vacancy (even in this last case *provisto* is equally acceptable).

e. Rompido (seldom heard) is used figuratively: **ha rompido en dicerios**, he broke forth into insults. **Roto** may be employed both in a literal and a metaphorical sense: **el niño se había roto una pierna**, the child had had one of its legs broken; **se han roto las hostilidades**, hostilities have broken out.

XXIX

LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL IRREGULAR, ANOMALOUS, AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

(The numerals and letters after each verb mark the group to which it belongs. def. means defective.)

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|-----------------------------|---------|
| Abastecer . . . | I. a | Amolar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Abnegar . . . | II. a 1 | Andar . . . | III. |
| Abolir . . . | def. | Anochecer . . . | I. a |
| Aborrecer . . . | I. a | Anteponer . . . | III. |
| Absolver . . . | II. a 2 | Anteponer . . . | III. |
| Abstenerse . . . | III. | Apacentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Abstraer . . . | III. | Aparecer . . . | I. a |
| Acaecer . . . | I. a | Apercollar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Acertar . . . | II. a 1 | Apetecer . . . | I. a |
| Acontecer . . . | I. a | Apostar ² . . . | II. a 2 |
| Acordar . . . | II. a 2 | Apretar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Acostarse . . . | II. a 2 | Aprobar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Acrecentar . . . | II. a 1 | Argüir . . . | I. c |
| Adestrar . . . | II. a 1 | Arrecirse . . . | def. |
| Adherir . . . | II. c | Arrendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Adolecer . . . | I. a | Arrepentirse . . . | II. c |
| Adormecer . . . | I. a | Ascender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Adquirir . . . | II. a 1 | Asentir . . . | II. c |
| Aducir . . . | I. b | Aserrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Advertir . . . | II. c | Asir . . . | I. a |
| Aforar . . . | II. a 2 | Asolar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Agorar . . . | II. a 2 | Asonar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Agradecer . . . | I. a | Atender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Aguerrir . . . | def. | Atenerse . . . | III. |
| Alentar . . . | II. a 1 | Atentar ³ . . . | II. a 1 |
| Aliquebrar . . . | II. a 1 | Aterirse . . . | def. |
| Almorzar . . . | II. a 2 | Aterrarr ⁴ . . . | II. a 1 |
| Amanecer . . . | I. a | Atestar ⁵ . . . | II. a 1 |
| Amoblar ¹ . . . | II. a 2 | Atraer . . . | III. |

¹ **Amueblar**, which means the same, is regular.

² Meaning 'to bet', this verb is irregular; meaning 'to place relays' or 'to post soldiers', it is regular.

³ In the sense of 'making an attempt against somebody' this verb is regular.

⁴ Meaning 'to inspire terror, awe', **aterrar** is regular.

⁵ When taken in the sense of 'to witness' this verb is regular.

290 LIST OF IRREGULAR, ANOMALOUS

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| Atravesar . . . | II. a 1 | Consonar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Atribuir . . . | I. c | Constituir . . . | I. c |
| Atronar . . . | II. a 2 | Constreñir . . . | II. b |
| Avenir . . . | III. | Construir . . . | I. c |
| Aventar . . . | II. a 1 | Contar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Avergonzar . . . | II. a 2 | Contender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Azolar . . . | II. a 2 | Contener . . . | III. |
| Balbućir . . . | def. | Contorcerse . . . | II. a 2 |
| Bendecir . . . | III. | Contradecir . . . | III. |
| Caber . . . | III. | Contraer . . . | III. |
| Caer . . . | III. | Contrañacer . . . | III. |
| Calentar . . . | II. a 1 | Contrañoner . . . | III. |
| Carecer . . . | I. a | Contravenir . . . | III. |
| Cegar . . . | II. a 1 | Contribuir . . . | I. c |
| Ceñir . . . | II. b | Controvertir . . . | II. c |
| Cerner . . . | II. a 1 | Convalecer . . . | I. a |
| Cerrar . . . | II. a 1 | Convenir . . . | III. |
| Cimentar . . . | II. a 1 | Convertir . . . | II. c |
| Circular . . . | I. c | Corregir . . . | II. b |
| Clarecer . . . | I. a | Corroer . . . | def. |
| Cocer . . . | II. a 2 | Costar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Colar . . . | II. a 2 | Crecer . . . | I. a |
| Colegir . . . | II. b | Dar . . . | III. |
| Colgar . . . | II. a 2 | Decaer . . . | III. |
| Comedir . . . | II. b | Decir . . . | III. |
| Comenzar . . . | II. a 1 | Decrecer . . . | I. a |
| Compadecer . . . | I. a | Deducir . . . | I. b |
| Comparecer . . . | I. a | Defender . . . | II. a |
| Competir . . . | II. b | Deferir . . . | II. c |
| Complacer . . . | I. a | Degollar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Componer . . . | III. | Demoler . . . | II. a 2 |
| Comprobar . . . | II. a 2 | Demostrar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Concebir . . . | II. b | Denegar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Concernir . . . | def. | Denegrecer . . . | I. a |
| Concertar . . . | II. a 1 | Denostar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Concluir . . . | I. c | Deponer . . . | III. |
| Concordar . . . | II. a 2 | Derrengar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Condescender . . . | II. a 1 | Derretir . . . | II. b |
| Condolerse . . . | II. a 2 | Derrocar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Conducir . . . | I. b | Derruir . . . | I. c |
| Conferir . . . | II. c | Desacertar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Confesar . . . | II. a 1 | Desacordar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Confluir . . . | I. d | Desadvertir . . . | II. c |
| Conmover . . . | II. a 2 | Desaforar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Conocer . . . | I. 2 | Desagradecer . . . | I. a |
| Conseguir . . . | II. b | Desalentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Consentir . . . | II. c | Desamoblar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Consolar . . . | II. a 2 | Desandar . . . | III. |
| | | Desaparecer . . . | I. a |

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------|----------------------------|---------|
| Desapretar . . . | II. a 1 | Deshacer . . . | III. |
| Desaprobar . . . | II. a 2 | Deshelar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desarrendar . . . | II. a 1 | Desherbar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desasir . . . | I. a | Desherrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desasosegar . . . | II. a 1 | Desleír . . . | II. b |
| Desatender . . . | II. a 1 | Deslucir . . . | I. a |
| Desatentar . . . | II. a 1 | Desmarrirse . . . | def. |
| Desaterrar . . . | II. a 1 | Desmedirse . . . | II. b |
| Desavenir . . . | III. | Desmembrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desaventurar . . . | II. a 1 | Desmentir . . . | II. c |
| Descaecer . . . | I. a | Desmerecer . . . | I. a |
| Descender . . . | II. a 1 | Desobedecer . . . | I. a |
| Desceñir . . . | II. b | Desoír . . . | III. |
| Descolgar . . . | II. a 2 | Desolar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Descollar . . . | II. a 2 | Desoldar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Descomedirse . . . | II. b | Desollar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Descomponer . . . | II. a 2 | Desosar ¹ . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desconcertar . . . | II. a 1 | Desparecer . . . | I. a |
| Desconocer . . . | I. a | Despavorir . . . | def. |
| Desconsentir . . . | II. c | Despedir . . . | II. b |
| Desconsolar . . . | II. a 2 | Despertar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Descontar . . . | II. a 2 | Desplacer . . . | def. |
| Desconvenir . . . | III. | Desplegar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Descordar . . . | II. a 2 | Despoblar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desdecir . . . | III. | Desteñir . . . | II. b |
| Desempedrar . . . | II. a 1 | Desterrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desencarecer . . . | I. a | Destituir . . . | I. c |
| Desencerrar . . . | II. a 1 | Destorcer . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desencordar . . . | II. a 2 | Destruir . . . | I. c |
| Desencrudecer . . . | I. a | Desvanecer . . . | I. a |
| Desenfurecerse . . . | I. a | Desvergonzarse . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desengrosar . . . | II. a 2 | Detener . . . | III. |
| Desenmohecer . . . | I. a | Detraer . . . | III. |
| Desenmudecer . . . | I. a | Devolver . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desentenderse . . . | II. a 1 | Dezmar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Desenterrar . . . | II. a 1 | Diferir . . . | II. c |
| Desentorpecer . . . | I. a | Digerir . . . | II. c |
| Desentristecer . . . | I. a | Diluir . . . | I. c |
| Desentumecer . . . | I. a | Discernir . . . | II. c |
| Desenvolver . . . | II. a 1 | Discordar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Deservir . . . | II. b | Disentir . . . | II. c |
| Desfallecer . . . | I. a | Disminuir . . . | I. c |
| Desfavorecer . . . | I. a | Disolver . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desflocar . . . | II. a 2 | Disonar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Desflorecer . . . | I. a | Disponer . . . | III. |
| Desfortalecer . . . | I. a | Distraer . . . | III. |
| Desgobernar . . . | II. a 1 | Distribuir . . . | I. c |
| Desguarnecer . . . | I. a | Divertir . . . | II. c |

¹ This verb takes an **h** before **ue** : **deshueso, deshueses.**

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------|--------------------------|---------|
| Doler | II. a 2 | Enmudecer | I. a |
| Dormir | II. c | Ennegrecer | I. a |
| Elegir | II. b | Ennoblecer | I. a |
| Embaír | def. | Enorgullecer | I. a |
| Embebecer | I. a | Enrarecer | I. a |
| Embellecer | I. a | Enriquecer | I. a |
| Embestir | II. b | Enrobustecer | I. a |
| Emblandecer | I. a | Enrojecer | I. a |
| Emblanquecer | I. a | Enronquecer | I. a |
| Embobecer | I. a | Enroñecer | I. a |
| Embravecer | I. a | Ensalmorar | II. a 2 |
| Embrutecer | I. a | Ensangrentar | II. a 1 |
| Emparentar | II. a 1 | Ensoberbecer | I. a |
| Empedernir | def. | Ensoñar | II. a 2 |
| Empedrar | II. a 1 | Ensordecer | I. a |
| Empequeñecer | I. a | Entallecer | I. a |
| Empezar | II. a 1 | Entender | II. a 1 |
| Empobrecer | I. a | Entenebreecer | I. a |
| Enaltecer | I. a | Enterneecer | I. a |
| Enardecer | I. a | Enterrar | II. a 1 |
| Encallecer | I. a | Entontecer | I. a |
| Encalvecer | I. a | Entorpecer | I. a |
| Encanecer | I. a | Entredecir | III. |
| Encarecer | I. a | Entrelucir | I. a |
| Encender | II. a 1 | Entremorir | II. c |
| Encerrar | II. a 1 | Entreoír | III. |
| Encomendar | II. a 1 | Entrepareserse | I. a |
| Encontrar | II. a 2 | Entreponer | III. |
| Encordar | II. a 2 | Entretener | III. |
| Encrudecer | I. a | Entrever | III. |
| Encruelecer | I. a | Entristecer | I. a |
| Encubertar | II. a 1 | Entumecer | I. a |
| Endentar | II. a 1 | Envanecer | I. a |
| Endurecer | I. a | Envejecer | I. a |
| Enfierecerse | I. a | Enverdecer | I. a |
| Enflaquecer | I. a | Envilecer | I. a |
| Enfranquecer | I. a | Envolver | II. a 2 |
| Enfurecer | I. a | Equivaler | I. d |
| Engrandecer | I. a | Erguir | II. c |
| Engreír | II. b | Errar | II. a 1 |
| Engrosar | II. a 2 | Escarmentar | II. a 1 |
| Engrumecerse | I. a | Escarneecer | I. a |
| Enhestar | II. a 1 | Esclarecer | I. a |
| Enloquecer | I. a | Escocer | II. a 2 |
| Enlucir | I. a | Esforzar | II. a 2 |
| Enmagrecer | I. a | Establecer | I. a |
| Enmelar | II. a 1 | Estar | III. |
| Enmendar | II. a 1 | Estatuir | I. c |
| Enmohecer | I. a | Estremecer | I. a |
| | | Estreñir | II. b |

| | | | |
|------------------|---------|---------------------------|---------|
| Excluir . . . | I. c | Inducir . . . | I. b |
| Expedir . . . | II. b | Inferir . . . | II. c |
| Exponer . . . | III. | Influir . . . | I. c |
| Extender . . . | II. a 1 | Ingerir . . . | II. c |
| Extraer . . . | III. | Inquirir . . . | II. a 1 |
| Fallecer . . . | I. a | Instituir . . . | I. c |
| Favorecer . . . | I. a | Instruir . . . | I. c |
| Fenecer . . . | I. a | Interponer . . . | III. |
| Florecer . . . | I. a | Intervenir . . . | III. |
| Fluir . . . | I. c | Introducir . . . | I. b |
| Fortalecer . . . | I. a | Invernar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Forzar . . . | II. a 2 | Invertir . . . | II. c |
| Fregar . . . | II. a 1 | Investir . . . | II. b |
| Freir . . . | II. b | Ir . . . | III. |
| Garantir . . . | def. | Jugar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Gemir . . . | II. b | Languidecer . . . | I. a |
| Gobernar . . . | II. a 1 | Liquefacer . . . | I. a |
| Guarecer . . . | I. a | Lobreguecer . . . | I. a |
| Guarnecer . . . | I. a | Lucir . . . | I. a |
| Haber . . . | III. | Llover . . . | II. a 2 |
| Hacendar . . . | II. a 1 | Maldecir . . . | III. |
| Hacer . . . | III. | Maltraer . . . | III. |
| Heder . . . | II. a 1 | Manifestar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Helar . . . | II. a 1 | Manir . . . | def. |
| Hender . . . | II. a 1 | Mantener . . . | III. |
| Heñir . . . | II. b | Medir . . . | II. b |
| Herir . . . | II. b | Melar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Herrar . . . | II. a 1 | Mentar ¹ . . . | II. a 1 |
| Hervir . . . | II. c | Mentir ¹ . . . | II. c |
| Holgar . . . | II. a 2 | Merecer . . . | I. a |
| Hollar . . . | II. a 2 | Merendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Huir . . . | I. c | Moler . . . | II. a 2 |
| Humedecer . . . | I. a | Morder . . . | II. a 2 |
| Imbuir . . . | I. c | Morir . . . | II. c |
| Impedir . . . | II. b | Mostrar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Imponer . . . | III. | Mover . . . | II. a 2 |
| Improbar . . . | II. a 2 | Nacer . . . | I. a |
| Incensar . . . | II. a 1 | Negar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Incluir . . . | I. c | Nevar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Indisponer . . . | III. | | |

¹ The 1st person singular of the present indicative is the same for these two verbs: **miento** (I lie or I mention). The 2nd and 3rd persons singular and the 3rd plural of the present indicative of **mentar** are the same as the 2nd and 3rd singular and 3rd plural of the present subjunctive of **mentir**.

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Obedecer . . . | I. a | Rarefacer . . . | III, note |
| Obscurecer . . . | I. a | Reaparecer . . . | I. a |
| Obstruir . . . | I. c | Reblandecer . . . | I. a |
| Obtener . . . | III. | Recaer . . . | III. |
| Ofrecer . . . | I. a | Recalentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Oír . . . | III. | Receñir . . . | II. b |
| Oler . . . | III. | Recluir . . . | I. c |
| Oponer . . . | III. | Recocer . . . | II. a 2 |
| | | Recolar* . . . | II. a 2 |
| Pacer . . . | def. | Recolegir . . . | II. b |
| Padecer . . . | I. a | Recomendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Palidecer . . . | I. a | Recomponer . . . | III. |
| Parecer . . . | I. a | Reconducir . . . | I. b |
| Pedir . . . | II. b | Reconocer . . . | I. a |
| Pensar . . . | II. a 1 | Reconstruir . . . | I. c |
| Perder . . . | II. a 1 | Recontar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Perecer . . . | I. a | Reconvalecer . . . | I. a |
| Permanecer . . . | I. a | Reconvenir . . . | III. |
| Perseguir . . . | II. b | Recordar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Pertenecer . . . | I. a | Recostar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Pervertir . . . | II. c | Recrudecer . . . | I. a |
| Placer . . . | def. | Reducir . . . | I. b |
| Plegar . . . | II. a 1 | Reelegir . . . | II. b |
| Poblar . . . | II. a 2 | Reencomendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Poder . . . | III. | Referir . . . | II. c |
| Podrir (<i>or</i> pudrir) | III. ^{footnote} | Reflorecer . . . | I. a |
| Poner . . . | III. | Refluir . . . | I. c |
| Posponer . . . | III. | Reforzar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Preconocer . . . | I. a | Refregar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Predecir . . . | III. | Refreír . . . | II. b |
| Predisponer . . . | III. | Regar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Preferir . . . | II. c | Regimentar . . . | II. b |
| Prelucir . . . | I. a | Regir . . . | II. b |
| Presentir . . . | II. c | Regoldar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Presuponer . . . | III. | Rehacer . . . | III. |
| Prevalecer . . . | I. a | Rehenchir . . . | II. b |
| Prevenir . . . | III. | Reherir . . . | II. c |
| Prever . . . | III. | Rehervir . . . | II. c |
| Probar . . . | II. a 2 | Rehuir . . . | I. c |
| Producir . . . | I. b | Rehumedecer . . . | I. a |
| Proferir . . . | II. c | Reír . . . | II. b |
| Promover . . . | II. a 2 | Rejuvenecer . . . | I. a |
| Proponer . . . | III. | Relentecer . . . | I. a |
| Proseguir . . . | II. b | Relucir . . . | I. a |
| Provenir . . . | III. | Remendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| | | Remoler . . . | II. a 2 |
| Quebrar . . . | II. a 1 | Remorder . . . | II. a 2 |
| Querer . . . | III. | Remover . . . | II. a 2 |
| | | Renacer . . . | I. a |
| Raer . . . | def. | Rendir . . . | II. b |

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| Renegar . . . | II. a 1 | Sarmentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Renovar . . . | II. a 2 | Satisfacer . . . | III. |
| Reñir . . . | II. b | Segar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Repacer . . . | I. a | Seguir . . . | II. b |
| Repadecer . . . | I. a | Sembrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Repensar . . . | II. a 1 | Sentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Repetir . . . | II. b | Sentir . . . | II. c |
| Replegar . . . | II. a 1 | Ser . . . | III. |
| Repoblar . . . | II. a 2 | Serrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Reponer . . . | III. | Servir . . . | II. b |
| Reprobar . . . | II. a 2 | Sobrentender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Reproducir . . . | I. b | Sobreponer . . . | III. |
| Requebrar . . . | II. a 1 | Sobresalir . . . | I. d |
| Requerer . . . | III. | Sobresolar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Requerir . . . | II. a 1 | Sobrevenir . . . | III. |
| Resembrar . . . | II. a 1 | Solar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Resentirse . . . | II. c | Soldar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Resolver . . . | II. a 2 | Soler . . . | def. |
| Resollar . . . | II. a 2 | Soltar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Resonar . . . | II. a 2 | Solver . . . | II. a 2 |
| Resplandecer . . . | I. a | Sonar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Resquebrar . . . | II. a 1 | Sonreír . . . | II. b |
| Restablecer . . . | I. a | Soñar . . . | II. a 2 |
| Restituir . . . | I. c | Sosegar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Restregar . . . | I. a 1 | Sostener . . . | III. |
| Retemblar . . . | I. a 1 | Soterrar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Retener . . . | III. | Subarrendar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Retentar . . . | I. a 1 | Subentender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Reteñir . . . | II. b | Subseguir . . . | II. b |
| Retorcer . . . | II. a 2 | Subtender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Retostar . . . | II. a 2 | Subvenir . . . | III. |
| Retraer . . . | III. | Subvertir . . . | II. c |
| Retribuir . . . | I. c | Sugerir . . . | II. c |
| Retronar . . . | II. a 2 | Superponer . . . | III. |
| Revenirse . . . | II. a 1 | Supervenir . . . | III. |
| Reventar . . . | II. a 1 | Suponer . . . | III. |
| Rever . . . | III. | Sustituir . . . | I. c |
| Reverdecer . . . | I. a | Sustraer . . . | III. |
| Reverter . . . | II. a 1 | | |
| Revestir . . . | II. b | Temblar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Revolcarse . . . | II. a 2 | Tender . . . | II. a 1 |
| Revolver . . . | II. a 2 | Tener . . . | III. |
| Robustecer . . . | I. a | Tentar . . . | II. a 1 |
| Rodar . . . | II. a 2 | Teñir . . . | II. b |
| Roer . . . | def. | Torcer . . . | II. a 2 |
| Rogar . . . | II. a 2 | Tostar . . . | II. a 2 |
| | | Traducir . . . | I. b |
| Saber . . . | III. | Traer . . . | III. |
| Salir . . . | I. d | Transferir . . . | II. c |
| Salpimentar . . . | II. a 1 | Transponer . . . | III. |

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|------------------|---------|
| Trascender . . . | II. a 1 | Venir | III. |
| Trascordarse . . . | II. a 2 | Ver | III. |
| Trasegar | II. a 1 | Verdecer | I. a |
| Traslucirse . . . | I. a | Verter | II. a 1 |
| Trasoír | III. | Vestir | II. b |
| Trasoñar | II. a 2 | Volar | II. a 2 |
| Trastrocar | II. a 2 | Volcar | II. a 2 |
| Trasvolar | II. a 2 | Volver | II. a 2 |
| Trocar | II. a 2 | Yacer | I. a |
| Tronar | II. a 2 | Yuxtaponer . . . | III. |
| Tropezar | II. a 1 | Zaherir | II. c |
| Valer | I. d | | |

SPANISH VOCABULARY

(Abbreviations : *adj.*, adjective ; *adv.*, adverb ; *conj.*, conjunction ; *f.*, noun feminine ; *m.*, noun masculine ; *pl.*, plural ; *prep.*, preposition ; *pron.*, pronoun ; *rel.*, relative.)

- a*, *prep.*, to, at, on.
abajo, *adv.*, below.
abandonar, to leave, to neglect, to relinquish, to give up.
abandono, *m.*, neglect.
abatir, to put down, to lower, to abate.
abeto, *m.*, spruce-tree.
abogado, *m.*, lawyer.
abrazar, *abrazarse*, to embrace, to hug.
abrigo, *m.* shelter, overcoat.
abril, *m.*, April.
abrir, to open.
abrumador, *adj.*, oppressive, overwhelming.
absorto, *adj.*, abstracted, absorbed in thought.
abstenerse, to abstain.
abuelo, *m.*, grandfather ; *abuelos*, grandparents.
abundante, *adj.*, abundant.
aburrir, to bore ; *aburrirse*, to be bored, to become tired.
acá, *adv.*, hither, here.
acabar, to end, to finish, to put an end to ; *acabar de*, to have just . . .
academia, *f.*, academy.
acarrear, to carry, to bring to.
acarreo, carrying, cartage.
acaso, *m.*, chance, fate.
acaso, *adv.*, perhaps, by chance.
aceptar, to accept.
acera, *f.*, side-walk, pavement.
acerca de, *prep.*, about, concerning.
acercarse, to come near, to approach.
- acero*, *m.*, steel.
acertar, to hit the mark, to succeed.
aclearar, to make clear, to illustrate, to clarify.
acomodar, to accommodate.
acompañar, to accompany.
aconsejar, to advise.
acontecer, to happen, to arrive.
acontecimiento, *m.*, event.
acordar, to agree ; *acordarse*, to remember, to recall, to recollect.
acostarse, to lie down, to go to bed.
acostumbrar, to use, to accustom.
actitud, *f.*, attitude.
acto, *m.*, act.
actual, *adj.*, present, actual.
acuerdo, *m.*, agreement ; *de acuerdo con*, in accordance with.
adelantar, to go forward, to advance.
adelante, *adv.*, ahead, forward.
adelanto, *m.*, progress, advance.
ademán, *m.*, gesture, attitude.
además, *adv.*, besides.
administración, *f.*, management, administration.
admirable, *adj.*, wonderful.
admirar, to admire.
admitir, to admit, to accept.
adoptar, to adopt.
adquirir, to acquire, to get, to obtain.

- adusto**, *adj.*, gloomy, grim, stern.
advertir, to take notice of, to observe, to warn.
afán, *m.*, anxiety. **Estar en afanes**, to be in trouble, in difficulties.
afanarse, to toil, to worry.
afecto, *m.*, affection.
afeitarse, to shave, to enamel the face.
aficionado, *adj.*, given to; *m.*, amateur.
afirmar, to state, to affirm.
afligido, *adj.*, afflicted, sad.
agasajar, to receive and treat kindly, to regale.
ágil, *adj.*, nimble, supple, agile.
agitarse, to bestir oneself.
agradable, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant.
agradar, to please.
agradecer, to thank.
agregar, to add.
agricultura, *f.*, agriculture.
agua, *f.*, water.
aguardar, to wait for, to await.
ahí, *adv.*, there.
ahogarse, to drown.
ahora, *adv.*, now.
aire, *m.*, air.
alabar, to praise.
álamo, *m.*, poplar.
albergue, *m.*, shelter.
albillo, *m.*, wine of white grape.
alcalde, *m.*, mayor, alcade.
alcance, *m.*, reach.
alcanzar, to reach, to overtake.
aldea, *f.*, village.
alegrar, to gladden; **alegrarse**, to be glad.
alegre, *adj.*, glad, happy.
alegría, *f.*, happiness, merriment, joy.
algo, *pron.*, *adv.*, something, somewhat.
algodón, *m.*, cotton.
alguien, *pron.*, someone, somebody.
- alguno**, *adj.*, *pron.*, some, somebody.
alimentar, to feed; **alimentarse de**, to feed on.
alimento, *m.*, food, nourishment.
almacén, *m.*, store, warehouse.
alminar, *m.*, minaret.
almoraduj, *m.*, sweet marjoram.
almorzar, to lunch, to breakfast.
almuerzo, *m.*, luncheon, breakfast.
alrededor, *adv.*, around.
alto, *adj.*, high, tall.
altura, *f.*, height, altitude.
alzar, to raise.
allá, *adv.*, there, thither; **más allá**, beyond.
allí, *adv.*, there.
amable, *adj.*, kind, lovable.
amar, to love.
amarillo, *adj.*, yellow.
ambos, *-as*, *adj.*, *pron.*, both.
ameno, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.
amigo, *m.*, friend.
amistad, *f.*, friendship.
amo, *m.*, proprietor, master.
anciano, *adj.*, old; *m.*, aged man.
ancho, *adj.*, wide, broad.
anchura, *f.*, width, breadth.
andaluz, *adj.*, Andalusian.
andar, to go, to walk.
ángel, *m.*, angel.
angosto, *adj.*, narrow.
animal, *m.*, animal.
animar, to encourage, to enliven.
anoche, *adv.*, last night.
anochecer, to grow dusky.
ansiar, to desire.
ansioso, *adj.*, anxious.
ante, *prep.*, before.
anteayer, *adv.*, the day before yesterday.
anteojos, *m. pl.*, eye-glasses, spectacles.

anterior, *adj.*, former, first.
 antes, *adv.*, before, formerly.
 anticipación, *f.*, anticipation ;
 con anticipación, in ad-
 vance.
 antier, *adv.*, see anteayer.
 antiguo, *adj.*, ancient, old.
 antojarse, to take a fancy to,
 to long, to desire vehemently.
 anual, *adj.*, annual.
 anunciar, to announce, to ad-
 vertise.
 añadir, to add.
 año, *m.*, year ; año bisiesto,
 leap year.
 apagar, to put out, to extin-
 guish.
 aparecer, to appear.
 apariencia, *f.*, appearance.
 apellido, *m.*, surname.
 apenas, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly,
 as soon as.
 apetito, *m.*, appetite.
 aplaudir, to applaud.
 apoderado, *m.*, attorney.
 apoderarse de, to possess one-
 self of, to get hold of.
 apreciable, *adj.*, esteemed.
 apreciar, to appreciate.
 aprecio, *m.*, esteem, apprecia-
 tion.
 aprender, to learn.
 apresurarse, to hasten.
 apretar, to press, to tighten.
 aprisa, *adv.*, fast, quickly.
 aprovechar, to profit by, to
 take advantage.
 aproximar, to approach.
 apurar, to hasten, to worry.
 aquel, *adj.* and *pron.*, that ; the
 former.
 aquí, *adv.*, here.
 araña, *f.*, spider.
 árbol, *m.*, tree.
 arboleda, *f.*, avenue of trees,
 grove, wood.
 arengar, to deliver a speech.
 argüir, to argue.
 argumento, *m.*, argument.
 arma, *f.*, weapon, arm.

aroma, *m.*, aroma.
 arreglar, to arrange, to settle.
 arriesgar, to risk.
 arte, *f.*, art.
 arteria, *f.*, artery.
 artículo, *m.*, article.
 artista, *m.*, artist.
 asar, to roast ; pollo asado,
 roast chicken.
 asegurar, to assure, to insure,
 to assert, to fix.
 así, *adv.*, so, thus.
 asiento, *m.*, seat ; hombre de
 mucho asiento, solid, well-
 balanced man.
 asistir, to be present, to attend.
 asno, *m.*, donkey.
 aspecto, *m.*, aspect, appear-
 ance.
 áspero, *adj.*, rough, rugged ;
 aspereza, *f.*, asperity.
 asunto, *m.*, subject, business,
 matter.
 atacar, to attack, to assault.
 atar, to tie, to fasten, to bind.
 atención, *f.*, attention, favour.
 atento, *adj.*, attentive, respect-
 ful.
 aterrorizar, to inspire with
 awe, fright.
 atisbar, to watch, to pry, to spy.
 atractivo, *m.*, charm, attrac-
 tion.
 atraer, to attract, to draw
 nearer.
 atreverse, to dare ; to venture.
 atribuir, to attribute, to ascribe.
 atropellar, to rush, to run over,
 to trample.
 auditorio, *m.*, audience.
 aumentar, to increase.
 aumento, *m.*, increase.
 aun, *adv.*, even, still ; aun no,
 not yet.
 aunque, *conj.*, though.
 automóvil or auto, *m.*, automo-
 bile, taxicab, or car.
 autor, *m.*, author.
 ave, *f.*, bird ; ave de corral, fowl.
 avena, *f.*, oats.

- averiguar, to ascertain, to find out.
 avisar, to warn, to inform, to give notice.
 ayer, *adv.*, yesterday.
 ayuda, *f.*, help, support, aid.
 ayudar, to help.
 azahar, *m.*, orange-blossom.
 azúcar, *m.*, sugar.
 azul, *adj.*, blue.
- bajar, to lower; to go down or come down.
 bajo, *adj.*, low; *adv.*, in a low voice.
 bajo, *prep.*, under, below.
 balde, *m.*, bucket; *en balde*, in vain; *de balde*, gratis.
 banco, *m.*, bank.
 baño, *m.*, bath.
 bárbaro, *m.* and *adj.*, barbarian, barbarous.
 barco, *m.*, boat.
 barrio, *m.*, quarter, district.
 base, *f.*, basis.
 bastante, *adv.* and *adj.*, enough, quite.
 bastar, to suffice, to be enough.
 bastón, *m.*, walking-stick, cane.
 baúl, *m.*, trunk, chest.
 bazar, *m.*, bazaar.
 beber, to drink.
 bello, *adj.*, beautiful.
 beneficio, *m.*, benefit.
 bestia, *f.*, beast.
 biblioteca, *f.*, library.
 bien, *adv.*, well.
 bien, *m.*, good.
 bienaventuranza, *f.*, blessedness.
 bienes, *m. pl.*, goods, property.
 bienestar, *m.*, well-being, contentment.
 bisiesto, *adj.*, see año.
 bizcocho, *m.*, biscuit.
 blanco, *adj.*, white.
 bobo, *m.*, fool; *adj.*, foolish.
 boca, *f.*, mouth.
 boga, *f.*, vogue.
 bolsillo, *m.*, pocket.
- bollo, *m.*, cake.
 bondad, *f.*, kindness.
 bonito, *adj.*, nice, pretty.
 borracho, *adj.*, *m.*, drunk, drunken, drunkard.
 borrico, *m.*, ass, donkey.
 bosque, *m.*, wood, forest.
 brillante, bright, brilliant.
 brillar, to shine.
 británico, *adj.*, British.
 brusco, *adj.*, brusque, rough.
 bueno, *adj.*, good.
 bulto, *m.*, form; bale.
 buque, *m.*, vessel, ship.
 burro, *m.*, donkey.
 buscar, to look for, to search, to seek.
 butaca, *f.*, armchair.
- cabalgar, to ride.
 caballero, *m.*, gentleman, sir.
 caballo, *m.*, horse.
 cabaña, *f.*, hut, cabin.
 cabello, *m.*, hair.
 caber, to be contained in.
 cabeza, *f.*, head.
 cada, *adj.*, *pron.*, each, each one.
 caer, to fall.
 café, *m.*, coffee; restaurant, café, coffee-house.
 calcular, to calculate, to reckon.
 caldo, *m.*, broth.
 calentar, to warm, to heat.
 calentura, *f.*, fever.
 calor, *m.*, heat, warmth; *hace calor*, it is hot.
 calumniar, to slander.
 calurosamente, *adv.*, warmly.
 calzado, *m.*, foot-wear.
 callarse, to be silent.
 calle, *f.*, street.
 cama, *f.*, bed.
 cambiar, to change, to exchange.
 camino, *m.*, road, way.
 camisa, *f.*, shirt.
 campana, *f.*, bell; *campanilla*, small bell; *de campanillas*, important.
 campesino, *m.*, peasant.

campo, *m.*, field, country.
 canapé, *m.*, couch, settee.
 canasto, *m.*, basket.
 cansado, *adj.*, tired, bored,
 fatigued; tiresome.
 cansar, to tire, to fatigue.
 cantar, to sing.
 capaz, *adj.*, capable, able.
 capital, *f.*, capital (town).
 capitán, *m.*, captain.
 capítulo, *m.*, chapter.
 capricho, *m.*, caprice, fancy.
 cara, *f.*, face.
 ¡caramba! *interj.*, gracious!
 goodness!
 cárcel, *f.*, jail.
 cardinal, *adj.*, cardinal.
 carga, *f.*, burden, cargo.
 cargo, *m.*, employment, posi-
 tion, charge.
 carne, *f.*, flesh, meat.
 caro, dear, expensive.
 carrera, *f.*, course, career.
 carreta, *f.*, waggon.
 carro, *m.*, waggon, car.
 carta, *f.*, letter.
 casa, *f.*, house, home; casa de
 comercio, commercial house,
 firm.
 casar, to marry, wed; casarse,
 to be married.
 casi, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
 casino, *m.*, casino.
 caso, *m.*, case, fact.
 castellano, *m.*, Castilian.
 castigar, to punish.
 castillo, *m.*, castle.
 casualidad, *f.*, chance.
 catalán, *m.*, Catalanian.
 catedrático, *m.*, professor.
 catorce, *num.*, fourteen.
 caucho, *m.*, india-rubber.
 caudal, *m.*, property, wealth,
 means.
 caudaloso, *adj.*, (river) large;
 copious.
 causa, *f.*, cause; a causa de,
 because of.
 causar, to cause, to be the
 cause of.

cautela, *f.*, caution, prudence.
 caverna, *f.*, cave.
 cazar, to hunt.
 cedazo, *m.*, sieve.
 ceder, to cede, to give away.
 celebrar, to celebrate, to per-
 form.
 célebre, *adj.*, celebrated, fa-
 mous, notorious.
 cena, *f.*, dinner, supper.
 cenar, to dine, to sup.
 ceniza, *f.*, ash, ashes.
 centavo, *m.*, cent.
 central, *adj.*, central.
 centro, *m.*, centre.
 ceñir, to gird.
 cerca, *f.*, enclosure, hedge.
 cerca, *adv.*, nearly, near.
 cercar, to surround, to be-
 siege.
 cerdo, *m.*, pig.
 cerrar, to shut, to close.
 cervecería, *f.*, ale-house,
 brewery.
 cerveza, *f.*, beer.
 cesar, cesar de, to cease.
 ciego, *adj.*, blind.
 cielo, *m.*, heaven.
 ciencia, *f.*, science.
 ciento (cien), *num.*, one hun-
 dred.
 cierto, *adj.*, certain, sure, true.
 cifrar en, to place in.
 cima, *f.*, top, summit.
 cinamomo, *m.*, cinnamon.
 cinco, *num.*, five.
 cincuenta, *num.*, fifty.
 cisne, *m.*, swan.
 ciudad, *f.*, city, town.
 civilización, *f.*, civilization.
 claro, *adj.*, clear.
 clase, *f.*, kind, class.
 clásico, *adj.*, classic.
 cliente, *m.*, client, customer.
 clima, *m.*, climate.
 cobre, *m.*, copper.
 cocer, to boil, to cook.
 cocina, *f.*, kitchen, cooking.
 cocinero, *m.* (*f.* cocinera),
 cook.

coger, to catch ; to pick.
 colar, to go in, to penetrate, to run in ; to pass through, to strain.
 colegio, *m.*, college, school.
 colocar, to place, to put.
 coloquio, *m.*, talk, conversation.
 colorado, *adj.*, red.
 comandante, *m.*, commander.
 comarca, *f.*, region, tract, country.
 comedia, *f.*, play, comedy.
 comenzar, to begin.
 comer, to eat, to dine.
 comerciante, *m.*, merchant.
 comercio, *m.*, trade, commerce.
 comida, *f.*, food, dinner, meal.
 como, *adv.*, as, like.
 ¿ cómo ? *interrogative adv.*, how?
 comodidad, *f.*, comfort.
 compañero, *m.*, companion, comrade.
 compañía, *f.*, company, society.
 comparar, to compare.
 compatible, *adj.*, suitable.
 competir, to compete.
 comprar, to buy.
 comprender, to understand, to realize, to comprise.
 computar, to compute.
 común, *adj.*, common.
 comunicación; *f.*, communication.
 comunicar, to communicate.
 con, *prep.*, with ; con tal que, provided.
 conceder, to grant.
 concierto, *m.*, concert.
 concurrido, *adj.*, attended.
 condición, *f.*, condition.
 conferencia, *f.*, lecture.
 confesar, to confess, to own.
 confiar, to trust.
 confirmar, to confirm.
 conforme, *adj.*, agreeable, resigned ; *adv.*, according to.
 confundir, to confuse.

conocer, to know, to be acquainted with.
 conocimiento, *m.*, knowledge ; conocimiento de embarque, bill of lading.
 conque, *conj.*, so, then.
 conquistar, to conquer.
 conseguir, to get, to procure.
 consejo, *m.*, advice ; council (body of councillors).
 conservar, to preserve, to keep.
 considerar, to consider, to think over.
 consiguiente, *adj.*, consequent ; por consiguiente, consequently, therefore.
 construir, to build, to construct.
 consultar, to consult.
 contacto, *m.*, contact.
 contar, to tell, to relate, to count.
 contener, to contain.
 contentarse, to be satisfied with.
 contento, *adj.*, satisfied, happy.
 contestar, to answer, to reply.
 continuar, to continue, to go on, to resume.
 contra, *prep.*, against.
 contrario, *adj.*, contrary, opposite.
 contribuir, to contribute.
 conveniente, *adj.*, convenient.
 convenir, to suit, to agree, to be proper or becoming.
 convento, *m.*, convent.
 convertir, to convert, to change.
 convicción, *f.*, conviction.
 convidar, to invite.
 copiar, to copy.
 corazón, *m.*, heart.
 corbata, *f.*, tie, necktie, cravat.
 cordial, *adj.*, cordial, heart-felt.
 corral, *m.*, courtyard, poultry yard.
 correctamente, *adv.*, correctly, right, rightly.
 corregir, to correct.
 correo, *m.*, mail, post.
 correr, to run ; (water) to flow ; correr a, to hasten to.

correspondencia, f., correspondence.
corriente, f., current, stream.
corriente, adj., current, (date) instant.
cortar, to cut, to sever.
cortés, adj., courteous.
corto, adj., short.
cosa, f., thing, matter.
 cosecha, f., harvest, crop.
costa, f., coast; **costas, f. pl.**, costs.
costar, to cost.
costumbre, f., custom, habit.
crear, to create.
crecer, to grow.
crecimiento, m., growth.
crédito, m., credit.
creer, to believe.
criado, m., servant.
criar, to breed, to bear.
crystalino, adj., clear, crystal-line, limpid.
cristiano, adj. and m., Christian.
criterio, m., criterion, standard, judgment.
cuadra, f., stable.
cuadro, m., picture.
cuadrúpedo, m., quadruped.
cuajar, to coagulate, to harden.
cual, rel., which; **cuál?** which?
cuando, adj., when.
cuantioso, adj., large, copious.
cuanto, adj., as much as.
cuánto? adj., adv., how much?
cuarto, m., room, quarter.
cuatro, num., four.
cubierta, f., cover.
cubierto, adj., covered.
cubrir, to cover.
cucaracha, f., cockroach.
cuchillo, m., knife.
cuenta, f., account; **tener en cuenta**, to bear in mind; **por cuenta de**, on behalf of.
cuento, m., story, narrative.
cuerno, m., horn.
cuero, m., leather, hide.
cuerpo, m., body.

cuidado, m., care.
cuidar, to take care of.
cultivar, to cultivate.
cumbre, f., top, summit.
cumplir, to fulfil.
curioso, adj., curious, inquisitive.
curiosidad, f., curiosity.
curso, m., course.
cuyo (-a, -os, -as), rel., whose, of which.
cheque, m., cheque; (America) check.
chico, adj., little; **m.**, small boy.
chimenea, f., chimney.
chispa, f., spark.
chistoso, adj., humorous, witty.
choza, f., hut, cabin.
chuleta, f., chop.
damasco, m., damask.
daño, m., harm, injury, damage.
dar, to give, to produce; dar a luz, to give birth to, to publish.
de, prep., of, from, with.
debajo, adv., underneath.
deber, m., duty.
deber, to owe, must, ought.
débil, adj., weak.
decencia, f., decency.
decente, adj., decent.
decidir, to decide.
décimo, adj., tenth.
decir, to say, to tell.
dedicar, to dedicate.
defender, to defend.
definitiva, f.: **en definitiva**, summing up, in fine.
dejar, to leave, to let.
delante, adv., before, in front.
deleitar, to please, to delight.
demasiado, adj. and adv., too, too much, (*pl.*) too many.
demora, f., delay; **sin demora**, instantly, without delay.
dentadura, f., set of teeth.
dentro, adv., within, inside.
deparar, to offer, to afford.

- departamento, *m.*, compart-
 ment, department.
 dependiente, *m.*, clerk.
 derecho, *m.*, right.
 desalquilado, *adj.*, vacant.
 desarrollar, to develop.
 desarrollo, *m.*, development.
 desayunar, desayunarse, to
 breakfast.
 descansar, to rest.
 desconfiado, *adj.*, diffident.
 desconocido, *adj.*, unknown.
 describir, to describe.
 descubrir, to discover.
 descuidar, to neglect; to be
 careless.
 descuido, neglect, negligence,
 carelessness.
 desde, *prep.*, from, since.
 desear, to desire, to wish.
 desensillar, to unsaddle.
 desenvolver, to develop, to
 unwrap.
 deseo, *m.*, wish, desire.
 desgracia, *f.*, misfortune.
 desgraciado, *adj.*, unfortunate.
 deshacer, to undo; desha-
 cerse, to disappear.
 designación, *f.*, name, designa-
 tion.
 desocupado, *adj.*, idle, vacant.
 despacio, *adv.*, slowly.
 despacho, *m.*, dispatch, ex-
 pedition.
 despejado, *adj.*, clear, bright.
 despojar, to deprive of; des-
 pojarse de su traje, to und-
 dress.
 después, *adv.*, afterwards, after.
 desquitarse, to get even.
 destino, *m.*, destination; des-
 tino; journey's end; fate.
 desvelarse, to keep awake, to
 be wakeful.
 detener, to detain, to stop, to
 arrest.
 determinar, to determine, to
 decide.
 detrás, *adv.*, behind; — de, be-
 hind, after, at the back of.
- devastación, *f.*, devastation.
 devolver, to return.
 devorar, to devour, to eat
 up.
 día, *m.*, day; de día, by day;
 al otro día, next day.
 diablo, *m.*, devil.
 dialecto, *m.*, dialect.
 dictar, to deliver (a speech),
 to dictate.
 dicho, *m.*, saying.
 diente, *m.*, tooth.
 diez, *num.*, ten.
 diferente, *adj.*, different.
 diferir, to defer, to differ.
 difícil, *adj.*, difficult.
 dificultad, *f.*, difficulty.
 dignarse, to deign, to please.
 digno, *adj.*, worthy.
 diligente, *adj.*, diligent, indus-
 trious.
 dinero, *m.*, money.
 Dios, *m.*, God.
 directamente, *adv.*, straight.
 dirigir, to direct, to address.
 discípulo, *m.*, pupil, student,
 disciple.
 discreto, *adj.*, discreet, wise,
 witty.
 discurrir, to go about, to dis-
 course.
 discusión, *f.*, discussion.
 disimular, to feign.
 disipar, to waste, to squander.
 disminuir, to diminish, to les-
 sen.
 disponer, to arrange, to order,
 to bid.
 disposición, *f.*, disposition.
 disputa, *f.*, dispute, contest.
 distante, *adj.*, distant, far.
 distinguir, to distinguish, to
 discern.
 distinto, *adj.*, different.
 diverso, *adj.*, different.
 divertirse, to amuse oneself.
 divisar, to observe, to per-
 ceive.
 doble, *adj.*, double.
 docena, *f.*, dozen.

documento, *m.*, document.
 doler, to ache, to feel pain;
 dolido, *adj.*, sorry, sorrowful.
 dolor, *m.*, grief, pain, sorrow.
 domingo, *m.*, Sunday.
 donaire, *m.*, grace, elegance.
 donde, *adv.*, where; ¿dónde?,
 where?
 dormir, to sleep; dormirse,
 to fall asleep.
 dos, *num.*, two.
 drama, *m.*, drama, play.
 duda, *f.*, doubt; dudar, to doubt.
 dueño, *m.*, owner.
 dulce, *adj.*, sweet; *m.*, sweet-
 meat.
 duque, *m.*, duke.
 durante, *prep.*, during, in the
 meantime.
 durar, to last.
 duro, *adj.*, hard.
 e (*conj.*, used instead of *y* before
 initial *i* or *hi*, § 246), and.
 echar, to throw, to put forth;
 echar a correr, to start run-
 ning.
 edad, *f.*, age.
 edificar, to build.
 edificio, *m.*, building, edifice,
 structure.
 educar, to instruct, to educate,
 to train.
 efecto, *m.*, effect.
 ejemplar, *m.*, copy; *adj.*, ex-
 emplary.
 ejecutar, to carry out, to exe-
 cute.
 ejercicio, *m.*, exercise, theme.
 elegir, to elect, to choose.
 elevado, *adj.*, high, lofty,
 elevated.
 elogio, *m.*, praise.
 embajador, *m.*, ambassador.
 embaldosar, to pave, to floor.
 embarcar, to ship, to go on
 shipboard.
 embelesarse, to be charmed.
 embromar, to tease, to annoy.
 embuste, *m.*, lie.

emisión, *f.*, issue.
 emparedado, *m.*, sandwich.
 empeño, desire, effort, engage-
 ment.
 emperador, *m.*, emperor.
 empezar, to begin.
 emplear, to employ, to use.
 empleo, employment, use.
 emprender, to undertake.
 en, *prep.*, in, at, on; en medio,
 amidst, amid.
 encargo, *m.*, order, charge.
 encender, to kindle.
 encima, above, on top.
 encina, *f.*, evergreen oak.
 encontrar, to find, to meet.
 enemigo, *m.*, enemy.
 Enero, *m.*, January.
 enfermo, *adj.*, ill, sick; *m.*,
 patient.
 engañar, to deceive; enga-
 ñarse, to be mistaken.
 enhiesto, *adj.*, upright, erect.
 enorme, *adj.*, enormous.
 enramada, *f.*, bower, grove.
 enseñar, to teach, to show.
 enteramente, *adv.*, entirely.
 enterarse, to become aware,
 to discover.
 enter necerse, to be touched.
 entonces, *adv.*, then.
 entrada, *f.*, entrance, opening.
 entrar, to enter, to get in, to
 go in, to come in.
 entre, *prep.*, between, amidst,
 among, in.
 entregar, to deliver, to hand,
 to give.
 entretanto, *adv.*, meanwhile.
 entretenido, *adj.*, amusing,
 entertaining.
 entusiasmo, *m.*, enthusiasm.
 enviar, to send.
 época, *f.*, epoch, age, time.
 equivocación, *f.*, mistake, error.
 era, *f.*, threshing-floor, potato-
 patch; era.
 erizar, to bristle.
 error, *m.*, error, mistake.
 escapar, to escape, to flee.

- escaso, *adj.*, scarce, short.
 escena, *f.*, scene.
 escoger, to select, to choose.
 escondrijo, *m.*, hiding-place.
 escribir, to write.
 escritor, *m.*, writer, author.
 escritura, *f.*, writing, deed.
 escuchar, to listen to; to hear.
 escuela, *f.*, school.
 ese, *pron.*, that.
 esencial, *adj.*, essential.
 esfuerzo, *m.*, effort.
 esmeradamente, *adv.*, carefully.
 espacio, *m.*, space, room.
 espada, *f.*, sword.
 espantar, to frighten.
 español, *adj.*, *m.*, Spanish, Spaniard.
 esparcir, to spread, to scatter.
 especial, *adj.*, special.
 especie, *f.*, kind, species.
 espejo, *m.*, mirror.
 esperanza, *f.*, hope.
 esperar, to await, to wait, to expect, to hope for.
 espeso, *adj.*, dense, thick.
 espíritu, *m.*, spirit, mind.
 espléndido, *adj.*, splendid, magnificent.
 esposa, *f.*, wife; esposas, *f. pl.*, handcuffs.
 esposo, *m.*, husband.
 esquina, *f.*, corner.
 establecer, to establish.
 estación, *f.*, season, station.
 estado, *m.*, state, condition; los Estados Unidos, the United States.
 estampar, to print, to stamp.
 estante, *m.*, shelf, bookcase.
 estar, to be.
 Este, *m.* and *adj.*, East.
 este, *pron.*, this.
 estilo, *m.*, style.
 estimar, to prize, to esteem.
 estío, *m.*, summer.
 estorbar, to hinder, to obstruct, to hamper.
 estudiar, to study, to investigate.
 estudio, *m.*, study.
 estúpido, *adj.*, stupid, foolish.
 eterno, *adj.*, eternal.
 evitar, to avoid.
 exacto, *adj.*, exact.
 examinar, to examine; to look into.
 excelente, *adj.*, excellent.
 excepto, *adv.*, except, but, excepting.
 exclamar, to exclaim.
 exhortar, to exhort, to warn.
 existir, to exist, to be.
 éxito, *m.*, outcome, success.
 explicar, to explain.
 exponer, to lay down, to explain.
 exportar, to export.
 expresarse, to express one's self.
 expreso, *adj.*, *m.*, express.
 extender, to extend.
 extenso, *adj.*, extensive.
 exterior, *adj.*, external, outward; *m.*, outside.
 extraer, to draw, to extract.
 extranjero, *adj.*, foreign.
 extranjero, *m.*, foreigner; en el extranjero, abroad.
 extraño, *m.*, stranger; *adj.*, strange.
 extremidad, *f.*, extreme part, extremity.
 extremo, *m.*, extremity; en extremo, extremely.
 fabricar, to manufacture, to make.
 fábula, *f.*, fable.
 fácil, *adj.*, easy.
 factura, *f.*, bill, invoice.
 falda, *f.*, skirt.
 falso, *adj.*, untrue, false.
 falta, *f.*, fault.
 faltar, to be lacking, to be missing.
 familia, *f.*, family.
 famoso, *adj.*, famous.
 fantasma, *m.*, phantom.

- farol, *m.*, lantern, street lamp.
 fastidiar, to annoy.
 fatiga, *f.*, hardship, toil, fatigue.
 fatigado, *adj.*, tired, fatigued.
 favor, *m.*, favour.
 fe, *f.*, faith.
 Febrero, *m.*, February.
 fecha, *f.*, date.
 fechado, *adj.*, dated.
 feliz, *adj.*, happy.
 feo, *adj.*, ugly.
 feroz, *adj.*, fierce, ferocious.
 ferretería, *f.*, hardware, hardware store.
 ferrocarril, *m.*, railway, railroad.
 fértil, *adj.*, fertile.
 festivo, *adj.*, festive, jovial.
 fiambre, *m.*, cold meat.
 fiel, *adj.*, faithful.
 fiesta, *f.*, feast, festival, festivity, merry-making.
 figurarse, to fancy, to imagine.
 fila, *f.*, row, file.
 fin, *m.*, end, purpose.
 firma, *f.*, signature, firm.
 firmar, to sign.
 flaco, *adj.*, meagre, weak, frail.
 flauta, *f.*, flute.
 flor, *f.*, flower.
 florecer, to bloom.
 forastero, *m.*, stranger.
 formalidad, *f.*, seriousness, gravity, formality.
 formar, to form.
 frac, *m.*, dress-coat.
 franco, *adj.*, frank.
 frase, *f.*, phrase.
 frecuente, *adj.*, frequent.
 freír, to fry; frito, *adj.*, fried.
 freno, *m.*, bridle, brake.
 frente, *f.*, forehead.
 fresco, *adj.*, cool, fresh.
 fresca, *f.*, coolness.
 frío, *m.* and *adj.*, cold.
 frisar, to approach, to be on the boundary of.
 fruto, *m.*, fruit; fruta, *f.*, fruit (edible).
 fuego, *m.*, fire.
- fuente, *f.*, spring, source, fountain.
 fuera, *adv.*, outside, out.
 fuerte, *adj.*, strong.
 fuerza, *f.*, strength.
 fulano, *m.*, So-and-So.
 fundar, to found.
 futuro, *m.* and *adj.*, future, coming.
- gafas, *f. pl.*, spectacles, eyeglasses.
 gallego, *adj.*, Galician.
 gallina, *f.*, hen.
 gallinero, *m.*, hennery, hen-roost.
 gallo, *m.*, cock, rooster.
 gana, *f.*, inclination, mind, desire.
 ganado, *m.*, cattle.
 ganancia, *f.*, profit.
 ganar, to earn, to win.
 gañir, to yelp.
 garra, *f.*, claw.
 gastar, to spend.
 gasto, *m.*, expense.
 gato, *m.*, cat.
 general, *m.* and *adj.*, general.
 género, *m.*, kind; *pl.*, géneros, goods.
 generoso, *adj.*, generous.
 genio, *m.*, character, disposition, genius.
 gente, *f.*, people.
 geográfico, *adj.*, geographic.
 gestión, *f.*, management.
 girar, to turn, to revolve; to draw on.
 giro, *m.*, draft, bill of exchange.
 gloria, *f.*, glory.
 gobernador, *m.*, governor.
 gobierno, *m.*, government.
 golfo, *m.*, gulf, bay.
 golondrina, *f.*, swallow.
 golpe, *m.*, blow.
 gorrión, *m.*, sparrow.
 gozar de, to enjoy.
 gracia, *f.*, grace, favour.
 gracias, *f. pl.*, thanks.

gracioso, *adj.*, graceful, arch, amusing.

grado, *m.*, degree.

gramática, *f.*, grammar.

gran, **grande**, *adj.*, large, big, great.

grandeza, *f.*, greatness.

gratitud, *f.*, gratitude, thankfulness.

grato, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable.

gritar, to scream, to cry.

grupo, *m.*, group.

guante, *m.*, glove.

guapo, *adj.*, handsome, pretty, neat; sprightly, gallant.

guardar, to keep, to guard, to watch.

guarnecer, to garnish, to border, to protect.

guerra, *f.*, war.

guía, *m.* and *f.*, guide.

guisar, to cook.

gustar de, to like, to be fond of.

gusto, *m.*, taste, pleasure.

haber, to have.

hábil, *adj.*, able, skilful.

habitación, *f.*, room, apartment.

habitante, *m.*, inhabitant.

habitar, to inhabit.

habla, *f.*, language, talk, discourse.

hablar, to speak, to talk.

hacendado, *m.*, farmer, landowner.

hacer, to make, to do.

hacia, *prep.*, towards.

hacienda, *f.*, farm.

hallar, to find; —*se*, to be.

hambre, *f.*, hunger; tener hambre, to be hungry.

harto, *adv.*, quite, plenty; *adj.*, full, complete.

hasta, *prep.*, as far as, until, till, even.

hecho, *m.*, fact; *part.*, made.

hemisferio, *m.*, hemisphere.

heno, *m.*, hay.

heredar, to inherit.

herida, *f.*, wound.

hermano, *m.*, brother; *hermana*, *f.*, sister.

hermoso, *adj.*, beautiful; handsome, fine.

hermosura, *f.*, beauty.

héroe, *m.*, hero.

herrador, *m.*, farrier.

herramienta, *f.*, tool.

hielo, *m.*, ice, frost.

hierro, *m.*, iron.

hijo, *m.*, son; *hija*, *f.*, daughter.

hinchar, to swell.

historia, *f.*, history.

histórico, *adj.*, historic.

hombre, *m.*, man.

honrado, *adj.*, honest.

hora, *f.*, hour.

hormiga, *f.*, ant.

hormiguero, *m.*, ant-hill.

horrible, *adj.*, horrible, awful.

horror, *m.*, horror, awe.

hotel, *m.*, hotel.

hoy, *adv.*, to-day.

hoyo, *m.*, hole, pit.

hueco, *m.* and *adj.*, hollow.

huelga, *f.*, strike.

huerta, *f.*, vegetable garden.

huerto, *m.*, orchard, fruit garden.

huésped, *m.*, guest, host, boarder.

huéspeda, *f.*, guest (or hostess); landlady.

huevo, *m.*, egg.

huir, to flee, to run away.

humano, *adj.*, human; humane.

humanidad, *f.*, human kind, humanity.

húmedo, *adj.*, moist, wet, damp.

humilde, *adj.*, humble.

humo, *m.*, smoke.

idea, *f.*, idea.

idéntico, *adj.*, identical, equal.

idioma, *m.*, language.

iglesia, *f.*, church.

ignorante, *adj.*, *m.*, stupid, ignorant.

ignorar, to be ignorant of.
 imaginación, *f.*, imagination.
 imitar, to imitate.
 imperio, *m.*, empire.
 impertinente, *adj.*, impertinent.
 importancia, *f.*, importance.
 importante, *adj.*, important.
 importar, to import.
 imposible, *adj.*, impossible.
 imprenta, *f.*, press.
 impresionar, to impress.
 imprimir, to print.
 incierto, *adj.*, uncertain.
 incluir, to include.
 indeciso, *adj.*, hesitating, undecided.
 indígena, *m.*, native.
 indignado, *adj.*, indignant.
 indio, *m.*, Indian.
 indudable, *adj.*, unquestionable, undoubted.
 inesperado, unexpected.
 infeliz, *adj.*, unhappy, luckless.
 inferior, *adj.*, inferior, lower.
 infinito, infinite, endless.
 influjo, *m.*, influence, influx.
 informar, to inform, to report.
 infructuoso, *adj.*, fruitless.
 inglés, *adj.*, *m.*, English.
 inmediatamente, *adv.*, immediately.
 inmediato, *adj.*, immediate.
 inmortal, immortal.
 innumerable, *adj.*, numberless.
 inocente, *adj.*, innocent.
 inolvidable, *adj.*, unforgettable.
 inquietud, *f.*, uneasiness, restlessness.
 insistir, to insist.
 insoportable, *adj.*, unbearable.
 instante, *m.*, instant.
 instructivo, *adj.*, instructive, enlightening.
 inteligente, *adj.*, intelligent, clever.
 interés, *m.*, interest.
 interesante, *adj.*, interesting.

interior, *m.*, inner part; *adj.*, inside.
 internar, to confine, to take to the interior of a country.
 interrumpir, to interrupt.
 íntimo, *adj.*, intimate, deep.
 introducir, to introduce.
 inútil, *adj.*, useless.
 inverosímil, *adj.*, unlikely.
 invertir, to invert; to invest.
 invierno, *m.*, winter.
 ir, to go.
 isla, *f.*, island.
 istmo, *m.*, isthmus.
 izquierdo, *adj.*, left.
 jabón, *m.*, soap.
 jactarse, to boast of.
 jaguar, *m.*, jaguar.
 jamás, *adv.*, never, ever.
 jamón, *m.*, ham.
 jardín, *m.*, garden.
 jinete, *m.*, horseman, rider.
 joven, *m.*, young man; *f.*, young girl.
 joya, *f.*, jewel.
 jueves, *m.*, Thursday.
 juez, *m.*, judge.
 jugar, to play.
 junio, *m.*, June.
 Junta Directiva, *f.*, Board of Directors.
 juntamente, *adv.*, together, jointly.
 juntar, to join.
 junto, *adj.*, together, *adv.*, close by, near to.
 justicia, *f.*, justice.
 justo, *adj.*, just.
 juventud, *f.*, youth.
 labrar, to till, to cultivate.
 labriego, *m.*, farm-labourer.
 lado, *m.*, side.
 lágrima, *f.*, tear.
 lana, *f.*, wool.
 lance, *m.*, incident, episode.
 largo, *adj.*, long; a lo largo, along.

lástima, *f.*, pity.
 latín, *m.*, latin.
 lavar, to wash.
 lavoteo, *m.*, hasty washing.
 lección, *f.*, lesson.
 lectura, *f.*, reading.
 leche, *f.*, milk.
 lechería, *f.*, dairy.
 leer, to read.
 lejos, *adv.*, far.
 lento, *adj.*, slow; *lentamente*,
adv., slowly.
 letra, *f.*, letter.
 levantar, to lift, to raise.
 libre, *adj.*, free.
 libro, *m.*, book.
 licencia, *f.*, leave of absence,
 permit, licence.
 ligar, to bind, to attach.
 ligero, *adj.*, thin, light, slight;
 gentle, swift.
 limpiar, to clean.
 limpio, *adj.*, clean.
 lindo, *adj.*, pretty.
 línea, *f.*, line.
 líquido, *m.*, *adj.*, liquid.
 lirio, *m.*, lily.
 lisonjear, to flatter.
 listo, *adj.*, ready, handy; clever.
 lobo, *m.*, wolf.
 locomotora, *f.*, locomotive.
 locuacidad, *f.*, loquacity, talka-
 tiveness.
 lograr, to attain, to succeed.
 loseta, *f.*, small paving tile.
 lucir, to show, to shine.
 luego, *adv.*, soon, then.
 lugar, *m.*, place, village; *en*
lugar de, instead of.
 lugareño, peasant, country-
 man.
 luna, *f.*, moon.
 lunes, *m.*, Monday.
 luz, *f.*, light; *dar a luz*, to
 publish, to issue, to give
 birth to.
 llamar, to call, to be called, to
 name; ¿cómo se llama?
 what is his name?

llegada, *f.*, arrival.
 llegar, to arrive, to come.
 llenar, to fill.
 lleno, *adj.*, full; *de lleno*, fully,
 entirely.
 llevar, to carry, to take to, to
 bear, to bring.
 llorar, to cry, to weep.
 llover, to rain.
 lluvia, *f.*, rain.
 macizo, *adj.*, massive, solid.
 madera, *f.*, wood, lumber.
 madre, *f.*, mother.
 madrugada, *f.*, morning.
 madrugar, to rise early.
 madurar, to ripen.
 maduro, *adj.*, ripe.
 maestro, *m.*, maestra, *f.*,
 teacher.
 mágico, *adj.*, magic.
 magnífico, *adj.*, magnificent.
 mahón, *m.*, nankeen.
 maíz, *m.*, maize, corn.
 mal, *adv.*, badly, wrong.
 mal, malo, *adj.*, bad.
 maleta, *f.*, valise.
 malicia, *f.*, cunning, malice.
 malicioso, *adj.*, cunning, ma-
 licious.
 mamá, *f.*, mamma, mother.
 mancha, *f.*, stain, spot.
 manchego, *adj.*, appertaining
 to *la Mancha*.
 mandar, to send, to command,
 to order.
 mandria, *m.*, good-for-nothing
 person, poltroon.
 manera, *f.*, manner, way.
 manga, *f.*, sleeve.
 manifestar, to manifest, to in-
 form.
 manifiesto, *adj.*, manifest, ob-
 vious.
 manjar, *m.*, food, article of
 food.
 mano, *f.*, hand.
 mansión, *f.*, mansion.
 manso, *adj.*, tame, gentle.
 manteca de vaca, *f.*, butter.

mantener, to keep, to uphold.
 mantequilla, *f.*, butter.
 manzana, *f.*, apple.
 manzano, *m.*, apple-tree.
 mañana, *f.*, morning; *adv.*, to-morrow.
 máquina, *f.*, machine, engine.
 maquinaria, *f.*, machinery.
 mar, *m., f.*, sea.
 maravilla, *f.*, marvel, wonder.
 maravilloso, *adj.*, marvellous, wonderful.
 marcar, to register, to mark, to brand.
 marcha, *f.*, course; march, progress.
 marchar, to walk, to march; marcharse, to go away, to leave.
 margarita, *f.*, daisy.
 marido, *m.*, husband.
 martes, *m.*, Tuesday.
 Marzo, *m.*, March.
 más, *adv.*, more; más bien, rather.
 mas, *conj.*, but.
 matar, to kill.
 materia, *f.*, matter; en materia de, regarding, concerning.
 material, *m.*, material.
 mayor, *adj.*, larger, greater; elder, older.
 mayordomo, *m.*, butler, major-domo.
 mecer, to stir, to rock.
 mediados (a), towards the middle.
 médico, *m.*, doctor.
 medida, *f.*, measure; a medida que, in proportion as.
 medio, *m.*, middle; *pl.*, means; en medio, amid; por medio, through, throughout, by means of.
 medio, *adj.*, half, mean, average.
 mediodía, *m.*, noon, midday.
 medir, to measure.
 mejor, *adj., adv.*, better.

mejora, *f.*, improvement.
 melancólico, *adj.*, melancholy.
 membrillo, *m.*, quince.
 memoria, *f.*, memory; *f. pl.*, regards, remembrances.
 mendigo, *m.*, beggar, mendicant.
 menor, *adj.*, smaller, younger; *m.*, minor.
 menos, *adj., adv.*, less, minus; a menos, unless.
 mentir, to lie; mentira, *f.*, lie.
 menudo, *adj.*, fine, minute; a menudo, often, frequently.
 mercadería, *f.*, merchandise.
 mercado, *m.*, market.
 mercancía, *f.*, merchandise.
 merced, *f.*, reward, mercy; merced a, owing to.
 mérito, *m.*, merit.
 mero, *adj.*, mere.
 mes, *m.*, month.
 meter, to put, to put into; meterse, to meddle, to interfere.
 método, *m.*, method, way.
 mezclar, to mix; mezclarse, to meddle, to interfere.
 mezquino, *adj.*, poor, meagre, mean.
 mezquita, *f.*, mosque.
 miedo, *m.*, fear.
 miembro, *m.*, limb, member.
 mientras, *conj.*, while; mientras que, whereas.
 migas, *f. pl.*, marrow, crumbs.
 mil, *num.*, thousand.
 milla, *f.*, mile.
 millón, *m.*, million.
 ministro, *m.*, minister, cabinet officer, secretary of state.
 minuto, *m.*, minute.
 mirada, *f.*, glance, look.
 mirar, to look at, to gaze.
 miseria, *f.*, poverty, misery.
 mísero, *adj.*, miserable.
 mismo, *adj.*, same, very; él mismo, himself.
 misterio, *m.*, mystery.

- mitad, *f.*, half.
 moda, *f.*, fashion, style.
 moderno, *adj.*, modern.
 modesto, *adj.*, modest.
 modificar, to modify.
 modista, *f.*, milliner, dress-maker.
 modo, *m.*, manner, way; de modo que, so that.
 mojado, *adj.*, wet, damp.
 mojar, to wet, to drench.
 molestar, to bother, to annoy, to trouble, to worry.
 momento, *m.*, moment.
 monarca, *m.*, monarch, ruler.
 moneda, *f.*, coin.
 monje, *m.*, monk.
 mono, *m.*, monkey, ape.
 monstruo, *m.*, monster, prodigy.
 montaña, *f.*, mountain.
 montar, to mount, to ride.
 monte, *m.*, mountain.
 montón, *m.*, heap.
 monumental, *adj.*, monumental.
 morado, *adj.*, purple, violet.
 morador, *m.*, dweller.
 moraleja, *f.*, moral.
 morder, to bite.
 moreno, *adj.*, brown.
 morir, to die.
 mortal, *adj.*, mortal.
 mostrador, *m.*, counter.
 mostrar, to show.
 motivo, *m.*, motive.
 mover, to move.
 movimiento, *m.*, motion.
 mozo, *m.*, servant; young man.
 muchacha, *f.*, girl.
 muchedumbre, *f.*, crowd, multitude.
 mucho, *adj.*, much, a great deal of.
 mucho, *adv.*, much, a great deal.
 muebles, *m. pl.*, furniture.
 muelle, *m.*, spring, quay.
 muerte, *f.*, death.
 muerto, *adj.*, dead.
 mujer, *f.*, woman, wife.
 mula, *f.*; mule.
 mundo, *m.*, world.
 muralla, *f.*, wall, rampart.
 murciélago, *m.*, bat.
 murmurar, to grumble, to complain.
 muro, *m.*, wall.
 musculoso, *adj.*, brawny, muscular.
 música, *f.*, music.
 muy, *adv.*, very.
 nacer, to be born.
 nacimiento, *m.*, birth, source.
 nada, *pron., f.*, nothing.
 nadar, to swim.
 nadie, *pron.*; no one, nobody.
 naranja, *f.*, orange.
 nariz, *f.*, nose.
 narrar, to narrate, to relate.
 natal, *adj.*, native, natal.
 natural, *m.*, native; *adj.*, natural.
 naturaleza, *f.*, nature.
 necesario, *adj.*, necessary.
 necesitar, to need.
 necio, *m.*, fool; *adj.*, silly.
 negar, to deny; -se, to refuse.
 negocio, *m.*, business, affair.
 negro, *m.* and *adj.*, black.
 nevado, *adj.*, snowy; *m.*, snow-covered mountain.
 ni, *conj.*, nor; ni . . . ni, neither . . . nor.
 nieto, *m.*, grandson.
 nieve, *f.*, snow.
 niñez, *f.*, childhood.
 niño, *m.*, child.
 no, *adv.*, not, no.
 noche, *f.*, night; de noche, at or by night; esta noche, to-night.
 nogal, *m.*, walnut-tree.
 nombrar, to appoint, to name, to nominate.
 nombre, *m.*, name.
 Norte, *m.*, North.
 nos, *pron.*, us.
 nosotros (as), *pron.*, we, us

nota, *f.*, note.
 notable, *adj.*, noteworthy, remarkable.
 noticia, *f.*, news, information.
 novedad, *f.*, novelty.
 novela, *f.*, novel.
 Noviembre, *m.*, November.
 nube, *f.*, cloud.
 nuestro, *adj. pron.*, our.
 nueva, *f.*, news.
 nueve, *num.*, nine.
 nuevo, *adj.*, new.
 nuez, *f.*, nut.
 número, *m.*, number.
 nunca, *adv.*, never.
 nutritivo, *adj.*, nutritious, nourishing.

 objeto, *m.*, object; con el objeto de, in order to, for the purpose of.
 obligar, to force, to compel, to oblige.
 obra, *f.*, work; obrar, to act.
 obscuro, *adj.*, dark.
 obsequiar, to present.
 observar, to notice, to observe.
 obstáculo, *m.*, obstacle.
 obtener, to obtain, to get, to procure.
 ocasión, *f.*, opportunity, time, occasion.
 Occidente, *m.*, West.
 ocio, *m.*, leisure, idleness.
 ocultar, to hide, to conceal.
 ocupado, *adj.*, busy.
 ocupar, to occupy; ocuparse en, to busy oneself with.
 ocurrir, to occur, to come to one's mind.
 ocho, *num.*, eight.
 Oeste, *m.*, West.
 ofender, to offend.
 oficial, *m.*, officer; *adj.*, official.
 oficio, *m.*, trade, occupation, business.
 ofrecer, to offer.
 oído, *m.*, ear, hearing.
 oír, to hear.

ojalá, *interj.*, would to Heaven, I wish that.
 ojo, *m.*, eye.
 oler, to smell.
 olor, *m.*, odour.
 olvidar, to forget.
 onza, *f.*, ounce.
 operación, *f.*, operation.
 opinar, to be of opinion, to opine.
 oponerse, to oppose.
 orden, *m.* and *f.*, order.
 ordenar, to order, to dispose.
 ordeñar, to milk.
 ordinario, *adj.*, ordinary.
 organizar, to organize.
 órgano, *m.*, organ.
 orgullo, *m.*, pride.
 oriental, *adj.*, eastern, east.
 Oriente, *m.*, East.
 origen, *m.*, origin, source; dar — a, to give rise to.
 orilla, *f.*, bank, shore.
 oro, *m.*, gold.
 otoño, *m.*, autumn, fall.
 otro, *adj.*, other, another.

 paciencia, *f.*, patience.
 pacífico, *adj.*, peaceful, pacific.
 padre, *m.*, father; *pl.* parents.
 pagar, to pay.
 página, *f.*, page.
 país, *m.*, country, land.
 pájaro, *m.*, bird.
 palabra, *f.*, word.
 pálido, *adj.*, pale.
 palmera, *f.*, palm-tree.
 pan, *m.*, bread.
 pantalón, *m.*, trousers.
 paño, *m.*, cloth, stuff.
 pañuelo, *m.*, handkerchief.
 papá, *m.*, papa, father.
 papel, *m.*, paper; rôle, part.
 papel moneda, *m.*, paper money.
 par, *m.*, pair, couple.
 para, *prep.*, for, to, in order to.
 parar, to stop.
 pardo, *adj.*, grey, brown.

parecer, to appear, to seem, to look like.
 pared, *f.*, wall; paredón, *m.*, great wall, rampart.
 pareja, *f.*, pair, couple.
 pariente, *m.*, relative.
 parlero, *adj.*, chirping, talkative.
 parte, *f.*, part.
 participar, to communicate, to let know, to take part in.
 particular, *adj.*, private.
 partida, *f.*, departure, start, party.
 partido, *m.*, party, side.
 partir, to start, to set out, to leave, to go, to divide.
 pasado, *adj.*, past, last.
 pasar, to pass, spend.
 pasear, pasearse, to walk, to take a walk.
 paseo, *m.*, walk, promenade, journey.
 pasmo, *m.*, wonder.
 paso, *m.*, passage, way, opening.
 pastel, *m.*, pie; pasteles, pastry.
 pastelero, *m.*, pie-man.
 patinar, to skate.
 pato, *m.*, duck.
 patriota, *m.*, patriot.
 patrona, *f.*, hostess, landlady.
 paz, *f.*, peace.
 peculio, *m.*, money, pecuniary means.
 pedir, to ask, to beg, to order; pedir prestado, to borrow.
 peligro, *m.*, danger.
 peligroso, *adj.*, dangerous, perilous.
 pena, *f.*, trouble, pain, sorrow.
 pender, to hang, to be hanging, to depend.
 penetrante, *adj.*, keen, penetrating.
 península, *f.*, peninsula.
 pensamiento, *m.*, thought.
 pensar, to think, to think of, to intend to.

pensativo, *adj.*, thoughtful.
 pensión, *f.*, pension.
 pequeño, *adj.*, small, little.
 pera, *f.*, pear.
 perder, to lose.
 perecer, to perish.
 peregrinación, *f.*, peregrination, pilgrimage.
 periódico, *m.*, newspaper.
 período, *m.*, period.
 perjuicio, *m.*, damage, prejudice, detriment.
 permanecer, to remain, to stay.
 permiso, *m.*, permission, leave.
 permitir, to allow, to permit.
 pero, *conj.*, but.
 perro, *m.*, dog.
 persona, *f.*, person.
 perspectiva, *f.*, prospect, outlook, expectation.
 pertenecer, to belong.
 pesar, *m.*, sorrow; a pesar de, in spite of.
 pesar, to weigh, to be sorry.
 pescado, *m.*, fish (for the table).
 pescador, *m.*, fisher.
 pescar, to fish, to angle.
 peseta, *f.*, twenty cents.
 peso, *m.*, weight; dollar.
 pesquisa, *f.*, search.
 pez, *m.*, fish.
 pico, *m.*, peak, beak, bill; seis mil y pico, six thousand odd.
 pie, *m.*, foot; estar de pie, to stand.
 piedra, *f.*, stone.
 piel, *f.*, skin, hide.
 pierna, *f.*, leg.
 pieza, *f.*, piece.
 pillar, to catch, to seize.
 pintar, to paint.
 pintor, *m.*, painter.
 pintoresco, *adj.*, picturesque.
 pintura, *f.*, picture, paint.
 piso, *m.*, floor, story.
 placer, *m.*, pleasure.
 plan, *m.*, plan, scheme.
 planeta, *m.*, planet.
 planicie, *f.*, plain.
 plata, *f.*, silver.

plaza, *f.*, square.
 plenitud, *f.*, fulness.
 pluma, *f.*, feather, pen.
 población, *f.*, town, population.
 poblar, to populate.
 pobre, *adj.*, poor.
 poco, *adj.*, little; *pl.*, few.
 poder, *m.*, power; poderoso, powerful.
 poder, to be able.
 poesía, *f.*, poetry.
 poeta, *m.*, poet.
 político, *m.*, politician; *adj.*, political, polite.
 polvo, *m.*, powder, dust.
 pollo, *m.*, chicken.
 ponderar, to exaggerate, to extol.
 poner, to put, to place.
 Poniente, *m.*, West.
 popular, *adj.*, popular.
 por, by, for, through; por aquí, around here.
 porque, *conj.*, because.
 ¿por qué?, why?
 porvenir, *m.*, future.
 posada, *f.*, inn.
 poseer, to possess.
 posible, *adj.*, possible.
 posición, *f.*, position.
 practicar, to practise.
 práctico, *adj.*, practical; *m.*, pilot.
 prado, *m.*, meadow, turf.
 precaución, *f.*, care, precaution.
 preceder, to precede.
 precio, *m.*, price.
 precisamente, *adv.*, precisely.
 preciso, *adj.*, precise.
 preferir, to prefer.
 pregunta, *f.*, question.
 preguntar, to ask.
 premio, *m.*, reward, prize.
 prepararse, to prepare.
 presentar, to present, to introduce.
 presente, *m.*, present, gift; *adj.*, present.
 preso, *adj.*, arrested.

prestar, to lend; pedir prestado, to borrow.
 presuroso, *adj.*, hasty, speedy, prompt.
 primavera, *f.*, spring.
 primer, primero, *adj.*, first.
 primitivo, *adj.*, primitive.
 principal, *m.*, patron, manager; *adj.*, principal.
 príncipe, *m.*, prince.
 principiar, to begin.
 probar, to prove, to taste, to test.
 prodigio, *m.*, prodigy.
 producir, to produce.
 producto, *m.*, product, proceeds.
 profesor, *m.*, professor.
 profundo, *adj.*, deep.
 prolijidad, *f.*, prolixity.
 prolongar, to prolong.
 promesa, *f.*, promise.
 prometer, to promise.
 pronto, *adv.*, *adj.*, soon.
 pronunciación, *f.*, pronunciation.
 pronunciar, to utter (a speech); to deliver, to pronounce.
 propiamente, *adv.*, properly.
 propiedad, *f.*, estate, property, propriety.
 propio, *adj.*, proper, own.
 proponer, to propose.
 proporcionar, to afford, to provide.
 propósito, *m.*, purpose; a propósito, convenient; by the way.
 proteger, to protect.
 provecho, *m.*, profit, advantage, benefit; le hace provecho, it does him good.
 provechoso, *adj.*, profitable, advantageous, beneficial.
 proveer, to provide, to supply (with).
 provincia, *f.*, province.
 provisto, *adj.*, provided.
 próximo, *adj.*, near, next.
 publicar, to publish.

público, *adj.*, public; *m.*, public.
 pueblo, *m.*, village, people.
 puerta, *f.*, door, gate.
 puerto, *m.*, port, harbour.
 pues, *conj.*, since, well, for, as, then.
 puesto que, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as, because.
 punta, *f.*, end, top.
 punto, *m.*, point, question, matter.
 punto de vista, point of view.
 puro, *adj.*, pure.

que, *rel.*, that, which, who.
 que, *conj.*, that, in order that.
 quebrantarse, to feel broken, to weaken.
 quedar, to remain.
 querer, to want, to wish.
 querido, *adj.*, dear.
 queso, *m.*, cheese.
 quien, *rel. pron.*, who.
 quinto, *num.*, fifth.
 quitar, to remove, to take off, to rob.
 quizá, quizás, *adv.*, perhaps.

rabia, *f.*, rage, wrath, rabies.
 rabiar, to be angry, to long eagerly for, to become rabid.
 raíz, *f.*, root.
 rama, *f.*, branch, bough.
 rápido, *adj.*, rapid, swift, fast.
 rapidez, *f.*, rapidity, swiftness.
 ratón, *m.*, mouse.
 raya, *f.*, line, parting of the hair, stripe.
 rayar, to draw lines; rayar en, to border on.
 razón, *f.*, reason; tener razón, to be right.
 realizar, to realize, to sell.
 rebaño, *m.*, herd.
 rebosar, to overflow.
 recibir, to receive.
 recibo, *m.*, receipt.
 recitar, to recite.
 reclamación, *f.*, claim.
 recluir, to seclude.

recoger, to gather, to harvest.
 recomendación, *f.*, recommendation.
 recomendar, to recommend.
 recordar, to recall, to remember.
 recuerdo, *m.*, recollection; souvenir.
 recuperar, to get back, to recover.
 recurrir, to resort to, to refer.
 rechazar, to refuse.
 red, *f.*, net.
 rededor, *m.*, surroundings; al rededor, around.
 redondo, *adj.*, round; en redondo, a la redonda, around.
 referir, to tell, to relate, to narrate, to refer to.
 reformar, to reform.
 refrán, *m.*, adage; proverb.
 refugiarse, to take refuge, to seek shelter.
 regalar, to give, to make a present of.
 regalo, *m.*, gift, present.
 región, *f.*, region.
 registro, *m.*, record, registration, book-mark.
 regla, *f.*, rule.
 regordete, *adj.*, plump.
 regresar, to return.
 regular, *adj.*, indifferent.
 reinar, to rule.
 reír, reírse, to laugh.
 relación, *f.*, relation, report, account; friendship.
 reloj, *m.*, watch.
 remedio, *m.*, remedy.
 remesa, *f.*, remittance.
 remontar, to remount, to trace back.
 rendir, to yield, to bear.
 repasar, to go over, to glance over, to rehearse.
 repente, de repente, suddenly, all of a sudden.
 repetir, to repeat.
 replicar, to reply, to answer.

reponer, to replace, to retort,
 to reply.
 reposo, *m.*, repose, rest.
 representar, to represent, to
 give, to act.
 república, *f.*, republic.
 reputación, *f.*, reputation.
 resolver, to solve, to decide.
 respaldo, *m.*, back of a chair.
 respecto, *m.*, relation; con
 respecto a, with reference
 to, with regard to.
 respetar, to respect.
 respeto, *m.*, respect.
 resplandeciente, *adj.*, resplen-
 dent.
 responder, to reply.
 responsable, *adj.*, responsible.
 respuesta, *f.*, answer, re-
 sponse.
 resto, *m.*, remainder, rest.
 resuelto, *adj.*, resolute, deter-
 mined.
 resultado, *m.*, result, outcome.
 resultar, to result, to come.
 retrato, *m.*, portrait.
 revolver, to turn, to turn up.
 rey, *m.*, king.
 rico, *adj.*, rich.
 riego, *m.*, irrigation.
 riel, *m.*, rail.
 rigor, *m.*, rigour, strictness.
 río, *m.*, river.
 riqueza, *f.*, wealth, riches.
 risa, *f.*, laughter.
 risueño, *adj.*, smiling.
 robusto, *adj.*, robust, strong.
 rodear, to surround.
 rogar, to beg, to entreat, to ask.
 rojo, *adj.*, red.
 romance, *adj.*, Romance, Ro-
 manic.
 romper, to break:
 ropa, *f.*, clothes.
 rosa, *f.*, rose.
 rubicundo, *adj.*, reddish, rosy.
 ruego, *m.*, request, prayer.
 ruido, *m.*, noise.
 ruin, *adj.*, inferior, poor, mean,
 coward.

rumoroso, *adj.*, noisy.

sábado, *m.*, Saturday.
 saber, to know, to know how.
 sabio, *adj.*, learned, wise.
 sacar, to extract, to take out,
 to draw.
 saldo, *m.*, balance, settle-
 ment.
 salida, *f.*, exit, outlet.
 salir, to go out, to leave; to
 turn out.
 salto, *m.*, leap; waterfall, ca-
 taract.
 salud, *f.*, health.
 saludar, to salute, to bow.
 saludo, *m.*, salutation, greet-
 ing.
 san, santo, *m.*, saint.
 sano, *adj.*, sound, healthy.
 sardina, *f.*, sardine.
 sastre, *m.*, tailor.
 satisfacer, to satisfy, to give
 satisfaction.
 sazón, *f.*, opportunity, season.
 sed, *f.*, thirst; tengo sed, I am
 thirsty.
 seda, *f.*, silk.
 seguida, *f.*, continuation; en se-
 guida, afterwards, to follow.
 seguir, to follow, to go on, to
 pursue.
 según, *prep.*, according to, as.
 segundo, *m.*, *adj.*, second.
 seguridad, *f.*, certainty, safety;
 con —, with certainty.
 seguro, *adj.*, sure, certain; de
 —, surely; estar — de que,
 to be sure that.
 seis, *num.*, six.
 selvoso, *adj.*, woody, wooded.
 semana, *f.*, week.
 semanario, *m.*, weekly paper.
 semblante, *m.*, features, coun-
 tenance.
 semejante, *adj.*, similar, such.
 sencillo, *adj.*, simple, plain.
 senda, *f.*, path.
 sentado, *adj.*, seated, sitting.
 sentar, to seat, to establish;

- sentarse, to sit down, to sit,
 to perch.
 sentido, *m.*, sense, direction.
 sentir, to feel, to regret, to be
 sorry.
 seña, *f.*, sign; señas, address.
 señor, *m.*, sir, gentleman.
 señora, *f.*, wife, lady, madam.
 señorita, *f.*, miss, young lady.
 separar, to remove, to separ-
 ate.
 Septiembre, *m.*, September.
 ser, *m.*, being.
 ser, to be.
 sereno, *adj.*, serene.
 servicial, *adj.*, obliging.
 servicio, *m.*, service.
 servir, to serve, to be good
 for; servirse, to please.
 sesenta, *num.*, sixty.
 setenta, *num.*, seventy.
 si, *conj.*, if, whether.
 sí, *adv.*, yes.
 sibarita, *m.*, sybarite.
 sibarítico, *adj.*, sybaritic, effe-
 minate.
 siempre, *adv.*, always, ever;
conj., yet.
 siete, *num.*, seven.
 siglo, *m.*, century.
 significado, *m.*, meaning.
 significar, to mean.
 signo, *m.*, sign, signal.
 siguiente, *adj.*, following, next.
 silencio, *m.*, silence.
 silencioso, *adj.*, silent.
 silla, *f.*, chair, saddle.
 sillón, *m.*, easy chair.
 sin, *prep.*, without; sin em-
 bargo, nevertheless, yet.
 sincero, *adj.*, sincere.
 singular, *adj.*, singular.
 sino, *conj.*, but.
 siquiera, *adv.*, even.
 sirvienta, *f.*, maid.
 sistema, *m.*, system.
 sitio, *m.*, place, spot.
 situado, *adj.*, situated.
 sobre, *prep.*, on, upon, above.
 sobre, *m.*, envelope.
- sobresalir, to excel.
 sobretodo, *m.*, overcoat; sobre
 todo, *adv.*, specially, prin-
 cipally.
 sobrino, *m.*, nephew; sobrina,
f., niece.
 sociedad, *f.*, society.
 sol, *m.*, sun.
 solamente, *adv.*, only.
 solazarse, to enjoy oneself.
 soler, to be accustomed to, to
 be wont, to happen.
 sólido, *adj.*, solid.
 solo, *adj.*, single, alone, sole.
 sólo, *adv.*, only.
 soltar, to let loose, to loosen.
 sombra, *f.*, shade, shadow.
 sombrero, *m.*, hat.
 sombrío, *adj.*, sombre, gloomy.
 sonar, to sound, to strike.
 sonido, *m.*, sound.
 sonreírse, to smile.
 sorprendente, *adj.*, surpris-
 ing.
 sorprender, to surprise.
 sorpresa, *f.*, surprise.
 sosegado, *adj.*, quiet.
 sospechar, to suspect, to con-
 jecture.
 suavemente, *adv.*, softly, gent-
 ly.
 súbdito, *m.*, subject.
 subir, to ascend, to go up, to
 rise.
 subjuntivo, *m.*, subjunctive.
 subyugar, to subdue.
 suceder, to happen; to follow.
 suceso, *m.*, event, incident.
 sudamericano, *adj.*, South
 American.
 sudor, *m.*, perspiration, sweat.
 sueldo, *m.*, salary.
 suelo, *m.*, ground, soil, floor.
 suerte, *f.*, fate, luck, sort,
 chance.
 suficiente, *adj.*, enough; suffi-
 cient.
 sugerir, to suggest.
 sujeto, *m.*, person; *adj.*, tied,
 liable.

suma, *f.*, sum.
 sumar, to add, to sum up.
 sumo, *adj.*, supreme; a lo
 sumo, at the utmost.
 suntuoso, *adj.*, sumptuous.
 superior, *adj.*, superior, upper.
 suponer, to suppose.
 supuesto, *adj.*, supposed; por
 supuesto, of course.
 Sur, *m.* and *adj.*, South.

tabla, *f.*, board.
 tacto, *m.*, tact.
 tal, *adj.*, such; con tal que,
 provided; tal vez, perhaps.
 tal por cual, *m.*, guy, a nobody.
 talento, *m.*, talent.
 tamaño, *m.*, size, bulk.
 también, *adv.*, also.
 tampoco, *adv.*, nor, neither.
 tan, tanto, *adv.*, so; as.
 tanto, *adj.*, as much, so much;
pl., as many, so many.
 tapiz, *m.*, tapestry.
 tardar, to delay, to be late.
 tarde, *f.*, afternoon; *adv.*, late.
 taza, *f.*, cup.
 te, *m.*, tea.
 teatro, *m.*, theatre.
 tejer, to weave.
 tejuelo, *m.*, binder's title.
 telégrafo, *m.*, telegraph.
 telegrama, *m.*, telegram.
 temer, to fear, to be afraid.
 temible, *adj.*, awful.
 temporada, *f.*, season, time.
 temprano, *adj.* and *adv.*, early.
 tendencia, *f.*, tendency.
 tenedor, *m.*, fork; — de libros,
 book-keeper, accountant.
 tener, to have; to hold.
 terminar, to end, to finish, to
 conclude, to determine.
 terreno, *m.*, ground, land.
 terrible, *adj.*, terrible, awful.
 territorio, *m.*, territory, piece
 of land.
 tiempo, *m.*, time, weather.
 tienda, *f.*, store, shop, tent;
 ir a tiendas, to go shopping.

tierno, *adj.*, tender, young.
 tierra, *f.*, earth, land, ground.
 tigre, *m.*, tiger.
 tímido, *adj.*, timid, shy.
 tinta, *f.*, ink.
 tío, *m.*, uncle; tía, *f.*, aunt.
 tirar, to shoot, to draw, to
 throw away.
 tiro, *m.*, shot; caballo de tiro,
 draught horse.
 título, *m.*, title.
 toalla, *f.*, towel.
 tocador, *m.*, dressing-table.
 tocante a, *prep.*, concerning,
 as to, with respect to.
 tocar, to touch, to play (an
 instrument); to fall to one's
 share.
 todavía, *adv.*, still, yet.
 todo, *adj.*, all, every.
 toldo, *m.*, tent.
 tomar, to take, to drink.
 tomate, *m.*, tomato.
 tomo, *m.*, volume, tome.
 tono, *m.*, tone, tune; darse
 tono, to give oneself airs.
 tonto, *adj.*, foolish, silly.
 torcer, to twist.
 tormento, *m.*, torment.
 tornar, to return.
 torno, *m.*, lathe; en torno,
 around.
 toro, *m.*, bull.
 tortuga, *f.*, turtle.
 tostada, *f.*, toast.
 trabajar, to work.
 trabajo, *m.*, work.
 trabar, to tie, to bind.
 tradición, *f.*, tradition.
 traducir, to translate.
 traer, to bring, to carry.
 traje, *m.*, costume, dress, gown.
 trance, *m.*, emergency.
 tranquilo, *adj.*, tranquil, quiet.
 transeúnte, *m.*, passer-by.
 transitar, to go, to pass by.
 transportar, to transport.
 transporte, *m.*, transporta-
 tion.
 tras, *prep.*, after, behind.

traste, *m.*, fret; dar al traste con . . . , to spoil.
 tratar, to treat, to try; se trata de, it is a question of.
 trece, *num.*, thirteen.
 treinta, *num.*, thirty.
 tren, *m.*, train.
 tres, *num.*, three.
 trigo, *m.*, wheat.
 triste, *adj.*, sad, melancholy.
 triunfo, *m.*, victory, triumph.
 tronar, to thunder.
 tronco, *m.*, trunk.
 tropa, *f.*, troop.
 trópico, *m.*, tropic.
 turco, *adj., subst.*, Turkish, Turk.

u, *conj.*, or (before o or ho, § 247).
 últimamente, *adv.*, lately, recently.
 último, *adj.*, late, last, latest.
 umbral, *m.*, threshold.
 único, *adj.*, sole, only.
 uniformidad, *f.*, uniformity.
 unir, to unite, to join.
 universal, *adj.*, universal.
 universidad, *f.*, university.
 universo, *m.*, universe.
 uno, una, (numeral) one.
 usar, to use, to wear.
 usted, *pron.*, you.
 usual, *adj.*, usual.
 utensilio, *m.*, utensil.
 útil, *adj.*, useful.
 útiles, *m. pl.*, implements, utensils.
 uva, *f.*, grape.

vaca, *f.*, cow, beef.
 vacilar, to hesitate.
 vago, *adj.*, idle, vacant, vague.
 valer, to be worth, to be valuable.
 valeroso, *adj.*, brave, courageous.
 valiente, *adj.*, brave.
 valioso, *adj.*, valuable.
 valor, *m.*, value, bravery, courage.

valle, *m.*, valley.
 vapor, *m.*, steam; steamer, steamboat.
 variedad, *f.*, variety.
 varios, *adj.*, several, various.
 vecindad, *f.*, neighbourhood, vicinity.
 vecino, *m.*, neighbour.
 veinte, *num.*, twenty.
 venado, *m.*, deer; venison.
 vencer, to conquer.
 vender, to sell.
 venidero, *adj.*, coming, approaching.
 venir, to come; venir a parar, to come to.
 venta, *f.*, sale, inn, roadside inn.
 ventaja, *f.*, advantage.
 ventajoso, *adj.*, advantageous.
 ventura, *f.*, chance, luck.
 ver, to see.
 verano, *m.*, summer.
 verbo, *m.*, verb.
 verdad, *f.*, truth; en verdad, indeed.
 verdadero, *adj.*, truthful, true, real.
 verde, *m., adj.*, green.
 verso, *m.*, verse.
 vestido, *m.*, dress, suit, garment.
 vestimenta, *f.*, see vestido.
 vestir, vestirse, to dress.
 vez, *f.*, time, turn; otra vez, again; tal vez, perhaps; en vez de, instead of; a la vez, at the same time.
 vía, *f.*, way; vía férrea, railway.
 viajar, to travel.
 viaje, *m.*, travel, voyage, journey, trip.
 viajero, *m.*, traveller.
 vida, *f.*, life.
 viejo, *adj.*, old.
 viernes, *m.*, Friday.
 vino, *m.*, wine.
 violeta, *f.*, violet; *adj.*, purple.
 virtud, *f.*, virtue, quality, force.
 visita, *f.*, call, visit; visitor.

- visitar, to visit.
 viso, *m.*, lustre, sheen.
 vista, *f.*, sight, eyesight, gaze;
 a la vista de, in sight of; a
 tres días vista, at three days
 sight.
 viudo, widower; viuda, widow.
 vivaracho, *adj.*, lively.
 vivienda, *f.*, house, residence.
 vivir, to live.
 vivo, *adj.*, alive, live, bright,
 keen, lively.
 vizcaíno, *m.* and *adj.*, Biscayan.
 volandito, *adv.*, in a hurry.
 volar, to fly.
 volcán, *m.*, volcano.
 volumen, *m.*, volume, bulk.
 volver, to turn, to return.
 volverse, to become.
 vos, *pron.*, you.
 vosotros, *pron.*, you.
 voz, *f.*, voice.
- vuelta, *f.*, turn, return.
 vuestro, *pron.*, your.
 vulgar, *adj.*, ordinary, com-
 mon, vulgar.
- wagón or vagón, *m.*, (railway)
 coach, car (for passengers).
- ya, *adv.*, already.
 yegua, *f.*, mare.
 yo, *pron.*, I.
 yugo, *m.*, yoke.
- zagal, *m.*, shepherd.
 zaguán, vestibule, hall, lobby.
 zángano, *m.*, drone.
 zapatero, *m.*, shoemaker.
 zapato, *m.*, shoe.
 zarandajas, *f. pl.*, trifles, ac-
 cessories.
 zona, *f.*, zone.
 zorra, *f.*, zorro, *m.*, vixen, fox.

ENGLISH VOCABULARY

va. transitive verb ; *vn.* intransitive verb.

a, an, un, una.
abandon, *va.*, abandonar.
able, hábil, capaz ; to be —, poder.
abound, *vn.*, abundar.
about, *prep.*, acerca de, respecto de, sobre ; cerca de.
above, *prep.*, sobre, encima de.
abroad, *adv.*, en el extranjero.
absolute, absoluto.
absorb, *va.*, absorber.
abstain, *vn.*, abstenerse.
abstracted, absorto.
abundant, abundante.
accept, *va.*, aceptar.
accessories, las zarandajas.
accompany, *va.*, acompañar.
according to, según.
account, la cuenta ; on — of, a causa de, por motivo de.
ache, *vn.*, doler.
acquainted : to be — with, conocer.
acquire, *va.*, adquirir.
across, *prep.*, al través de.
act, el acto ; *va.*, obrar.
add, *va.*, añadir, agregar.
address, la dirección ; las señas ; el discurso ; *va.*, dirigir.
admire, *va.*, admirar.
adopt, *va.*, adoptar.
advance, *vn.*, avanzar ; adelantar.
advantage, la ventaja, el provecho.
advantageous, ventajoso, provechoso.
advice, el consejo.
advise, *va.*, aconsejar.
affair, el asunto, el negocio.

affection, el afecto.
afford, *va.*, proporcionar.
afraid : to be —, tener miedo ; temer.
after, *prep.*, tras, detrás de ; después de.
afternoon, la tarde.
afterwards, *adv.*, después.
again, *adv.*, otra vez.
against, *prep.*, contra.
age, la edad.
ago, ha, hace.
agree, *vn.*, convenir.
agreeable, simpático ; conforme.
agreement, el convenio.
aid, la ayuda.
air, el aire ; el ambiente.
ale-house, la cervecería.
alike, *adv.*, igualmente.
alive, vivo.
all, todo ; not at —, de ningún modo.
allow, *va.*, permitir ; conceder.
almost, *adv.*, casi.
alone, solo.
alone, *adv.*, sólo ; a solas.
along, *prep.*, a lo largo de.
already, ya.
also, también.
although, aunque.
always, siempre.
amateur, aficionado.
ambassador, el embajador.
amiable, amable, bueno.
amidst, *prep.*, en medio, entre.
among, *prep.*, entre.
amount, *vn.*, montar, ascender.
amuse, *va.*, divertir.
ancient, antiguo.

and, y (é before i or hi).
 angel, el ángel.
 animal, el animal.
 angry, enojado; to get —, enfadarse.
 announce, *va.*, anunciar.
 annoy, *va.*, molestar; embromar.
 annual, anual.
 another, otro; one —, uno a otro.
 answer, la contestación; la respuesta.
 ant, la hormiga.
 ant-hill, el hormiguero.
 anxiety, la ansiedad.
 anxiously, *adv.*, con ansia, ansiosamente.
 any, alguno.
 anybody, alguien, alguno.
 anything, algo.
 anywhere, en alguna parte.
 ape, el mono.
 appear, *vn.*, parecer.
 appetite, el apetito.
 applaud, *va.*, aplaudir.
 apple, la manzana.
 appoint, *va.*, nombrar.
 appreciate, *va.*, apreciar.
 approach, *vn.*, acercarse; *va.*, acercarse a, aproximarse a, frisar en.
 April, Abril.
 argue, *va.*, argüir.
 arm, el brazo.
 around, *prep.*, alrededor de; — here, por aquí.
 arrange, *va.*, arreglar, disponer.
 arrested, *adj.*, preso.
 arrive, *vn.*, llegar.
 art, el arte.
 artery, la arteria.
 article, el objeto.
 artist, el artista.
 as, *adv.*, como; cual.
 ascend, *va.*, subir.
 ashes, la ceniza.
 ask, *va.*, pedir; interrogar.
 ass, el asno; el borrico.

assume, *va.*, tomar, asumir.
 assure, *va.*, asegurar.
 at, en; a; — last, al fin.
 attack, *va.*, atacar.
 attain, *va.*, lograr.
 attend, *vn.*, asistir, concurrir.
 attorney, el apoderado.
 attract, *va.*, atraer.
 audience, la audiencia, el auditorio.
 aunt, la tía.
 automobile, el automóvil.
 autumn, el otoño.
 average, el promedio.
 avoid, *va.*, evitar.
 await, *va.*, aguardar; esperar.
 awake, *vn.*, despertar; keep —, desvelarse.
 awful, horrible, terrible.
 back, la espalda; (of a chair or document) el respaldo.
 bad, malo, mal.
 badly, *adv.*, mal.
 balance, el saldo.
 bale, el bulto.
 bank, el banco; la orilla; la ribera.
 barbarian, el bárbaro.
 basis, la base.
 basket, la cesta, el cesto.
 bat, el murciélago.
 bath, el baño.
 bay, la bahía, el golfo.
 be, *vn.*, ser, estar.
 beak, el pico.
 bear, *va.*, llevar; — in mind, tener presente.
 beast, la bestia.
 beautiful, hermoso, bello.
 beauty, la belleza.
 because, porque; pues.
 become, *vn.*, llegar a ser, hacerse.
 bed, la cama; to go to —, acostarse.
 beer, la cerveza.
 before, *adv.*, antes; the day —, el día anterior; the night —, la noche anterior.

- before**, *prep.*, antes de ; delante de, ante.
beg, *va.*, pedir, rogar.
beggar, el mendigo ; el pobre.
begin, *va., vn.*, empezar.
behind, *adv.*, atrás, detrás ; *prep.* detrás de.
being, el ser.
believe, *va., vn.*, creer.
bell, la campana.
belong, *vn.*, pertenecer.
below, *adv.*, abajo, debajo ; *prep.*, debajo de.
beneath, *adv.*, debajo.
benefit, el beneficio.
besides, *adv.*, además ; *prep.*, además de.
best, mejor.
better, mejor ; **it is — that**, más vale que.
between, *prep.*, entre.
beyond, *adv.*, más allá ; *prep.*, más allá de.
big, grande.
bill of exchange, la letra de cambio, el giro.
bill of lading, el conocimiento de embarque.
bind, *va.*, atar ; — **up**, envolver, ligar, trabar.
bird, el pájaro.
birth, el nacimiento.
biscuit, el bizcocho, la galleta.
bite, *va.*, morder.
black, negro.
blacksmith, el herrero ; el herrador.
blind, *adj.*, ciego.
blow, el golpe.
blue, el azul ; *adj.*, azul.
board, la tabla.
Board of Directors, la Junta Directiva.
boarder, el (or la) huésped.
boast, *vn.*, jactarse.
boat, el barco.
body, el cuerpo.
boil, *va.*, cocer ; *vn.*, hervir.
bolster, el travesero.
book, el libro ; **book-mark**, el registro.
boot, la bota.
born, nacido ; **to be born**, nacer.
borrow, *va.*, pedir prestado.
both, ambos (-as).
bother, *va.*, molestar.
bough, la rama.
bow, *va., vn.*, inclinar ; saludar.
bower, la enramada.
boy, el muchacho ; el chico ; **little —**, el chiquillo.
branch, la rama ; el ramal.
bravo, valiente.
brawny, musculoso.
bread, el pan.
break, *va.*, romper ; **to feel broken**, quebrantarse.
breakfast, el almuerzo ; el desayuno.
breakfast, *vn.*, almorzar.
breath, el aliento.
breed, *va.*, criar.
brewery, la cervecería.
bridle, el freno, la brida.
bright, despejado.
brilliant, brillante.
bring, traer.
bristling, erizado.
British, británico.
broad, ancho.
brook, el arroyo.
broth, el caldo.
brother, el hermano.
brown, moreno.
bucket, el balde.
build, *va.*, construir, edificar ; erigir.
building, el edificio.
bulk, el bulto.
bull, el toro.
business, los negocios ; el negocio.
busy, ocupado.
but, *conj.*, pero, mas ; sino.
butler, el mayordomo.
butter, la manteca ; la mantequilla.

buy, *va.*; comprar.

cabin, la choza.

cake, el bizcocho, el bollo.

calculate, *va.*, *vn.*, calcular.

call, *va.*, llamar; (*noun*) la visita.

canon, el canónigo.

capable, capaz.

capital, la capital (city).

captain, el capitán.

car, el vagón; (tramway) el carro.

cardinal, el cardenal; *adj.*, cardinal.

care, el cuidado; el esmero.

careful, cuidadoso.

carefully, esmeradamente.

cargo, la carga.

carry, *va.*, llevar, acarrear; carry out, ejecutar, llevar a cabo.

case, el caso; la caja.

casino, el casino.

Castilian, *adj.*, castellano.

castle, el castillo.

catch, *va.*, coger; pillar.

cattle, el ganado.

cause, la causa.

cause, *va.*, ocasionar; obligar.

caution, la cautela.

cave, la cueva, la caverna.

cease, *va.*, *vn.*, cesar, dejar de.

celebrate, *va.*, celebrar.

celebrated, célebre.

cent, el centavo.

centre, el centro.

century, el siglo.

certain, cierto.

certainly, por cierto.

certainty, la seguridad, la certidumbre.

chair, la silla; arm-chair, butaca.

chance, la ventura, la suerte.

change, el cambio.

change, *va.*, *vn.*, cambiar, cambiarse; transformarse.

chapter, el capítulo.

character, el temperamento, el genio, el carácter.

characteristic, el rasgo característico.

charge, el cargo.

Charles, Carlos.

charm, el primor, el encanto, el atractivo; *va.*, embelesar.

cheese, el queso.

cheque, el cheque.

chicken, el pollo.

chief, el jefe.

child, el niño, la niña.

children, los niños; los hijos.

chimney, la chimenea.

choose, *va.*, elegir, escoger.

chop, la chuleta.

Christian, cristiano.

church, la iglesia.

cinnamon, el cinamomo.

circumstance, la circunstancia.

city, la ciudad.

claim, la reclamación.

claim, *va.*, reclamar.

class, la clase.

claw, la garra.

clean, limpio; *va.*, limpiar.

clear, claro.

clerk, el dependiente.

clever, listo, inteligente.

client, el cliente.

climate, el clima.

close, *va.*, cerrar; encerrar.

close by, *prep.*, junto a.

cloth, la tela, el paño.

clothes, la ropa.

clothing, la ropa.

cloud, la nube.

coagulate, *vn.*, cuajar.

coast, la costa; — line, la línea de la costa, el litoral.

coat, la chaqueta; dress coat, el frac.

cock, el gallo.

cockroach, la cucaracha.

coffee, el café.

coin, la moneda.

cold, el frío.

cold, *adj.*, frío.

college, el colegio.

- come**, *vn.*, venir; (to arrive) llegar; — **back**, volver, regresar; — **in**, entrar; — **out**, salir.
- comfort**, la comodidad.
- comfortable**, cómodo.
- coming (future)**, venidero.
- commander**, el comandante, el comandante.
- commence**, *va.*, *vn.*, empezar, comenzar.
- commercial traveller**, el agente viajero.
- common**, común; vulgar.
- communicate**, *va.*, *vn.*, comunicar.
- companion**, el compañero.
- compel**, *va.*, obligar.
- compete**, *vn.*, competir.
- complete**, *va.*, terminar.
- compress**, *va.*, comprimir, apretar.
- comprise**, *va.*, comprender.
- compute**, *va.*, computar.
- conceal**, *va.*, ocultar.
- concerning**, *prep.*, respecto de, tocante a.
- concert**, el concierto.
- conduct**, la conducta.
- confide**, *va.*, *vn.*, confiar.
- confine**, *va.*, internar.
- confuse**, *va.*, confundir.
- conquer**, *va.*, conquistar, vencer.
- consequently**, por consiguiente; por lo tanto.
- consider**, *va.*, considerar.
- consult**, *va.*, consultar.
- contain**, *va.*, contener.
- content**, contento.
- contented [with]**, contento [de].
- contents**, el contenido.
- contest**, *vn.*, disputar.
- continue**, *va.*, *vn.*, seguir, continuar.
- contrary**, contrario.
- convenience**, la comodidad.
- convent**, el convento.
- convert**, *va.*, convertir.
- cook**, el cocinero, la cocinera.
- cook**, *va.*, cocer; guisar.
- cool**, fresco.
- copious**, cuantioso, copioso.
- copper**, el cobre.
- copy**, la copia; el ejemplar.
- corn**, el maíz; el trigo.
- corner**, el rincón; la esquina.
- cost**, el costo.
- cost**, *va.*, costar.
- cotton**, el algodón.
- couch**, el canapé.
- council**, el consejo.
- count**, *va.*, contar.
- countenance**, el semblante.
- counter**, el mostrador.
- country**, el país, el campo, la patria; la campiña.
- courage**, el valor.
- course**, la carrera, el curso; of —, por supuesto.
- courtesy**, la cortesía.
- courtyard**, el corral.
- cousin**, el primo, la prima.
- cover**, la cubierta, el abrigo.
- cover**, *va.*, cubrir.
- covert**, el escondrijo.
- cow**, la vaca.
- create**, *va.*, crear.
- credit**, el crédito.
- crescent**, la media luna.
- crop**, la cosecha.
- crumb**, la miga.
- cry**, el grito; *vn.*, gritar.
- crystalline**, cristalino.
- cunning**, la malicia, la astucia; *adj.*, malicioso, astuto.
- cup**, la taza.
- current**, *adj.*, corriente.
- custom-house**, la aduana.
- cut**, *va.*, cortar.
- daily**, el diario (newspaper); *adv.*, diariamente.
- dairy**, la lechería.
- daisy**, la margarita.
- damage**, el daño; *va.*, deteriorar.
- damask**, el damasco.
- damp**, húmedo.

danger, el peligro.
dare, *vn.*, atreverse.
dark, obscuro; **to get** —, obscurecer.
date, la fecha.
date, *va.*, fechar.
daughter, la hija.
day, el día.
dead, muerto.
dear, caro, querido.
death, la muerte.
deceive, *va.*, engañar.
decide, *va.*, *vn.*, decidir; resolver; determinar.
deed, la acción; la escritura, el documento.
deep, profundo.
deer, el venado.
degree, el grado.
deign, *vn.*, dignarse.
delay, *vn.*, demorar; (*noun*) la demora.
delicate, delicado.
delight, *va.*, deleitar; **to be** —ed, estar encantado.
deliver, *va.*, entregar. — a lecture, dictar una conferencia.
deny, *va.*, negar.
departure, la partida.
deprive, *va.*, privar, quitar.
describe, *va.*, describir.
desire, el deseo, el empeño, la gana.
desire, *va.*, desear, ansiar.
destination, el destino.
detain, *va.*, detener.
determine, *va.*, *vn.*, determinar, terminar.
devastation, la devastación.
develop, *va.*, desarrollar, desenvolver; *vn.*, desarrollarse.
development, el desarrollo.
devil, el diablo.
die, *vn.*, morir.
different, diferente, diverso.
difficult, difícil.
diffident, desconfiado.
difficulty, la dificultad.
diligent, diligente.
diminish, *va.*, *vn.*, disminuir.

dine, *vn.*, comer.
dinner, la comida.
direct, *va.*, dirigir.
disciple, el discípulo.
discourse, *vn.*, discurrir.
discover, *va.*, descubrir.
discovery, el descubrimiento.
discreet, discreto.
dish, el manjar.
distant, lejano; **to be** —, distar, *vn.*
distinguish, *va.*, distinguir.
do, *va.*, hacer.
doctor, el doctor; el médico.
dog, el perro.
dollar, (**Spain**) el duro; (**S. A.**) el peso.
donkey, el asno.
door, la puerta.
double, doble.
doubt, la duda.
doubt, *va.*, dudar.
dozen, la docena.
draft, el giro, la letra de cambio.
draw, *va.*, atraer; *va.*, *vn.*, tirar; **draw on**, girar a cargo de.
drench, *va.*, mojar.
dress, el traje.
dress, *va.*, *vn.*, vestir, vestirse.
dressing-table, el tocador.
drink, *va.*, beber.
drone, el zángano.
drown, *vn.*, ahogarse.
drunken, borracho.
duck, el pato.
due, debido.
duke, el duque.
during, *prep.*, durante.
dust, el polvo.
duty, el deber.
each, cada; cada uno, cada cual.
ear, el oído.
earn, *va.*, ganar.
earth, la tierra.
East, el Oriente.
eastern, oriental.
easy, fácil.

eat, *va.*, comer ; tomar.
 effort, el esfuerzo.
 egg, el huevo.
 eight, ocho.
 eighty, ochenta.
 either, uno u otro.
 elect, *va.*, elegir ; nombrar.
 eleven, once.
 embark, *vn.*, embarcarse ; *va.*,
 embarcár.
 embrace, *va.*, abrazar.
 emergency, el trance.
 empire, el imperio.
 employ, *va.*, emplear.
 employment, el cargo.
 enchanting, encantador.
 enclosure, la cerca.
 encourage, *va.*, animar.
 end, el fin ; el propósito.
 end, *vn.*, acabar.
 endless, infinito.
 enemy, el enemigo.
 engagement, el compromiso,
 el empeño.
 engine, la máquina, la máquina
 de vapor.
 England, Inglaterra.
 English, inglés.
 Englishman, el inglés.
 enjoy, *va.*, gozar de, solazarse.
 enormous, enorme.
 enough, bastante.
 enter, *va.*, entrar.
 entertaining, entretenido.
 enthusiasm, el entusiasmo.
 entirely, por completo.
 entrance, la entrada.
 entrust, *va.*, confiar.
 envelope, el sobre.
 episode, el episodio, el lance.
 epoch, la época.
 escape, *vn.*, escaparse.
 establish, *va.*, establecer.
 esteem, *va.*, estimar.
 even, aun ; hasta ; siquiera.
 evening, la tarde.
 event, el suceso.
 every, todo.
 evolve, *vn.*, formarse, desarro-
 llarse, desenvolverse.

exact, exacto.
 exaggerate, *va.*, ponderar.
 examine, *va.*, examinar.
 excel, *vn.*, sobresalir.
 excellent, excelente.
 except, *prep.* excepto.
 exclaim, *vn.*, exclamar.
 exercise, el ejercicio.
 exhort, *va.*, exhortar.
 exist, *vn.*, existir.
 exit, la salida.
 expect, *va.*, esperar.
 expense, el gasto.
 expensive, costoso, caro.
 explain, explicar.
 export, *va.*, exportar.
 extend, *va.*, *vn.*, extender.
 extensive, extenso.
 extract, *va.*, extraer, sacar.
 extreme, extremado, extremo.
 eye, el ojo.
 eyeglasses, los anteojos.

fable, la fábula.
 face, la cara ; el semblante.
 fact, el hecho ; in —, efectiva-
 mente.
 faith, la fe.
 faithful, fiel.
 false, falso.
 fall, *vn.*, caer.
 family, la familia.
 famous, famoso.
 fancy, *va.*, figurarse.
 far, *adv.*, lejos.
 farm, la hacienda.
 farmer, el colono ; el labrador ;
 el hacendado.
 farrier, el herrador.
 fashion, la moda.
 fast, *adv.*, aprisa ; *adj.* ligero,
 liviano.
 father, el padre.
 fault, la culpa.
 favour, el favor, la gracia,
 la merced.
 fear, el temor, el miedo.
 fear, *va.*, *vn.*, temer ; recelar.
 feast, la fiesta.
 feature, la facción.

feed, *va.*, alimentar.
 feel, *va.*, sentir.
 feign, *va.*, *vn.*, fingir, disimular.
 fever, la fiebre.
 few, pocos, algunos; a —, unos pocos.
 field, el campo.
 fierce, feroz.
 fifteen, quince.
 fifty, cincuenta.
 fill, *va.*, llenar.
 find, *va.*, hallar, encontrar.
 finish, *va.*, acabar, terminar; completar.
 fire, la lumbre; el fuego; la candela.
 fireplace, el hogar; la chimenea.
 firm, la casa de comercio; *adj.*, firme.
 first, primero.
 fish, el pez; el pescado.
 fish, *vn.*, pescar.
 five, cinco.
 flatter, *va.*, lisonjear.
 flavour, el sabor.
 flee, *vn.*, huir, escaparse.
 floor, el suelo, el piso.
 flower, la flor.
 flute, la flauta.
 fly, *vn.*, volar.
 follow, *va.*, *vn.*, seguir.
 following, siguiente.
 fond, cariñoso; to be — of, gustar.
 food, el alimento; la comida; el manjar.
 fool, el necio; el loco.
 foolish, tonto.
 foot, el pie.
 footwear, el calzado.
 for, *prep.*, para, por.
 for, *conj.*, pues; puesto que.
 forehead, la frente.
 foreign, extranjero.
 foreigner, el extranjero.
 forest, el bosque; la selva.
 forget, *va.*, olvidar.
 form, la forma.

former, anterior; the — . . .
 the latter, aquél . . . éste . . .
 fortune, el caudal, la fortuna.
 forty, cuarenta.
 forward, adelante.
 found, *va.*, fundar.
 four, cuatro.
 fourteen, catorce.
 fowl, el (*fem.*) ave de corral.
 fox, el zorro.
 frank, franco.
 free, libre.
 freely, libremente.
 French, francés.
 frequently, con frecuencia.
 fresh, fresco; — water, el (*fem.*) agua dulce.
 fried, frito.
 friend, el amigo, la amiga.
 frighten, aterrorizar, espantar.
 from, de, desde.
 frost, el hielo.
 fruit, la fruta.
 fruitless, infructuoso.
 fry, *va.*, freír.
 fulfil, *va.*, cumplir.
 full, lleno.
 fully, plenamente, enteramente.
 furnish, *va.*, suministrar; amueblar.
 furniture, los muebles; piece of —, el mueble.
 future, el futuro.
 gain, el provecho, la ganancia.
 Galician, el gallego.
 garden, el jardín.
 garnish, *va.*, guarnecer.
 gather, *va.*, recoger.
 gaze at, *va.*, mirar; contemplar.
 gentleman, el caballero; el señor.
 gesture, el ademán.
 get, *vn.*, llegar; *va.*, lograr; conseguir.
 ghost, el fantasma.

gift, el regalo, el presente.
 gird, *va.*, ceñir.
 girl, la niña, la joven; la mu-
 chacha.
 give, *va.*, dar; regalar; give
 way, ceder; give up, dejar,
 abandonar.
 glad, alegre.
 glance, la mirada; *vn.*, echar
 una mirada.
 gloomy, lúgubre, sombrío.
 glory, la gloria.
 glove, el guante.
 go, *vn.*, ir; — back, volver;
 — down, bajar; — out,
 salir; — up, subir; — over,
 repasar; — shopping, ir a
 tiendas.
 God, Dios.
 good, bueno.
 goods, los géneros; el género.
 government, el gobierno.
 governor, el gobernador.
 grace, el donaire, la gracia.
 graceful, gracioso, donairoso.
 grammar, la gramática.
 granddaughter, la nieta.
 grandfather, el abuelo.
 grandson, el nieto.
 grant, *va.*, otorgar, ceder,
 conceder.
 grape, la uva.
 grass, la yerba; la grama.
 great, grande.
 green, verde.
 grey, gris, pardo.
 grief, el pesar, el dolor.
 grieve, *va.*, pesar.
 ground, el suelo.
 grounds, el terreno.
 grove, la enramada.
 grow, *vn.*, crecer.
 grumble, *vn.*, murmurar.
 guest, el huésped.
 guide, el guía, la guía.
 guide-book, la guía; court
 guide, la guía de forasteros.
 gulf, el golfo.
 habit, la costumbre; el hábito.

hair, el pelo.
 half, la mitad.
 half, medio; — an hour,
 media hora.
 ham, el jamón.
 hand, la mano; *va.*, entregar.
 handkerchief, el pañuelo.
 hang, *va.*, ahorcar, colgar,
 pender.
 happen, *vn.*, suceder; pasar.
 happiness, la felicidad.
 happy, feliz; alegre.
 harbour, el puerto; la rada.
 hard, duro.
 harden, *vn.*, endurecer, cua-
 jar.
 hardship, la penalidad.
 hardware, la ferretería.
 hasten, *vn.*, apurar, apresu-
 rarse.
 hasty, presuroso.
 hat, el sombrero.
 have, *va.*, tener; (*auxiliary*)
 haber; — just, acabar de.
 hay, el heno.
 he, él.
 head, la cabeza.
 health, la salud.
 healthful, saludable, sano.
 healthy, sano.
 heap, el montón.
 heap, *va.*, amontonar.
 hear, *va.*, oír.
 heart, el corazón; las entrañas.
 heat, el calor; to heat, ca-
 lentar.
 heaven, el cielo.
 height, la altura.
 help, la ayuda.
 help, *va.*, ayudar.
 hen, la gallina.
 her, su; (*object*) la, le.
 herd, el rebaño.
 here, *adv.*, aquí.
 hesitate, *vn.*, vacilar.
 hesitating, indeciso.
 hide, la piel.
 hide, *va.*, esconder, ocultar.
 high, alto; elevado.
 him, le, lo.

hinder, *va.*, impedir, estorbar.
 hinge, el gozne *or* gonce.
 his, su (*pl.* sus).
 history, la historia.
 hold, *va.*, tener; poseer.
 hole, el hueco, el hoyo.
 honest, honrado.
 hope, la esperanza.
 hope, *va.*, *vn.*, esperar.
 horn, el cuerno.
 horse, el caballo; **horseman**,
 el jinete.
 host, la multitud; el huésped.
 hot, caliente.
 hotel, el hotel.
 hour, la hora; **half an** —,
 media hora.
 house, la casa.
 how? ¿cómo?
 how much? ¿cuánto?
 however, sin embargo.
 humble, humilde.
 hundred, ciento, cien.
 hunger, el (*fem.*) hambre.
 hungry, hambriento; **to be**
 —, tener hambre.
 hunt, *va.*, cazar.
 hunting, la caza.
 hurriedly, a toda prisa.
 hurry, *va.*, apresurar; *vn.*,
 apresurarse.
 husband, el marido; el es-
 poso.
 hut, la cabaña.

I, yo.
 ice, el hielo.
 idle, desocupado, ocioso.
 if, si.
 ignorant, ignorante; **to be** —
 of, ignorar.
 ill, enfermo.
 imagination, la imaginación.
 immediate, inmediato.
 import, *va.*, importar.
 important, importante; **it is**
 — **that**, importa que.
 impress, *va.*, impresionar.
 improvement, la mejora.

in, en; — **order to**, para, a
 fin de.
 incident, el lance.
 include, *va.*, incluir.
 increase, *va.*, aumentar.
 indeed, en efecto.
 Indian, *adj.*, indio.
 india-rubber, el caucho, la
 goma elástica.
 indigenous, indígena.
 indignant, indignado.
 industrious, laborioso, dili-
 gente.
 inform, *va.*, avisar; informar.
 inhabit, *va.*, habitar.
 inhabitant, el habitante.
 inherit, *va.*, heredar.
 injury, el daño.
 ink, la tinta.
 inn, la posada.
 inner, interior.
 innocent, inocente.
 inquisitive, curioso.
 insist, *vn.*, insistir.
 instant, el instante; *adj.*, del
 mes corriente.
 instantly, sin demora; en el
 acto.
 instead of, en vez de.
 instruct, *va.*, encargar; educar,
 instruir.
 intelligence, la inteligencia.
 intelligent, inteligente.
 interest, el interés.
 interest, *va.*, interesar.
 interesting, interesante.
 interfere, *vn.*, meterse, entre-
 meterse, intervenir.
 intern, *va.*, internar.
 interrupt, *va.*, interrumpir.
 intimate, *adj.*, íntimo.
 introduce, *va.*, presentar, intro-
 ducir.
 invest, *va.*, invertir; invertir.
 invite, *va.*, convidar, invitar.
 invoice, la factura.
 irrigation, el riego.
 island, la isla.
 issue, la emisión, la salida.
 it, él, ella, ello; lo, la.

jaguar, el jaguar.
 jail, la cárcel.
 January, enero.
 jewel, la alhaja, la joya.
 John, Juan.
 join, *va.*, juntar, unir.
 journey, el viaje.
 jovial, festivo, jovial.
 judge, el juez.
 June, junio.
 just, justo.
 justice, la justicia.

 keen, penetrante, agudo.
 keep, *va.*, guardar; conservar;
 — *on, vn.*, continuar.
 kill, *va.*, matar.
 kind, la especie; human kind,
 el género humano.
 kind, bondadoso; amable.
 kindle, *va.*, encender.
 king, el rey.
 kitchen, la cocina.
 knife, el cuchillo.
 know, *va.*, saber; (to be ac-
 quainted with) conocer.
 knowledge, el conocimiento.

 lack, la falta.
 lack, *va.*, faltar, hacer falta.
 lady, la señora.
 land, la tierra; el terreno.
 language, el idioma; el (*fem.*)
 habla; la lengua.
 lantern, la linterna, el farol.
 large, grande.
 last, último; at —, al fin; —
 night, anoche.
 last, *vn.*, durar.
 late, tarde; to be late, tardar.
 Latin, el latín.
 laughter, la risa.
 lawyer, el abogado.
 league, la legua (about three
 miles); la liga.
 leap, el salto; leap year, el año
 bisiesto.
 learn, *va.*, aprender.
 leather, el cuero.

leave, el permiso, la licencia.
 leave, *va.*, dejar; *vn.*, partir.
 lecture, la conferencia.
 left, izquierdo.
 left-hand side, el lado izquier-
 do, la izquierda.
 leg, la pierna.
 leisure, el ocio.
 lend, *va.*, prestar.
 less, *adv.* menos; *adj.*, menor.
 lesson, la lección.
 let, *va.*, dejar; let loose,
 soltar.
 letter, la carta; la letra.
 library, la biblioteca.
 lie, la mentira; artful lie, el
 embuste.
 lie, *vn.*, mentir.
 life, la vida.
 lift, *va.*, levantar.
 light, la luz; *adj.*, ligero.
 like, *va.*, gustar.
 lily, el lirio.
 limb, el miembro.
 limit, el límite.
 limpid, cristalino.
 line, la línea, la raya.
 liquid, el líquido; *adj.*, líquido.
 list, la lista.
 listen, *vn.*, escuchar.
 little, pequeño; chico.
 live, *vn.*, vivir; subsistir.
 lively, vivaracho, vivo.
 lobby, el zaguán.
 locomotive, la locomotora.
 London, Londres.
 long, largo.
 long, *vn.*, ansiar; antojarse.
 longer, *adv.*, por más tiempo.
 look, la mirada; *vn.*, mirar.
 look into, *va.*, examinar.
 loose, *va.*, soltar, aflojar.
 loquacity, la locuacidad.
 lose, *va.*, perder.
 loss, la pérdida.
 Louis, Luis.
 lounge, el salón de hotel.
 love, *va.*, querer.
 low, bajo.
 lower, inferior.

- lower, *va.*, bajar.
 loyalty, la lealtad.
 luck, la suerte.
- machine, la máquina.
 Madam, Señora.
 magian, magician, el mago.
 magnificent, magnífico; espléndido.
 maid, la mujer soltera; sirvienta.
 maize, el maíz.
 make, *va.*, hacer.
 malice, la malicia.
 man, el hombre.
 management, la gestión, la dirección.
 manifest, *va.*, manifestar; *adj.*, manifiesto.
 manner, el modo; la manera.
 manufacture, la manufactura, la fábrica.
 many, muchos.
 mare, la yegua.
 marjoram, la mejorana; sweet marjoram, el almoraduj.
 mark, *va.*, notar, registrar.
 market, el mercado.
 marrow, el tuétano; (dish) las migas.
 marry, *va.*, casar; casarse con.
 marvel, la maravilla.
 marvellous, maravilloso.
 master, el amo, el maestro.
 matter, el asunto, la materia.
 mayor, el alcalde.
 me, me.
 meadow, el prado.
 meagre, flaco, mezquino.
 mean, medio; mezquino.
 means, los medios.
 meanwhile, entretanto.
 measure, la medida.
 measure, *va.*, medir.
 meat, la carne; cold meat, el fiambre.
 meet, *va.*, encontrar.
 melancholy, melancólico.
 member, el miembro; el socio.
 memory, la memoria.
- merchandise, la mercadería.
 merchant, el comerciante.
 mere, mero.
 merit, el mérito.
 Messrs., Señores, Sres.
 Mexico, Méjico.
 middle, el centro; la mitad; el medio.
 mile, la milla (= 1.6 kilómetros).
 milk, la leche.
 miller, el molinero.
 minaret, el alminar.
 mind, el espíritu, la mente.
 minister, el ministro.
 minute, el minuto; *adj.*, menudo.
 mirror, el espejo.
 miserable, miserable.
 misfortune, la desgracia.
 miss, *va.*, echar de menos *or* echar menos; hacer falta; to be missing, faltar.
 Miss, Señorita, Srita.
 mistake, el error; la equivocación.
 mistress, el (*fem.*) ama; la dueña.
 mix, *va.*, mezclar.
 mode, el medio; el modo.
 modern, moderno.
 modest, modesto.
 modify, *va.*, modificar.
 moist, húmedo.
 moment, el momento; critical moment, el lance, el trance.
 monarch, el monarca.
 money, el dinero; el peculio.
 monk, el monje.
 monkey, el mono.
 monster, el monstruo.
 month, el mes.
 moon, la luna.
 more, más.
 morning, la mañana; la madrugada.
 mother, la madre.
 motion, el movimiento.
 motive, el motivo.
 mount, *vn.*, montar.

mountain, la montaña; el monte.
mouse, el ratón.
mouth, la boca.
move, *va.*, mover.
much, *adj.* and *adv.*, mucho.
mule, la mula.
murderer, el asesino.
music, la música.
my, mi, mis.
mystery, el misterio.
name, el nombre; la designación; **family name**, el apellido.
nankeen, el mahón.
narrow, estrecho; angosto.
native, *adj.*, natal; el indígena, el natural.
nature, la naturaleza.
near, *adv.*, cerca.
necessary, preciso, necesario.
necktie, la corbata.
need, *va.*, necesitar.
neglect, *va.*, descuidar.
neighbour, el vecino.
neither, tampoco.
nephew, el sobrino.
nest, el nido.
net, la red.
never, *adv.*, jamás, nunca.
nevertheless, sin embargo.
new, nuevo.
news, las noticias; la noticia.
newspaper, el periódico; el diario.
next, próximo.
niece, la sobrina.
night, la noche; **at** —, de noche; **last night**, anoche.
nine, nueve.
no, *adv.*, no; *adj.*, ninguno.
noise, el ruido.
noisy, rumoroso, ruidoso.
nominate, *va.*, nombrar.
none, ninguno.
nor, tampoco; **neither . . . — . . .**, ni . . . ni . . .
north, el norte.
nose, la nariz.

not, no.
note, la nota; — **book**, el libro de apuntes.
noteworthy, notable, digno de nota.
nothing, nada.
notice, la nota; **to take notice**, notar, distinguir.
notice, *va.*, notar, observar.
novel, la novela.
novelty, la novedad.
now, ahora, ya; — **and then**, de vez en cuando.
number, el número.
numberless, innumerable, sin número.
nut, la nuez.
nutritious, nutritivo.
oak, el roble; la encina.
oats (*plur.*), la avena.
object, el objeto.
oblige, *va.*, obligar.
obliging, servicial.
obstacle, obstáculo.
obtain, *va.*, obtener; allegar.
occasion, la ocasión; **on this** —, esta vez.
occupy, *va.*, ocupar.
occur, *vn.*, ocurrir.
October, Octubre.
odd, impar; **twenty odd**, veinte y pico.
odour, el olor.
odourless, inodoro.
of, de.
offend, *va.*, ofender.
offer, *va.*, ofrecer.
officer, el oficial.
often, a menudo.
oil, el aceite.
old, viejo; anciano; antiguo.
on, en, sobre.
one, un, uno.
only, *adv.*, solamente, sólo; *adj.*, único.
open, abierto.
open, *va.*, abrir.
opportunity, la oportunidad.
oppressing, abrumador.

or, o, u.
orange, la naranja; **orange blossom**, el azahar.
orange-tree, el naranjo.
orchard, la huerta.
order, el (*or* la) orden; **in — to**, a fin de.
order, *va.*, pedir; ordenar.
origin, el origen.
osier, el mimbre.
other, otro; demás.
ounce, la onza.
our, nuestro -a, -os, -as.
out, *adv.*, fuera.
outlet, la salida.
outside, *adv.*, fuera.
over, sobre, encima de.
overcoat, el abrigo, el sobre-todo, el gabán.
overflow, la crecida; *vn.*, rebosar.
owe, *va.*, deber.
owing to, debido a.
own, propio.
owner, el dueño.
ox, el buey.

page, la página.
painting, el cuadro.
pair, el par, la pareja.
pale, pálido.
palm, la palmera.
paper, el papel; **daily —**, el diario.
parents, los padres.
part, la parte.
party, la partida, el partido.
pass, *va.*, *vn.*, pasar; — **the night**, pasar la noche, pernoctar; — **by**, transitar.
passer-by, el transeúnte.
past, pasado.
path, la senda.
patience, la paciencia.
pattern, el diseño, el patrón, la norma.
pave, *va.*, embaldosar.
pay, *va.*, pagar.
peace, la paz.
peaceful, pacífico.

pear, la pera.
peasant, el lugareño, el campesino; la lugareña.
pen, la pluma.
penetrating, penetrante.
people, la gente.
perceive, *va.*, percibir, divisar.
perhaps, tal vez, quizá, quizás.
perilous, peligroso.
perish, *vn.*, perecer.
permission, el permiso.
person, la persona, el sujeto.
philology, la filología.
phrase, la frase.
picture, el cuadro.
picturesque, pintoresco.
pie, el pastel.
piece, el pedazo; la pieza.
pig, el cerdo.
pigment, el color.
pilgrimage, la peregrinación.
pity, la lástima, la compasión.
place, el sitio; **to place in**, cifrar.
plan, el plan; el proyecto.
planet, el planeta.
play, el drama.
play, *va.*, *vn.*, jugar; desempeñar.
pleasure, el gusto; **to take — in**, tener gusto en.
plenty, *adv.*, hartó.
plump, regordete.
pocket, el bolsillo.
poet, el poeta.
point, el sitio; el punto; la punta.
poisonous, venenoso.
pole, la varilla.
police, la policía.
politician, el político.
poor, pobre; mezquino.
poplar, el álamo.
populate, *va.*, poblar.
port, el puerto.
portrait, el retrato.
post, el correo.
poverty, la pobreza; lamiseria.
power, el poder; la facultad.
powerful, poderoso.

practical, efectivo.
 practice, la práctica.
 practise, *va.*, practicar.
 praise, la alabanza ; el elogio.
 praise, *va.*, alabar.
 prefer, *va.*, preferir.
 prepare, *va.*, preparar, aderezar.
 present, el presente, el regalo ;
adj., actual ; presente ; **at** —,
 actualmente.
 preserve, *va.*, conservar.
 press, la prensa.
 pretty, bonito.
 price, el precio.
 pride, el orgullo.
 print, *va.*, imprimir.
 private, particular, privado.
 procure, *va.*, obtener.
 produce, *va.*, producir ; presen-
 tar.
 profession, la profesión.
 professor, el catedrático ; el
 profesor.
 promise, la promesa ; *va.*, pro-
 meter.
 promptly, prontamente.
 proper, propio ; natural.
 properly, *adv.*, debidamente.
 property, la propiedad ; la
 hacienda.
 prospect, la perspectiva.
 prosperous, próspero.
 protect, *va.*, resguardar ; pro-
 teger ; guardar.
 proud, orgulloso.
 prove, *va.*, probar.
 provided, *conj.*, con tal que.
 public, el público.
 publish, *va.*, publicar.
 pupil, el discípulo.
 pure, *adj.*, puro.
 purpose, el fin, el objeto, el
 propósito.
 put, *va.*, poner ; colocar.
 put out, *va.*, apagar.
 quarter, el barrio ; un cuarto,
 la cuarta parte.
 question, la pregunta.
 quickly, *adv.*, rápidamente.

quiet, sosegado, tranquilo.
 quince, el membrillo.
 quite, *adv.*, enteramente, del
 todo.
 race, la raza.
 rage, la rabia, la cólera.
 rail, el riel.
 railroad, railway, el ferro-
 carril.
 rain, la lluvia.
 rain, *vn.*, llover.
 raise, *va.*, levantar, alzar.
 rapidity, la rapidez.
 rather, más bien.
 reach, *va.*, llegar a ; alcanzar.
 read, *va.*, *vn.*, leer.
 readily, *adv.*, prontamente.
 reading, la lectura.
 ready, listo.
 realize, *va.*, hacerse cargo de ;
 caer en la cuenta.
 reason, la razón.
 recall, *va.*, recordar.
 receive, *va.*, recibir.
 recently, recientemente.
 recite, *va.*, recitar.
 reckon, *va.*, contar, tener por.
 recollection, el recuerdo.
 recommend, *va.*, recomendar ;
 encomendar.
 record, la relación, el registro.
 recover, *va.*, recuperar, reco-
 brar.
 red, colorado, rojo.
 refer, *va.*, referir ; *vn.*, recurrir.
 refuge, el refugio ; **to take**
 refuge, refugiarse.
 refuse, *va.*, *vn.*, rehusar ; re-
 chazar.
 region, la comarca.
 regret, *va.*, sentir, lamentar.
 relation, relative, el pariente.
 remain, *vn.*, permanecer ; que-
 dar ; quedarse.
 remember, *va.*, recordar.
 remittance, la remesa.
 repeat, *va.*, repetir.
 reply, la respuesta.
 report, el informe, la relación.

report, *va.*, informar.
 request, el ruego.
 resolute, resuelto.
 resort, *vn.*, recurrir.
 respect, *va.*, respetar.
 resplendent, resplandeciente.
 rest, el descanso; el reposo.
 rest, *va.*, apoyar; *vn.*, descansar.
 result, el resultado.
 resume, *vn.*, continuar.
 return, *va.*, devolver; volver; *vn.*, regresar.
 reward, *va.*, recompensar; (*noun*) el premio, la recompensa.
 rice, el arroz.
 rich, rico.
 riches (*pl.*), la riqueza.
 ride, *va.*, cabalgar.
 right, el derecho.
 right, derecho, recto, justo; *adv.*, correctamente.
 rise, *vn.*, levantarse; rise early, madrugar.
 risk, *va.*, arriesgar.
 river, el río.
 road, el camino.
 roast, *va.*, asar.
 robust, robusto.
 rock, la roca; la peña.
 Romance, romance; Romanic, romance.
 room, el cuarto; el espacio.
 roost, el gallinero.
 root, la raíz.
 rose, la rosa.
 rough, áspero; brusco.
 round, redondo.
 row, la hilera, la fila.
 rule, la regla.
 run, *vn.*, correr; run away, huir.
 running, corriente.
 rush, *vn.*, arrojarse; atropellar.
 sad, triste; afligido.
 saddle, la silla.
 safe, en salvo; seguro.
 safety, la seguridad.

Saint, Santo, San.
 sale, la venta.
 salute, *va.*, saludar.
 sandwich, el emparedado.
 sardine, la sardina.
 satin, el raso.
 satisfied, contento; satisfecho.
 Saturday, el sábado.
 say, *va.*, decir.
 saying, el dicho, el proverbio.
 scarce, escaso.
 scarcely, *adv.*, apenas.
 school, la escuela.
 science, la ciencia.
 scream, *vn.*, gritar.
 sea, el *or* la mar; — coast, la costa del mar.
 season, la estación, la sazón; la temporada.
 seat, *va.*, sentar.
 seat, el asiento.
 seclude, *va.*, recluir.
 second, el segundo; *adj.*, segundo.
 see, *va.*, *vn.*, ver.
 seem, *vn.*, parecer.
 select, *va.*, escoger.
 sell, *va.*, vender.
 send, *va.*, mandar, enviar.
 sense, el sentido.
 separate, *adj.*, separado; *va.*, separar.
 serene, sereno.
 serious, serio; grave; formal.
 servant, el sirviente, el mozo.
 set, *va.*, poner; colocar.
 seven, siete.
 seventeenth, décimoséptimo.
 seventy, setenta.
 several, varios, -as.
 shade, la sombra.
 shadow, la sombra.
 shave, *va.*, afeitarse.
 shelf, el estante.
 shelter, el albergue; la cubierta.
 shepherd-boy, el zagal.
 shine, *vn.*, brillar; lucir.
 ship, el buque.
 ship, *va.*, embarcar; *vn.*, embarcarse.

- shirt**, la camisa.
shoe, el zapato.
shoemaker, el zapatero.
shopping: to go —, ir a tiendas.
shore, la orilla.
short, corto.
show, va., mostrar ; enseñar ; lucir.
sick, enfermo.
side, el lado ; el borde.
sieve, el cedazo.
sight, la vista ; **in** — **of**, a la vista de.
sign, el signo.
sign, va., firmar.
signal, la señal.
signature, la firma.
silent, silencioso ; **to be** —, callar.
silk, la seda.
silly, necio ; tonto.
silver, la plata.
similar, semejante.
simple, sencillo.
since, desde, después de ; desde que.
sincere, sincero.
sing, va., vn., cantar.
single, solo.
singular, singular.
sir, señor.
sister, la hermana.
sit, vn., sentarse.
sitting, sentado.
situated, situado.
situation, el sitio.
six, seis.
sixteen, diez y seis.
sixty, sesenta.
size, el tamaño.
skate, vn., patinar.
skin, la piel.
skirt, la saya ; la falda.
slander, la calumnia.
slaughter, va., matar.
sleep, el sueño.
sleep, vn., dormir.
sleeve, la manga.
slight, ligero.
slow, lento ; **slowly (adv.)**, despacio.
small, pequeño ; chico.
smell, vn., oler.
smile, vn., sonreír ; sonreírse.
smoke, el humo.
snow, la nieve.
so, así ; tanto.
soap, el jabón.
sofa, el sofá.
soft, suave.
sole, solo.
some, alguno.
son, el hijo.
song, el canto, el poema.
soon, pronto.
sound, el sonido ; **adj.**, sano.
sound, vn., sonar.
south, el sur ; el mediodía.
Spain, España (*fem.*).
Spaniard, el español, la española.
Spanish, español.
spark, la chispa.
speak, vn., va., hablar.
special, especial.
species, la especie.
spectacles, los anteojos, las gafas.
speech, el discurso.
speedy, presuroso.
spend, va., gastar ; pasar.
spider, la araña.
spirit, el espíritu.
spite, el despecho ; **in spite of**, a pesar de, a despecho de.
spot, la mancha ; el sitio ; el lugar.
spread, va., extender.
spring, el muelle ; la primavera ; la fuente.
squander, va., disipar, derrochar.
square, el cuadrado ; la plaza.
squint, vn., torcer los ojos, bizquear.
stable, la cuadra.
stain, la mancha.
stamp, va., estampar.
stand, vn., estar de pie.

start, *vn.*, partir, salir.
state, el estado.
state, *va.*, exponer, afirmar.
statement, la declaración, la exposición.
station, la estación.
steam, el vapor; — **engine**, la máquina de vapor.
steamer, el vapor.
steel, el acero.
still, *adv.*, todavía, aun; — **more**, aun más.
stir, *va.*, menear; mecer.
stone, la piedra.
stop, *vn.*, parar.
store, la tienda.
story, el cuento; la historia.
straight, recto; *adv.*, directamente.
strain, *va.*, colar.
stranger, el desconocido, la desconocida; el forastero.
street, la calle.
strength, la fuerza.
strictly, en rigor.
strike, *va.*, herir.
strike, la huelga.
strong, fuerte.
student, el alumno.
study, el estudio.
study, *va.*, *vn.*, estudiar.
stupid, estúpido, imbécil.
style, el estilo.
subdue, *va.*, subyugar.
subject, la materia; el asunto; el súbdito.
subjunctive, el subjuntivo.
submit, *va.*, someter, presentar.
subsequently, *adv.*, después, luego.
succeed, *vn.*, obtener éxito; lograr.
success, el éxito.
such, tal, semejante; — **a**, semejante.
suddenly, *adv.*, de repente.
suffice, *vn.*, bastar.
sufficient, bastante; **to be** —, bastar.
sugar, el azúcar.

suggest, *va.*, sugerir.
suitable, propio; compatible.
sum, la suma.
summer, el verano.
summit, la cumbre.
sumptuous, suntuoso.
sun, el sol.
Sunday, el domingo.
supper, la cena.
supple, ágil.
supply, *va.*, proveer.
suppose, *va.*, suponer.
sure, seguro.
surprising, sorprendente.
surround, *va.*, rodear; cercar.
swan, el cisne.
sweet, dulce.
swell, *vn.*, crecer; hinchar.
swiftness, la velocidad.
swim, *vn.*, nadar.
sword, la espada.
system, el sistema.

tact, el tacto.
tailor, el sastre.
take, *va.*, tomar; (**take to**) llevar; (**take off**) quitar.
tale, el cuento.
talk, *vn.*, hablar.
talk, el coloquio.
talkativeness, la locuacidad.
tall, alto.
tame, manso.
tapestry, el tapiz.
taste, *va.*, probar.
taste, el gusto.
tea, el te.
teach, enseñar.
teacher, el maestro, la maestra; el profesor, la profesora.
tear, la lágrima.
tell, *va.*, contar; decir.
ten, diez.
tend, *vn.*, tender.
tender, tierno.
tent, la tienda.
territory, el territorio.
than, que.
thank, *va.*, agradecer; — **you**, gracias.

thankfulness, la gratitud.
that, *conj.*, que; (*relative*) que;
 (*demonstrative*) ese, aquel.
thaw, *va.*, deshelar.
the, el.
theatre, el teatro.
their, su, sus.
then, *adv.*, entonces; luego.
there, *adv.*, ahí, allí.
they, ellos, ellas.
thick, espeso, denso; **six inches** —, seis pulgadas de espesor.
thin, delgado; enjuto de carnes, flaco.
thing, la cosa.
think, *vn.*, pensar; creer.
third, tercero.
thirst, la sed.
thirteen, trece.
thirty, treinta.
this, este.
though, aunque.
thought, el pensamiento.
thoughtful, pensativo.
thousand, mil.
three, tres.
threshold, el umbral.
through, por; al través de.
throw, *va.*, echar; arrojar.
thunder, el trueno.
Thursday, el jueves.
tiger, el tigre.
till, *va.*, labrar; *prep.*, hasta.
time, el tiempo; **at the same time**, a la vez, a un mismo tiempo.
timid, tímido.
tire, *va.*, cansar.
title, el título.
to, a; hasta.
toast, *va.*, tostar.
toast, la tostada.
to-day, *adv.*, hoy.
together, juntos; *adv.*, juntamente, junto.
to-morrow, *adv.*, mañana; — **morning**, mañana por la mañana.
tone, el tono.

tongue, la lengua.
to-night, *adv.*, esta noche.
too, *adv.*, también; demasiado.
tool, la herramienta.
tooth, el diente; **set of teeth**, la dentadura postiza.
top, la cumbre.
torment, el tormento.
touch, *va.*, tocar.
towards, hacia.
towel, la toalla.
town, la población; la ciudad.
track, la pista.
trade, el comercio, el oficio.
train, el tren.
transit, el tránsito.
translate, *va.*, traducir.
translation, la traducción.
transportation, el transporte.
travel, *vn.*, viajar.
traveller, el viajero; **commercial** —, el agente viajero.
tree, el árbol.
trifles, las zarandajas.
trip, el viaje.
triumph, el triunfo.
troop, la tropa.
trouble, el pesar; la pena.
trousers, los pantalones.
trunk, el tronco; el baúl.
trust, *va.*, *vn.*, confiar.
trustworthy, digno de crédito, digno de confianza.
try, *va.*, tratar, probar; ensayar.
turf, el césped, la pista; el hipódromo.
Turkish, turco.
turn, *va.*, *vn.*, volver; girar, revolver; (*noun*) el turno.
twelve, doce.
twenty, veinte.
twice, dos veces.
twist, *va.*, torcer.
two, dos; — **hundred**, doscientos.
ultimo (date), pasado (mes).
unbearable, inaguantable; insoportable.
uncle, el tío.

under, **underneath**, *adv.*, debajo; *prep.*, debajo de.
 understand, *va.*, *vn.*, comprender; entender.
 undertake, *va.*, emprender.
 undo, *va.*, deshacer.
 undoubted, indudable.
 uneasiness, la inquietud.
 unexpected, inesperado.
 unhappy, infeliz.
 uniformity, la uniformidad.
 unite, *va.*, unir.
 unknown, ignoto; desconocido.
 unless, a menos que *or* de.
 unlikely, inverosímil *or* inverisímil.
 unsaddle, *va.*, desensillar.
 until, hasta; hasta que.
 upon, en, sobre, encima de.
 upright (erect), enhiesto.
 us, nos.
 use, el uso.
 use, *va.*, emplear; usar; *v.n.*, acostumbrar.
 useful, útil.
 useless, inútil.
 usual, ordinario; usual.
 utensil, el utensilio; utensils, los útiles.
 utter, *va.*, proferir; pronunciar.
 vacant, vago, vacante.
 valise, la maleta.
 valuable, precioso; valioso.
 value, el valor.
 variety, la variedad.
 vary, *vn.*, variar.
 vegetable, la legumbre; — garden, la huerta.
 verb, el verbo.
 verse, el verso.
 very, muy.
 vestibule, el zaguán, el vestíbulo.
 victory, la victoria.
 view (point of), el punto de vista.
 village, la aldea; el lugar.
 violet, la violeta.

virtue, la virtud.
 visit, la visita.
 visitor, la visita.
 vogue, la voga *or* boga.
 voice, la voz.
 volume, el volumen; el tomo.
 waggon, la carreta.
 wait, *vn.*, aguardar.
 wake, *va.*, despertar.
 wakeful, desvelado.
 walk, el paseo.
 walk, *vn.*, andar; caminar.
 walking-stick, el bastón.
 wall, la tapia; la muralla.
 walnut-tree, el nogal.
 want, *va.*, querer; desear.
 war, la guerra.
 warm, caliente; **it is warm**, hace calor.
 warmth, el calor.
 warn, *va.*, advertir; avisar.
 wash, *va.*, lavar.
 waste, *va.*, disipar.
 watch, *va.*, contemplar; mirar, atisbar.
 watch, el reloj de bolsillo.
 water, el (*fem.*) agua.
 waterfall, el salto de agua.
 way, el camino; la vía; el modo.
 we, nosotros, -as.
 weak, débil.
 wealth, el caudal.
 weapon, el (*fem.*) arma.
 weather, el tiempo.
 Wednesday, el miércoles.
 week, la semana.
 weep, *vn.*, llorar.
 weigh, *va.*, pesar.
 weight, el peso.
 well, *adv.*, bien.
 west, el oeste; el occidente; el poniente, el ocaso.
 wet, mojado; húmedo.
 what, ¿qué?, ¿qué cosa?; ¿cuál?; lo que.
 whatever, cualquier cosa, lo que; — **may be**, sea cual fuere.
 wheat, el trigo.

when, *adv.*, cuando.
where, *adv.*, donde.
whereas, mientras que.
whether, *conj.*, si . . .
which, (*inter.*) cuál ; (*rel.*) que, el cual.
while, *adv.*, mientras, mientras que.
white, blanco.
who, (*inter.*) ¿quién? ; (*rel.*) quien, que.
whose, cuyo.
why, por qué.
widow, la viuda.
widower, el viudo.
wife, la esposa.
wine, el vino.
winter, el invierno.
wise, sabio ; cuerdo.
wish, *va.*, querer ; desear.
with, con.
within, (*adv.*) dentro ; (*prep.*) dentro de.
without, *prep.*, sin.
witty, chistoso.
wolf, el lobo.
woman, la mujer.
wonder, el pasmo, la maravilla.
wonderful, maravilloso.
wood, la madera, la leña ; el bosque.
woody, selvoso.
wool, la lana.
word, la palabra, el vocablo.
work, el trabajo ; la obra, la labor.

work, *vn.*, trabajar.
world, el mundo.
worry, *va.*, *vn.*, fastidiar, aburrir.
worth, el mérito, el valor ; **it is not worth while**, no vale la pena.
worthy, digno.
wound, la herida.
wrath, la cólera.
write, *va.*, *vn.*, escribir.
writer, el escritor.
writing, el escrito, la escritura.
wrong, errado, falso.

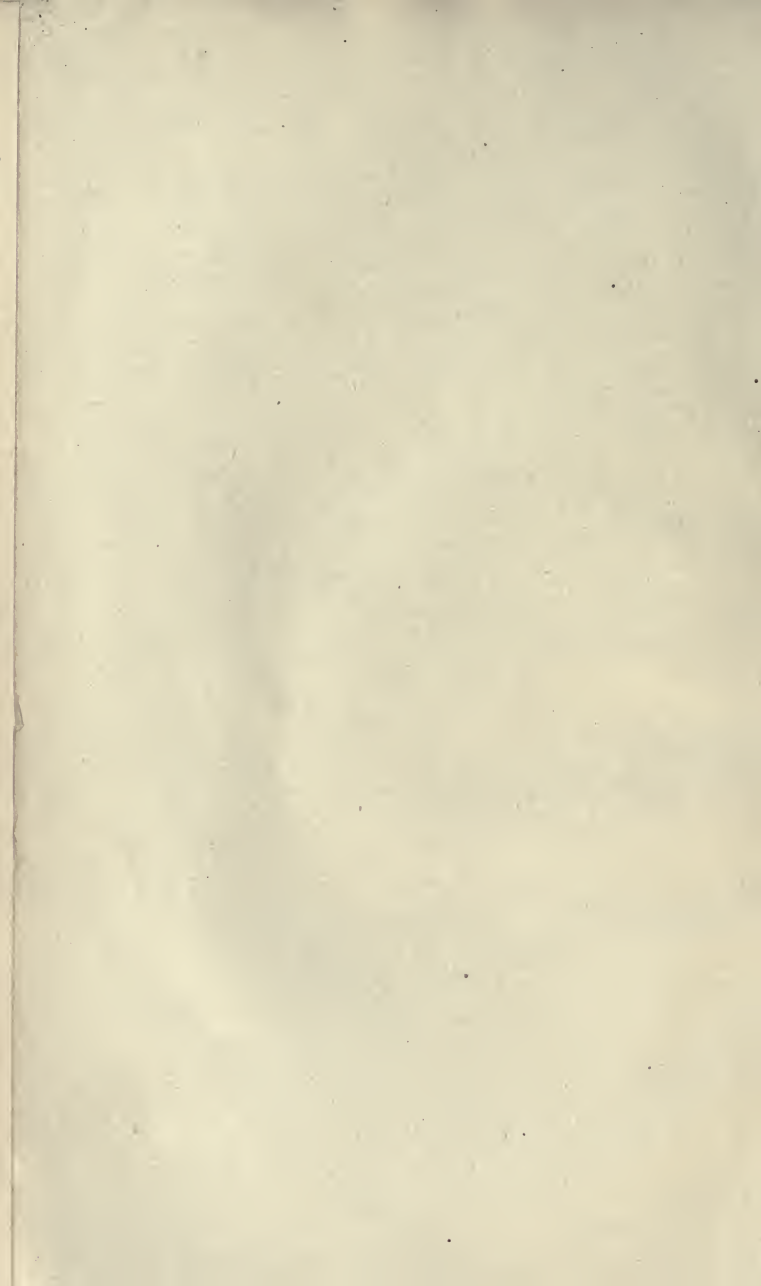
yard, la yarda (91 centimetres).
year, el año.
yellow, *adj.*, amarillo.
yelp, *vn.*, gañir.
yes, *adv.*, sí ; — **indeed !** ; ya lo creo !
yesterday, *adv.*, ayer.
yet, *conj.*, sin embargo ; *adv.*, aun, todavía.
yield, *va.*, *vn.*, ceder ; dar, rendir.
yoke, *va.*, uncir.
yoke, el yugo.
you, usted, ustedes.
young, joven. — **man**, el joven, el mozo.
your, de usted, de ustedes ; sus.
youth, la juventud.

zone, la zona.





~~and~~ When one
attempts to translate a
masterpiece from any language,
he embarks on a very dangerous
journey, whose pitfalls &
surprises are innumerable,
& one may find himself
at the journey's end landing
on a continent of disappointments
& the tragic realization of
one's own mediocrity.



GENERAL LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA—BERKELEY

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

MAR 7 1955

REC'D LD

DEC 1 1954 LU

JUL 9 1961

7 Mar '55 BK

JUN 5 1955 LU

Jul 6 1955 SX

Clark

AUG

5 1961

ff

YB UC 993

420740

Samuel C. ...

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

